

Executive Summary



Kissimmee River Restoration Studies

Volume I

Establishing a Baseline: Pre-restoration Studies
of the Channelized Kissimmee River

Volume II

Defining Success: Expectations for Restoration
of the Kissimmee River



Executive Summary

KISSIMMEE RIVER RESTORATION STUDIES

Volume I

Establishing a Baseline: Pre-restoration Studies of the Channelized Kissimmee River

Volume II

Defining Success: Expectations for Restoration of the Kissimmee River

South Florida Water Management District

September 2006



Governing Board

Kevin McCarthy, Chair	Nicolás J. Gutiérrez, Jr., Esq.
Irela M. Bagué, Vice-Chair	Lennart E. Lindahl, P.E.
Miya Burt-Stewart	Harkley R. Thornton
Alice J. Carlson	Malcolm S. Wade, Jr.
Michael Collins	

Executive Director

Carol Ann Wehle

Chip Merriam, Deputy Executive Director for Water Resources
 Dean Powell, Director, Watershed Management Department
 Susan Gray, Ph.D., Deputy Director, Watershed Management Department
 Seán Sculley, P.E., Deputy Director, Watershed Management Department
 Jennifer Jorge, Ph.D., Director, Kissimmee Division

Executive Summary Editor

Jennifer Jorge, Ph.D.

Volume Editors

Volume I	Volume II
Stephen G. Bousquin, Ph.D.	David H. Anderson, Ph.D.
David H. Anderson, Ph.D.	Stephen G. Bousquin, Ph.D.
Gary E. Williams, Ph.D.	Gary E. Williams, Ph.D.
David J. Colangelo	David J. Colangelo

Authors

David H. Anderson, Ph.D	Stephen G. Bousquin, Ph.D	Laura L. Carnal
R. Harper Carroll IV	Joanne R. Chamberlain	David J. Colangelo
William Patrick Davis	Bruce D. Dugger, Ph.D	Don Frei
J. Lawrence Glenn III	Caroline Hovey	Bradley L. Jones
Joseph W. Koebel, Jr.	Stefani L. Melvin	Robert W. Pillsbury, Ph.D
Lourdes M. Rojas	Shelly L. Schmidt	Gary E. Williams, Ph.D

INTRODUCTION

The Kissimmee River is a shallow, low-gradient river in south-central Florida. Before it was channelized for flood control, the river meandered for approximately 103 miles (166 kilometers) between Lakes Kissimmee and Okeechobee (Figure 1) through the 750 square mile (1942 hectare) Lower Kissimmee Basin. In most years the river overflowed its banks, inundating much of its up to two-mile (three kilometer) wide floodplain from four to eleven months. These extended periods of flooding sustained a diverse mosaic of floodplain wetlands, which provided habitat for abundant waterfowl, wading birds, fish, and amphibians.

Hurricanes in the 1920s and 1940s caused extensive flooding in southern Florida, which in some instances resulted in great losses of life and property. For example, back-to-back hurricanes on September 17 and October 12 1947 flooded 246,847 acres (99,973 hectares) in the Kissimmee Basin for an extended period of time and caused over \$1 million in damage. These events prompted Congress to authorize the Kissimmee portion of the Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project in 1954 to provide flood protection for surrounding communities and agricultural interests. Between 1962 and 1971, a number of modifications were made to the Kissimmee River, including excavation of a central canal and installation of six water control structures that subdivided the canal into five impoundments, also known as pools.

These changes converted the meandering river into the 56-mile (90 kilometer) long, 30-foot (9 meter) deep, and 90-300 foot (27-91 meters) wide canal called C-38 (Figure 2). The canal cut through the natural meanders of the original river channel, intercepting virtually all flow from the river and floodplain, leaving the disconnected remnant channels on both sides of the canal without flow, and the floodplain without natural seasonal inundation. The water control structures were designed to regulate flow of water through the canal and to keep water levels constant within each pool. Collectively, these modifications to the river are referred to in this document as channelization. The resulting floodplain, remnant river channels, and the C-38 canal are collectively referred to as the channelized system.

OVERVIEW: Kissimmee River Restoration Studies

Scientists at the South Florida Water Management District have completed two important milestones in the monitoring program associated with the Kissimmee River Restoration Project. These two volumes are the first in a new series of publications on the Kissimmee River Restoration Project.

Volume I. Establishing a Baseline: Pre-restoration Studies of the Channelized Kissimmee River. Summarizes the results of pre-restoration studies that set a baseline for evaluating future changes associated with the restoration project.

Volume II. Defining Success: Expectations for Restoration of the Kissimmee River. Compiles performance measures that were developed to evaluate the success of the project at reaching its goal of reestablishing ecological integrity.

The success of the flood control project was shadowed by the dramatic impacts of channelization on the wetland ecosystem. While the project successfully controlled flooding, it had a devastating impact on the ecology of the river and its surrounding floodplain by eliminating continuous flow in the river and seasonal inundation of the floodplain. The project resulted in the loss of over 19,500 acres (7,951 hectares) of wetlands; dramatic declines in bird, fish, and other animal populations that depended on the wetlands; and substantial degradation of water quality.

The impacts of the channelization project on the river's natural ecosystem and resources were so pronounced that they elicited a grassroots effort to restore the river even before the Kissimmee portion of the Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project was completed. In 1972, just one year after construction was completed, the Central and Southern Florida Flood Control District (now known as South Florida Water Management District) held the first public hearing on the potential for restoration of the Kissimmee River. Later in the 1970s, the Governor's office, state legislature, and federal government agencies endorsed the concept of restoration.

The U.S. Congress passed the Water Resources Development Act of 1992, which authorized ecosystem restoration of the Kissimmee River (Kissimmee River Restoration Project) and changes to several lakes in the upper basin of the watershed to support the river restoration (Headwaters Revitalization Project). The Kissimmee River Restoration Project dealt with modifications to canal C-38 and to the water control structures in the lower basin. The Headwaters Revitalization Project authorized modifications to Lakes Kissimmee, Hatchineha, Cypress, and Tiger in the Upper Kissimmee Basin to provide increased seasonal water storage so that releases to the Kissimmee River could be made more gradually and follow a more natural seasonal distribution. Recreating the natural seasonality of flow, especially to allow floodplain inundation for long periods that extend into the dry season, is essential to meeting the goals of the Kissimmee River Restoration Project. Headwaters Revitalization will have the additional benefit of increasing the quality and quantity of wetland habitat around the four upper basin lakes mentioned above.

A 1994 cost-sharing Project Cooperative Agreement (PCA) between the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers and the South Florida Water Management District combined the Kissimmee River Restoration Project and the Headwaters Revitalization Project into a single entity called the Kissimmee River Restoration Project. The agreement split the cost of the project evenly between the two agencies, assigning responsibility to the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers for design and construction; and to the South Florida Water Management District for real estate acquisition and restoration evaluation.

Land acquisition to acquire properties that could be flooded by the project, construction to restore the historic form of restored sections of river, and modifications in water operation schedules are the primary strategies to achieve the goals of the project. Plans to restore the Kissimmee River were developed based on several federal and state-sponsored studies. These studies examined approaches to meet the system's ecological needs while maintaining the same level of flood control as the channelized system.

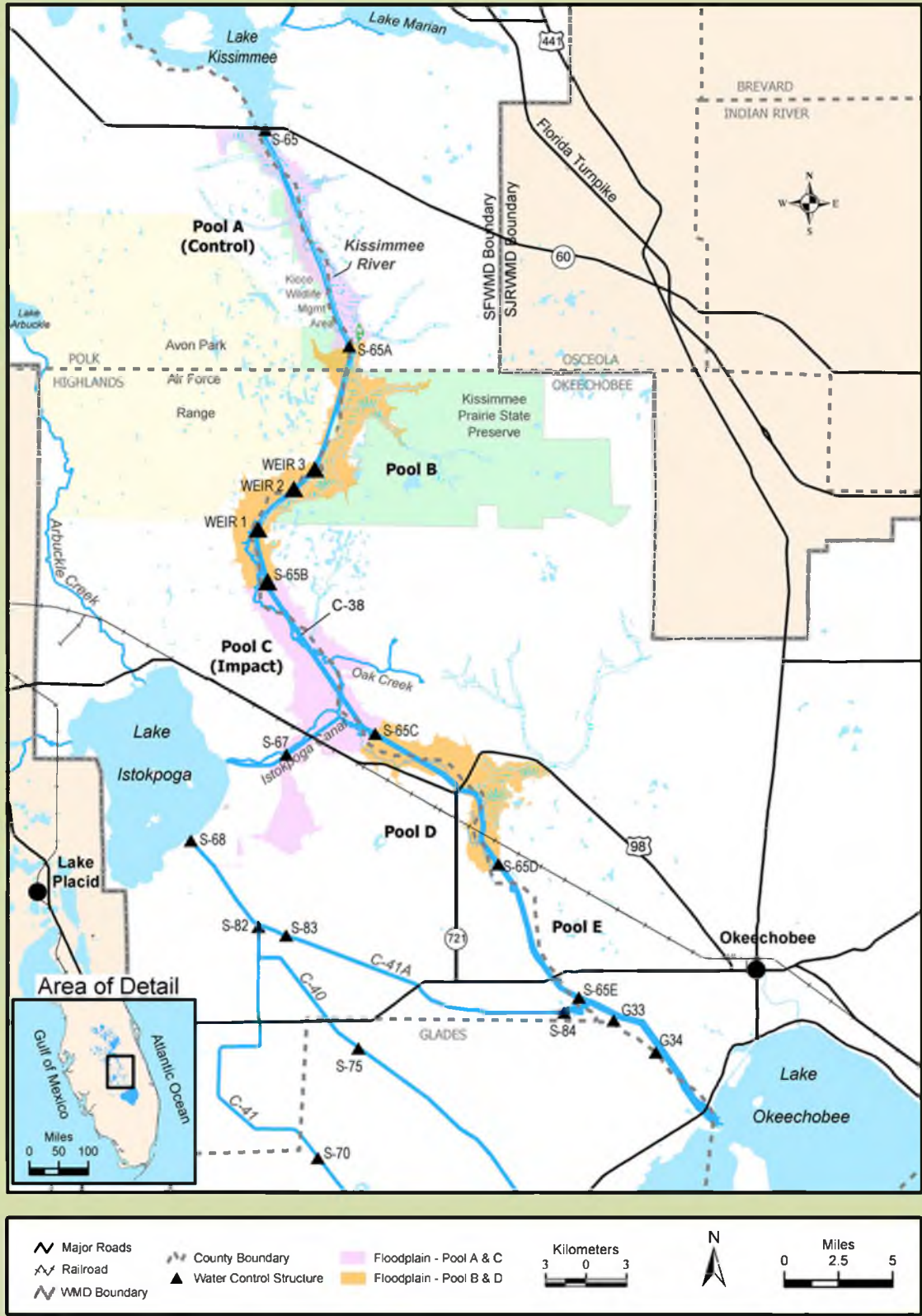


Figure 1. Location of the Kissimmee River in Florida. The C-38 canal cuts through the floodplain and intercepts the meandering river channel. The channelized system includes the floodplain, remnant river channels and the C-38 canal. The canal is divided into a series of five impounded pools (Pools A-E) by six water control structures (S-65 to S-65E). The Upper Chain of Lakes through Lake Kissimmee provides water to the Kissimmee River, which discharges into Lake Okeechobee.

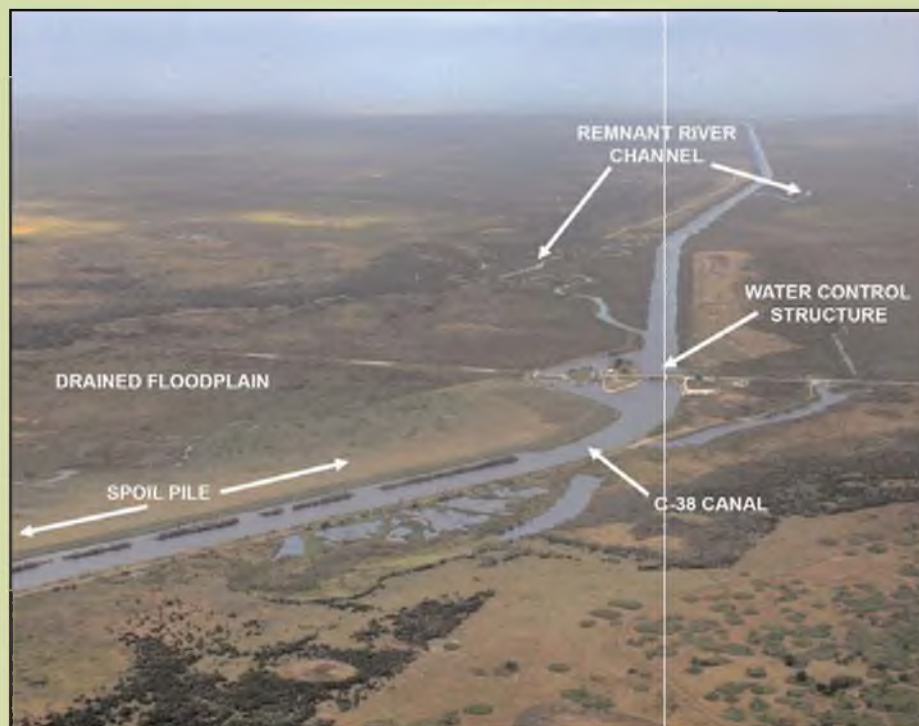
Figure 2. Photographs of the Kissimmee River prior to channelization and after channelization.

PRIOR TO CHANNELIZATION



- Prior to channelization, the Kissimmee River seasonally overflowed its banks, flooding its broad floodplain.
- This “flood pulse” supported a diverse wetland ecosystem that provided habitat for abundant populations of invertebrates, fish, birds, and other animals.
- Water was conveyed downstream by both the river channel, and, when inundated, the floodplain.

AFTER CHANNELIZATION



- Channelization of the Kissimmee River involved the excavation of canal C-38 and installation of water control structures that divided the canal into five pools.
- The canal cut through the natural meanders of the original river channel, intercepting all flow from the river and floodplain, and leaving the remnant channels on both sides of the canal without flow and the floodplain without seasonal flooding.
- Although these remnant channels contained water, they were stagnant.
- Drier conditions over much of the floodplain resulted in former wetland plant communities converting to upland communities within a few years.

Timeline of Significant Events Related to the Kissimmee River

1920s-1940s	Hurricanes and flooding in the upper basin
1954	Congress authorizes Kissimmee portion of the Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project
1962-1971	Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project channelizes the Kissimmee River
1971	Governor's Conference on Water Management recommends restoration of the river
1976	Kissimmee River Restoration Act creates Kissimmee River Coordinating Council
1978-1985	First Federal Feasibility Study
1983	Coordinating Council recommends the backfilling plan
1984-1990	Kissimmee River Demonstration Project
1986	Water Resources Act mandates that enhancements to environmental quality in the public interest should be calculated as equal to other costs
1988	Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium adopts the ecological integrity goal
1991	Second Federal Feasibility Study recommends the level II backfilling plan
1992	Water Resources Act authorizes the Kissimmee River Restoration Project
1994	The District and the US Army Corps of Engineers sign Project Cooperative Agreement
1994	Construct test backfill and conduct high flow tests on backfill stability
1996	Headwaters Revitalization feasibility study completed
1995-1999	The District conducts baseline sampling
1999-2001	Phase I of backfilling
2006-2012	Phase III/III backfilling and Phase IV of backfilling
2012	Implementation of new headwaters stage regulation schedule
2017	Restoration monitoring concludes

Construction for the Kissimmee River Restoration Project is divided into four major phases, which involve backfilling sections of the canal and removal of two water control structures. Phase I was initiated in 1999 and completed in February 2001. The final phase of project construction is expected to be completed by 2012. The new headwaters revitalization stage regulation schedule is scheduled for implementation in 2012 following completion of construction for the Kissimmee River Restoration Project (see "Timeline" text box). The PCA also requires the South Florida Water Management District to continue restoration evaluation monitoring for five years following completion of construction.

Among the expected benefits of the Kissimmee River Restoration Project are:

- maintenance of the same level of flood control as the channelized system;
- reconnection of 43 miles (69 kilometers) of continuous, meandering river channel;
- reestablishment of 40 square miles (104 square kilometers) of floodplain wetlands.

These habitat improvements are expected to benefit over 300 species of fish and wildlife.

THE RESTORATION EVALUATION PROGRAM

The Kissimmee River Restoration Project is one of the largest river restorations in the world. The project will restore approximately 40 square miles (104 square kilometers) of floodplain wetlands and will reconnect over 43 miles (69 kilometers) of meandering river channel. Construction components of the project will be completed over a projected 13 year period and will cost an estimated \$578 million (in Fiscal Year 2004 dollars). Over 102,000 acres (40,500 hectares) of land have been acquired.

The project is noteworthy not only for its size and scope, but for its uncommon goal of reestablishing the ecology of the river and floodplain. While many restoration projects attempt to reconstruct critical habitat features for individual species, the Kissimmee River Restoration Project is one of the few in the world to attempt reestablishment of the integrity of an entire ecosystem. Reestablishment of ecological integrity means that the river and floodplain ecosystems restored physical and chemical components will help drive recovery of the plant and animal communities associated with the river and floodplain before the Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project.



Figure 3. Projected timeline for major components of the Kissimmee River Restoration Project, including real estate acquisition, headwaters revitalization, Phases I through IV of backfilling and construction, restoration evaluation, and operational modeling.

Ecological Integrity — *The capability of supporting and maintaining a balanced, integrated, adaptive community of organisms having a species composition, diversity, and functional organization comparable to natural habitat of the region.*

Because of its scope and significance, the Kissimmee River Restoration Project requires a comprehensive monitoring and evaluation program to assess the restoration project's success, as called for in the 1991 U.S. Army Corps of Engineers document, *Final Integrated Feasibility Report and Environmental Impact Statement: Environmental Restoration of the Kissimmee River, Florida* described later in this section. The studies presented in Volume I of the Kissimmee River Restoration Studies series, *Establishing a Baseline: Pre-Restoration Studies of the Channelized Kissimmee River*, represent the basis of the South Florida Water Management District's Kissimmee River Restoration Evaluation Program, documenting studies of the channelized system before restoration began. These baseline studies will provide data for evaluating future changes that result from the Kissimmee River Restoration Project.

In addition to collecting data and reporting results, the studies contained in Volume I provide the data for the restoration expectations presented in Volume II, *Defining Success: Expectations for Restoration of the Kissimmee River*. Expectations are formal statements predicting responses of specific ecological attributes, such as fish and bird populations, or water quality, to restoration.

As a vital component of the restoration project, the evaluation program is designed to:

- determine if the project goals are being met;
- aid in the understanding of unexpected responses;
- guide management, both in later phases of the project and in future management of the restored ecosystem.

To accommodate these three objectives and the Kissimmee River Restoration Project's overall goal of reestablishing ecological integrity, the evaluation program includes many components focusing on four major categories of monitoring, as called for in the *Final Integrated Feasibility Report and Environmental Impact Statement*:

- (1) **Ecological:** Ecological monitoring is intended to measure changes in attributes that would indicate the attainment of the

ecological integrity goal. These attributes include water quality, vegetation, habitat, fish and wildlife, endangered species, and ecosystem functions such as energy flow and nutrient cycling.

- (2) **Hydraulics:** Monitoring of water levels, velocities, and flows is needed to evaluate five specific hydrologic criteria for the restoration project, to support modeling for finalizing plans for the



last phase of the project, to guide operations, and to aid in the interpretation of the results of other monitoring studies.

- (3) **Sedimentation:** The restored river channel will consist of segments of remnant river channel reconnected across the backfilled canal. Monitoring is needed to determine if the managed flow regime results in erosion and deposition in the reconstructed river channel, leading to excessive sedimentation.
- (4) **Stability of the restored river channel:** Similar to sedimentation, monitoring of cross-sections is needed to determine if the reconstructed river channel remains stable under the managed flow regime.

KEY ELEMENTS FOR RESTORATION EVALUATION

Selection of Metrics

An important step in developing the evaluation program was to select metrics that could be used to measure attributes of the river and floodplain. For example, an attribute such as vegetation can be quantified with various metrics. The evaluation program is quantifying vegetation with metrics that describe the area of coverage (e.g., width of littoral (edge) vegetation beds in the river channel, area of wetlands on the floodplain) and metrics that describe changes in the species composition of plant communities (e.g., relative percent cover of emergent species in littoral plant communities; relative percent cover of plant species found in certain types of marsh). The metrics used in the evaluation program are indicators of progress towards reestablishment of ecological integrity. They were selected based on their ability to show measurable responses to channelization and restoration efforts.

Metric — *An environmental characteristic that can be measured over time to monitor, assess, manage, and communicate information about a project*

Estimation of Baseline Conditions

Many restoration projects involve dramatic changes over time. However, being able to demonstrate that change has occurred necessitates collection of data before the restoration begins. Such pre-restoration data are used to establish baseline conditions for evaluating changes in the ecosystem that result from restoration. Most of the chapters in Volume I describe studies of the channelized system that were conducted during a baseline period between 1995 and 1999, immediately prior to Phase I of the restoration project, but some baseline conditions (used in the hydrology and water quality chapters) were determined from a longer record of channelized system data that began as early as 1972.

Baseline Condition — *The state of the channelized system prior to the restoration project.*



Reference Conditions for Restoration Expectations

Monitoring of a metric over time can be used to detect changes in the ecosystem. To determine whether these changes represent improvements in the ecosystem, do not make a difference, or lead to further degradation, the current state of the system prior to restoration (baseline) must be compared to a reference condition (an estimate of pre-channelization conditions) that represents the ecosystem with ecological integrity. Ideally, the reference condition would be based on information about the Kissimmee River ecosystem prior to channelization. However, direct pre-channelization information was not available for many metrics. Therefore, in many cases reference conditions were based on information from other rivers or wetlands with similar characteristics that were relatively unimpacted, or data from an area of the Kissimmee River ecosystem where flow was experimentally reintroduced into a small section of river channel in the 1984-1990 Demonstration Project (see *Timeline of Significant Events* text box).

Reference Condition — *The state of attributes with ecological integrity. This can be based on information from the pre-channelization river and floodplain, from other rivers and wetlands that are similar to the pre-channelization Kissimmee River, or from experimental data.*

Specific examples of methods used to estimate pre-channelization reference conditions include:

- pre-channelization aerial photography, used to determine the distribution of wetland plant communities on the floodplain and the distribution of sand bars in the river channel;

- data on oxygen concentrations from seven other rivers in the same watershed as the Kissimmee River;
- data on river channel sediments and littoral vegetation from sections of river to which flow had been reintroduced during the Demonstration Project.

Reference conditions were used both to interpret the impacts of channelization and also to develop specific expectations (predictions) for the restored ecosystem. These restoration expectations will be used to determine how successful the restoration of the Kissimmee River is within five years following completion of construction and implementation of the Headwaters Revitalization Project.

Distinguishing Restoration Effects from Other Causes of Change

Natural ecosystems change constantly, so it is important to distinguish between changes due to the restoration project and those due to other causes, such as shifts in climate or flood events. An approach employed in many of the baseline studies involved sampling a given metric in both the area selected for restoration and in a control area that will not be affected by the restoration project. Pool A of the Kissimmee River has been chosen as the control area because it is upstream of the restoration and C-38 will not be backfilled there. Remnant channels and floodplain in Pool A will therefore be minimally affected by the restoration project. Monitoring for several studies continues on a regular basis to provide data for making comparisons of the area of the restoration project relative to those in the control area before and after the restoration. This comparison process greatly assists in determining the most likely causes of change.

VOLUME I

**ESTABLISHING A BASELINE:
PRE-RESTORATION STUDIES OF THE CHANNELIZED KISSIMMEE RIVER**

Volume I summarizes a group of studies of the channelized Kissimmee River and floodplain. These studies were conducted to establish a baseline for evaluating changes resulting from the restoration project. There are a total of 14 chapters in Volume I. The first chapter provides an overview of the restoration project and the evaluation program. The remaining 13 chapters present original baseline data collected in the channelized Kissimmee River ecosystem. Most of these chapters also present reference conditions for one or more metrics that were used to estimate the impacts of channelization on the natural river channel and floodplain.

HYDROLOGY (Chapter 2)

The Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project substantially altered the hydrology of the Kissimmee River. In Chapter 2, changes in rainfall, water level (stage), and flow were examined by comparing data collected at permanent stations in the river channel for up to 35 years before 1962, when excavation of the C-38 canal began, with data collected for up to 27 years after 1971, when channelization was completed. In general, these comparisons showed that channelization narrowed the range of stage variation in the river channel and floodplain, and resulted in flow being carried by the C-38 canal rather than the remnant river channels. Before channelization, flow in the river channel had a distinct seasonality with peak monthly discharges occurring in September-October. After channelization, flow in the C-38 canal was characterized by a decrease in wet season flows so that monthly discharge was more uniform throughout the year. Flow



Summary of Volume I

- *Baseline studies showed that channelization of the Kissimmee River altered hydrologic conditions in the natural river channel and on the floodplain.*
- *Hydrologic alterations resulted in the loss of flow in river channels and drastically reduced inundation of the floodplain.*
- *In remnant river channels, plant and animal communities became more similar to those of lakes and ponds than to those of free-flowing rivers.*
- *On much of the floodplain, wetland plant and animal communities were replaced by terrestrial communities.*

The ecological impacts of channelization resulted primarily from the loss of flow in remnant river channels and drainage of most of the floodplain. Baseline sampling was thus focused in remnant river channels and the floodplain, the two major habitats that had supported native communities of plants and animals prior to channelization. This sampling strategy allowed inferences to be made about changes in these habitats due to channelization by comparing baseline results with reference conditions. This strategy also established a baseline for evaluating future changes that will result from restored flow in the reconnected river channel and from restored inundation patterns on the floodplain.

Impacts of Channelization on the Hydrology of the River and Floodplain

- *Flow was carried by the C-38 canal rather than the remnant river channel, which was approximately only one-third the width and depth of the canal.*
- *Narrowed the range of water level (stage) variation in the remnant river channel.*
- *Caused more erratic flow patterns, especially by increasing the number of days with no flow.*
- *Decreased seasonality of flow, especially loss of peak monthly discharges in September-October.*
- *Greatly reduced the seasonality of water level fluctuation and extent of floodplain inundation.*

Sampling Strategy

- *Ecological impacts of channelization resulted from loss of flow in remnant river channels and drainage of the floodplain.*
- *For this reason, baseline sampling was focused in remnant river channels and the floodplain.*

patterns in the C-38 canal were more erratic (especially by increasing the number of days with no flow) than in the river prior to channelization. This chapter also summarizes data collected during the baseline period by an enhanced hydrologic monitoring network, expanded to include floodplain stations, which was established for restoration evaluation.

Highlights of each of the 13 baseline chapters are summarized below.

RIVER CHANNEL GEOMORPHOLOGY (Chapter 3)

The geomorphology study focuses on attributes of the river channel that are likely to respond directly to reestablishment of flow and that influence habitat quality for plants and animals using the river channel. These attributes include point bars, a type of sand bar associated with the inner edge of a bend in the river channel, and the accumulation of organic matter on the river bottom. Pre-channelization aerial photography revealed active formation of point bars on almost every meander bend, while aerial photography of the channelized system showed that none of the meanders in the study area had active point bars and that relict point bars were overgrown with vegetation. Sediment samples from remnant river channels showed that organic

Impacts of Channelization on River Geomorphology

- *Absence of flow in remnant river channels due to channelization allowed organic matter to accumulate on the river channel bottom.*
- *Absence of flow in remnant river channels due to channelization ended active point bar formation in the river.*

deposits were thicker and covered a larger portion of the channel than in the reference condition based on remnant channels with partially restored flow. These organic deposits altered the river channel by reducing average channel depth, increasing the width/depth ratio, and reducing channel cross-sectional area.

DISSOLVED OXYGEN (Chapter 4)

Dissolved oxygen is essential to the metabolism of most aquatic organisms and in rivers is related to flow. Because oxygen needs vary by species, low dissolved oxygen levels can limit the species that occur in an aquatic system. Chronically low dissolved oxygen concentrations have been observed in the Kissimmee River system since channelization. In this study, the concentration of dissolved oxygen was measured in remnant river channels to establish a baseline for evaluating changes resulting from the restoration project. The baseline data showed very low concentrations of dissolved oxygen, averaging less than 2 mg/L. The baseline data

Impacts of Channelization on Dissolved Oxygen

- *Loss of flow decreased the concentration of dissolved oxygen in remnant river channels to levels that adversely affected aquatic invertebrates and fish.*

were compared with reference data from seven streams located in or near the Kissimmee Basin that were less impacted than the Kissimmee River. These comparisons showed that the concentration of dissolved oxygen during the baseline period was lower than in the reference streams, which suggests that channelization and loss of flow substantially decreased the concentration of dissolved oxygen in remnant river channels.



WATER QUALITY (Chapter 5)

Water quality in the Kissimmee River and floodplain is influenced by activities and processes throughout its watershed, including the upper basin. This study characterized the baseline status of several key measures of water quality, including turbidity, total suspended solids (TSS), nutrient concentrations, and chlorophyll-a concentrations in remnant river channels and the C-38 canal. C-38 was sampled because it contained the only significant volume of water that flowed downstream.

Based on reference data from eight free-flowing streams in or near the Kissimmee Basin and knowledge of the Kissimmee River's pre-channelized characteristics, turbidity and TSS were estimated to be low prior to channelization. Turbidity and TSS have continued to be low after channelization and are expected to remain low after restoration.

Impacts of Channelization on Water Quality

- *Turbidity and suspended solids remained low after channelization.*
- *Loss of flow permitted occasional increases in chlorophyll-a concentrations (indicating algal blooms) in the remnant river channel.*
- *Channelization is believed to have facilitated nutrient transport from agricultural watersheds downstream to Lake Okeechobee.*
- *The nutrient evaluation is a "monitoring only" study. It includes no expectations because of the lack of suitable data on pre-channelization conditions. However, this monitoring will provide data to detect important changes in nutrient concentrations following restoration.*

Although data prior to canal construction are unavailable, C-38 is believed to have facilitated nutrient transport to Lake Okeechobee by improving drainage and allowing more intensive agriculture, especially in the lower part of the basin where agricultural lands draining to Pools D and E are the most concentrated sources of phosphorus. Because reference data for phosphorus and other water



quality parameters are unavailable, evaluation of these parameters was confined to description of baseline conditions. In remnant river channels and in C-38 (Pools A and C), median concentrations of chlorophyll-a, total phosphorus, total nitrogen, specific conductance, and pH were moderate during the 1996-1999 baseline period. Occasional increases in chlorophyll-a concentrations indicated the presence of algal blooms, which likely resulted from loss of flow. Variation in color, organic carbon, specific conductance, chloride, alkalinity, and pH reflected seasonality in headwater and tributary discharges. Higher ionic content and phosphorus concentrations in some river runs may have been indicative of agricultural inflows.

Total phosphorus concentrations at the upper four C-38 (gated) structures followed the trend of concentrations in Lake Kissimmee. Increased concentrations of phosphorus at S-65, coupled with high discharges from a succession of storms, resulted in disproportionately large phosphorus loading from S-65 in 1998. Phosphorus monitoring should continue for the next several years to determine if restoration is beneficial in reducing phosphorus loads downstream to Lake Okeechobee.

ALGAE (Chapter 6)

As primary producers, algae are key components of aquatic food webs. Algae also can play an important role in nutrient cycling and oxygen dynamics within river/floodplain systems. The species composition and biomass of algae in aquatic systems are affected by numerous

factors, including nutrient availability and flow conditions. The baseline algal studies examined periphyton and phytoplankton communities in remnant river channels. Periphyton are algae attached to surfaces such as submerged aquatic vegetation; phytoplankton are algae suspended in the water column. Periphyton

Algae in the Channelized River

- *The algal community is dominated by species not typical of flowing water.*
- *The algae study is a "monitoring only" study. It includes no expectations because of the lack of suitable data on pre-channelization conditions.*
- *However, the study will provide monitoring data to detect important changes in the algae community following restoration.*

and phytoplankton communities in remnant channels were described using richness (the number of algal species present) and biovolume (a measure of the quantity of each species of algae present). Periphyton communities also were described by the percentage of algal cells that were rheophilic (thriving in flowing water environments). Data from baseline sampling, along with information from the scientific literature and best professional judgment, were used to characterize the impacts of channelization on the algal community. Channelization and loss of flow may have caused the dominant species of algae present in the river channel to shift from species normally found in flowing water environments (i.e., rivers and streams) to species that are commonly found in lakes and ponds.

LITTORAL VEGETATION (Chapter 7)

Comparison of baseline and reference data sets for littoral (edge) vegetation suggests that the elimination of flow to remnant river channels brought about by channelization led to increases in the widths of littoral vegetation beds and changes in the composition of littoral plant communities. The cover of emergent species (plants rooted in the river bed with leaves reaching above the water surface) decreased relative to cover of floating and surface mat-forming plant species. This is because emergent species are able to resist dislocation by flowing water, while floating species are not. Loss of flow in remnant river channels likely precipitated a string of further effects associated with these changes in littoral vegetation, including interrelated effects on channel morphology,

Impacts of Channelization on Littoral Vegetation

- *Vegetation beds were much narrower on average (4 meters) under flowing conditions than in the remnant river channels after channelization (9 meters).*
- *After channelization, vegetation mats in some cases expanded to span the remnant river channel.*
- *Percent relative cover of floating and mat-forming species was on average substantially lower under flowing conditions (5%) than in the no-flow baseline period (50%).*

water quality, and wildlife habitat. Reestablishment of flow in remnant channels is expected to restore littoral vegetation to conditions more typical of flowing, pre-channelization conditions, in which littoral vegetation was limited to narrow zones near the edges of channels, and was dominated by emergent species.

FLOODPLAIN VEGETATION (Chapter 8)

The major components of pre-channelization floodplain wetlands were Broadleaf Marshes, Wet Prairie, and Wetland Shrub communities. This study describes the composition of these important plant communities, explains the methods used to collect baseline-period species data for future comparison with post-restoration data, and provides estimates of

Species Composition of Floodplain Plant Communities

- *Following loss of floodplain inundation, many sampled locations known to have been wetlands prior to channelization converted to uplands.*
- *The floodplain vegetation study is a “monitoring-only” study. It includes no expectations because of the lack of suitable data on pre-channelization conditions.*
- *However, the study will provide monitoring data to detect important changes in the species composition of plant communities following restoration of floodplain inundation.*

plant community changes that occurred as a result of loss of inundation of the floodplain following channelization. Detailed information on the species composition of pre-channelization plant communities was not available; therefore this study is a “monitoring-only” study; it will track changes in the species composition of floodplain communities that result from restoration of floodplain inundation.

VEGETATION CLASSIFICATION (Chapter 9)

A vegetation classification system specific to the Kissimmee River area was developed to ensure that plant communities of the

Vegetation Classification

- *The Kissimmee River Vegetation Classification System provides a standard “vocabulary” for use in the vegetation mapping and other studies to describe the river, floodplain, and upland vegetation that is characteristic of the Kissimmee River.*
- *The chapter describes:*
 - *the background of the classification;*
 - *vegetation categories;*
 - *linkages with previous classifications of the Kissimmee River area;*
 - *methods and decision rules used to apply the categories to vegetation data.*

Kissimmee River, its floodplain, and uplands are accurately and consistently described throughout the course of the Kissimmee River Restoration Project. The classification was developed using photointerpretation of 1996 aerial photography, associated field data, and two previous classifications of the Kissimmee River area that were developed prior to and immediately following channelization. The classification is hierarchical, including general categories (for example, “Shrublands”) that encompass numerous plant communities within the category (for example “Wetland Shrub” communities), which in turn contains very specific types of plant communities that can be described and identified based on their dominant species (for example, “Carolina willow communities”).

FLOODPLAIN VEGETATION MAPPING (Chapter 10)

Vegetation maps were developed from aerial photographs of the river and floodplain taken before and after channelization. These maps were compared to evaluate changes in the distribution of plant communities on the floodplain. The maps describe floodplain vegetation prior to channelization (1954), three years after channelization, and 17 years after channelization (1996), which was immediately prior to Phase I of the Kissimmee River Restoration Project. Prior to channelization, the floodplain was dominated by wetland plant communities, primarily Broadleaf Marsh, Wet Prairie, and Wetland Shrub

Impacts of Channelization on Area of Major Floodplain Vegetation Types

- *Prior to channelization, wetland vegetation occupied over 80% of the floodplain area of Pools A, B, C, and D.*
- *By 1974, three years after channelization was completed, over 60% of pre-channelization wetlands had disappeared and upland vegetation covered more than half of the original floodplain’s area.*

communities. Construction of the C-38 canal and diversion of channel and overbank flow to the canal resulted in loss of seasonal inundation of the floodplain and precipitated dramatic reductions in the area of wetland vegetation within a few years of completion of C-38 (Figure 4).

AQUATIC INVERTEBRATES (Chapter 11)

Aquatic invertebrates play an integral role in aquatic ecosystem food webs and processes, including nutrient cycling and decomposition of detritus. Aquatic invertebrate communities were sampled in seven remnant river channel habitats and three floodplain habitats (woody shrub, broadleaf marsh, and floodplain woody debris). These habitats were selected because they were hypothesized to have been negatively impacted by channelization, and because aquatic invertebrate communities within these habitats were expected to show positive responses following restoration. This study indicates that channelization likely altered aquatic invertebrate community structure and functional characteristics in river channel and

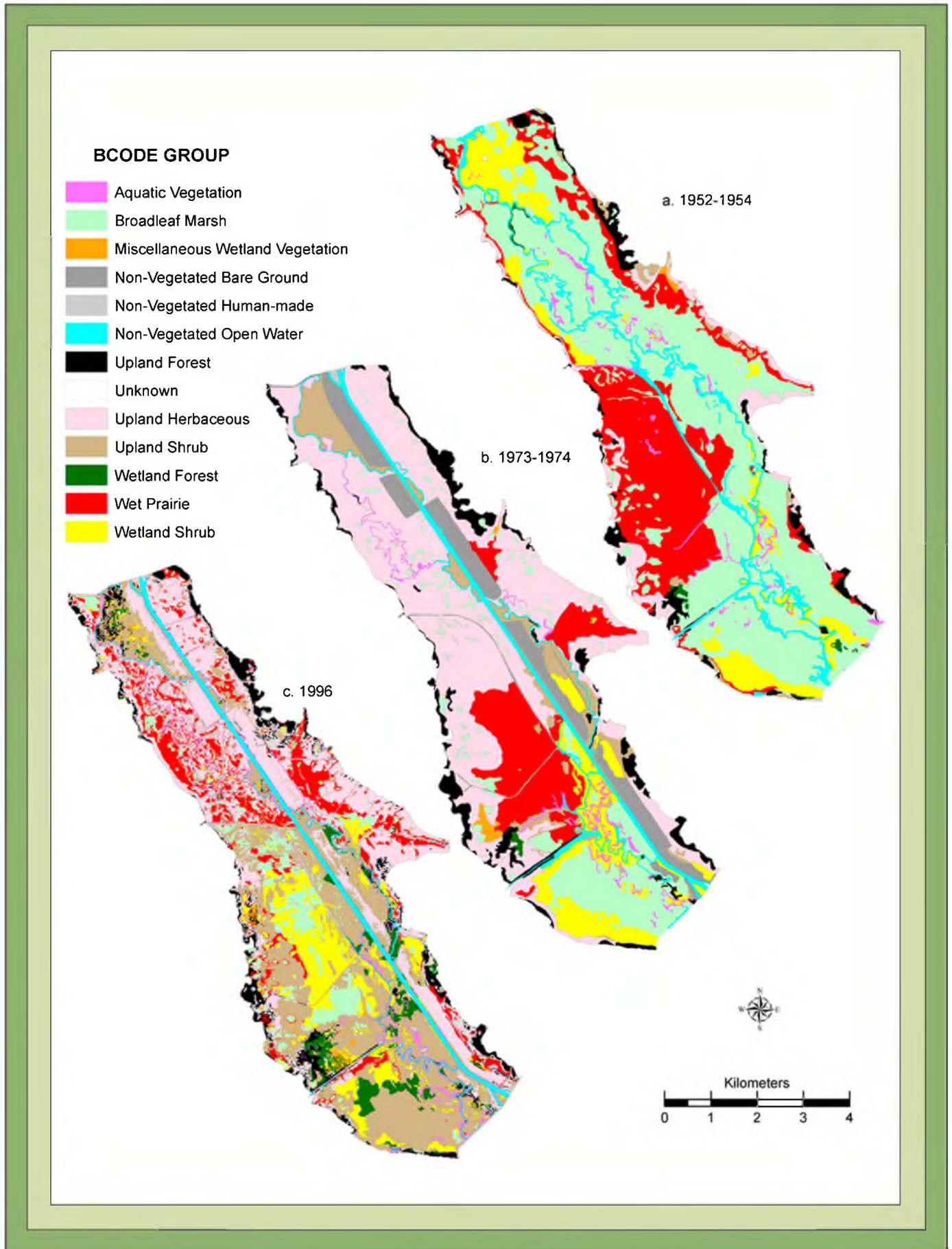


Figure 4. Vegetation maps of Pool C: (a) 1952-1954 (pre-channelization, reference period) (data from Pierce et al. 1982); (b) 1973-1974 (early post-channelization) (data from Milleson et al. 1980); and (c) 1996 (post-channelization, baseline period).



Impacts of Channelization on Aquatic Invertebrates

- *Lack of flow resulted in a filter-feeding guild of invertebrates dominated by active-filtering microcrustaceans instead of passive-filtering macroinvertebrates, which are characteristic of free-flowing rivers.*
- *Lack of flow resulted in invertebrate communities dominated by individuals belonging to taxa with broad ranges of ecological tolerances, and containing few individuals belonging to species typical of flowing water*
- *Shortened hydroperiods decreased invertebrate diversity and secondary production in floodplain wetlands.*

floodplain habitats. During the baseline period, aquatic invertebrates of remnant river channel habitats were representative of low-flow and depositional habitats rather than flowing water habitats. For instance, filtering-collector invertebrates that can account for up to 75% of mean annual density, biomass, and production on woody debris in free-flowing rivers accounted for less than 2% of mean annual density, biomass, and production in remnant river channels. Floodplain habitats (most of which were marshes prior to channelization) were dry during much of the baseline period. When compared to other marsh systems of Florida (e.g., water conservation areas and flatwoods marshes), these habitats were characterized by very low species richness and diversity.



AMPHIBIANS AND REPTILES (Chapter 12)

Amphibian and reptile (herpetofauna) communities can serve as indicators of the health of aquatic ecosystems, especially wetlands. Adult and larval herpetofauna are major consumers of invertebrates

Impacts of Channelization on Amphibians and Reptiles

- *Amphibian and reptile community structure was severely altered in floodplain habitats, with many common and characteristic taxa absent from baseline surveys.*
- *Channelization severely altered floodplain hydrology and patterns of amphibian reproduction in floodplain habitats.*
- *Common and highly visible species typical of upland habitats in central Florida were absent from baseline surveys.*

and algae and, in turn, are prey for many invertebrates, fishes, and birds, as well as other amphibians and reptiles. Thus, they play an integral role in food web dynamics and energy flow through aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems. This study examined baseline characteristics of amphibians and reptiles in several altered floodplain habitats of the channelized Kissimmee River ecosystem. These habitats were selected because they were hypothesized to have been negatively impacted following channelization, and because they were expected to show significant positive responses following restoration. The 14 taxa observed in remnant wetland habitats account for less than 50% of all taxa likely to occur in natural wetlands of central Florida. Numerous species of treefrog, most water snakes, alligator, and turtles were conspicuously absent from remnant wetlands within the channelized system. Similarly, the 18 taxa captured or observed in upland habitats represent only 33% of species known to occur in upland hammocks of central Florida. Characteristic taxa such as box turtle, glass lizard, spadefoot toad, and several species of treefrog and rat snake were not observed during baseline studies. Comparisons between the distribution of amphibians and reptiles in the altered floodplain habitats with their distribution in undisturbed wetlands and upland habitats suggest that channelization severely impacted amphibian and reptile community structure and patterns of amphibian reproduction in floodplain habitats.

FISH COMMUNITIES (Chapter 13)

Fish communities are ecologically important components of river-floodplain ecosystems, and the species of game fish are highly valued by fishermen. This chapter compiles the results of several studies of varied attributes of fish communities in remnant river channels, the C-38 canal, and the floodplain, as well as diet analyses and larval fish sampling. Fish surveys were used to evaluate multiple metrics in habitats severely altered by channelization. Comparisons of baseline fish communities to pre-channelization communities indicate that floodplain and river channel fish community structure has shifted so that post-channelization communities in remnant river channels are dominated by fishes characteristic of still water systems, such as lakes, or of degraded conditions. One of the studies also found that sunfishes and bass comprised 38% of the fish

Impacts of Channelization on Fish

- *Riverine fish communities are dominated by species that are characteristic of non-flowing systems and/or degraded conditions.*
- *Sunfish and bass relative abundance declined by approximately 50%.*
- *Fishing effort for largemouth bass decreased by approximately 30%.*
- *The number of fish species occurring in floodplain marshes decreased from 24 to 10 species.*
- *Floodplain fish community shifted from a mix of species to dominance by species typical of temporarily inundated or degraded wetland habitats.*

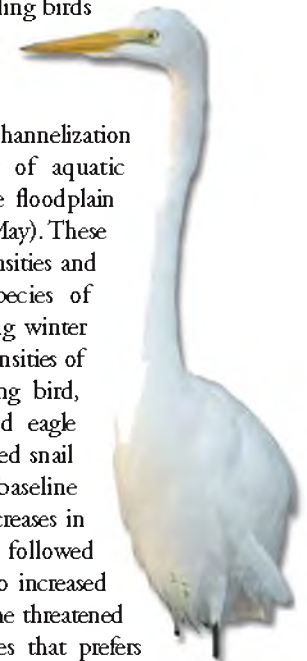
community in the remnant river channels, while this group typically comprises 70% of the fish community in other peninsular

Florida rivers. Additionally, fishing effort for largemouth bass as a percentage of the total effort by recreational fisherman has decreased by approximately 30%. Channelization impacts on floodplain fish communities include a decrease in the number of species occurring in floodplain marshes from 24 to 10 species and dominance by species that thrive in temporarily inundated or degraded wetland habitats.



BIRD COMMUNITIES (Chapter 14)

The avian community is an essential and often highly visible part of riverine/wetland ecosystems. Wetland birds are useful indicators of ecosystem change because they respond to many different environmental variables, including hydrology, vegetation structure, and food availability. This chapter reports the results of several studies related to wading birds and waterfowl, as well as investigations of protected species such as bald eagle, snail kite, Audubon's crested caracara, and wood stork. Aerial surveys were employed to estimate baseline and reference conditions for densities of wading birds and waterfowl using the floodplain. Comparisons were made between baseline and reference data to analyze the effects of channelization on wading birds and waterfowl; and to develop expectations for their responses to the restoration project. Baseline surveys (1996–1998) revealed that channelization substantially reduced the density of aquatic long-legged wading birds using the floodplain during the dry season (December–May). These surveys also showed much lower densities and that approximately nine fewer species of waterfowl used the floodplain during winter (November–March). In addition, densities of wood storks, an endangered wading bird, were uniformly low, and few bald eagle territories were found. No endangered snail kites were encountered during baseline airboat surveys, probably due to decreases in available foraging habitats that followed channelization. Channelization led to increased suitability of floodplain habitat for the threatened Audubon's crested caracara, a species that prefers a mixture of grassland/prairie and wetland habitats.



Impacts of Channelization on Birds

- *Dry season density of aquatic long-legged wading birds declined.*
- *Species richness and densities of overwintering waterfowl declined.*
- *Appropriate habitats for wood stork, bald eagle, and snail kites declined.*
- *Available habitat increased for Audubon's crested caracara, which prefers a mixture of terrestrial and wetland habitats.*

Summary of the Impacts of Channelization

Hydrology

- Flow was carried by the 30-foot deep C-38 canal rather than the original shallow river channel.
- Drastically narrowed the range of water level (stage) variation on the remnant river channel.
- Caused more erratic flow patterns, especially by increasing the number of days with no flow.
- Decreased seasonality of flow, especially loss of peak monthly discharges in September-October.
- Greatly reduced the seasonality of water level fluctuation and extent of floodplain inundation.

Geomorphology

- Absence of flow in remnant river channels due to channelization allowed organic matter to accumulate on the river channel bottom.
- Absence of flow in remnant river channels due to channelization ended active point bar formation in the river.

Water quality

- Turbidity and suspended solids remained low after channelization.
- Loss of flow permitted occasional increases in chlorophyll-a concentrations (indicating algal blooms) in the remnant river channel.
- Channelization is believed to have facilitated nutrient transport from agricultural watersheds downstream to Lake Okeechobee.
- The nutrient evaluation is a “monitoring only” study. It includes no expectations because of the lack of suitable data on pre-channelization conditions. However, this monitoring will provide data to detect important changes in nutrient concentrations following restoration.

Dissolved Oxygen

- Loss of flow decreased the concentration of dissolved oxygen in remnant river channels to levels that adversely affected aquatic invertebrates and fish.

Algae

- Algal community is dominated by species not typical of flowing water.
- The algae study was a “monitoring only” study. It included no expectations because of the lack of suitable data on pre-channelization conditions.
- However, the study will provide monitoring data to detect important changes in the algae community following restoration.

Littoral vegetation

- Vegetation beds were much narrower on average (4 meters) under flowing, pre-channelization conditions than in the no-flow baseline data (9 meters). During the baseline period, vegetation mats in some cases expanded to span the remnant river channel.
- Percent relative cover of floating and mat-forming species was on average substantially lower under flowing conditions (5%) than in the no-flow baseline period (50%).

Floodplain plant communities

- Following loss of floodplain inundation, many sampled locations known to have been wetlands prior to channelization had converted to uplands.

Mapping of floodplain wetlands

- Prior to channelization, wetland vegetation occupied over 80% of the floodplain area of Pools A, B, C, and D.
- By 1974, three years after channelization was completed, over 60% of pre-channelization wetlands had disappeared and upland vegetation covered more than half of the original floodplain's area.

Invertebrates

- Lack of flow resulted in a filter-feeding guild of invertebrates dominated by active-filtering microcrustaceans instead of passive-filtering macroinvertebrates which are, characteristic of free-flowing rivers.
- Lack of flow resulted in invertebrate communities dominated by individuals belonging to taxa with broad ranges of ecological tolerances, and containing few individuals belonging to species typical of flowing water.
- Shortened hydroperiods decreased invertebrate diversity and secondary production in floodplain wetlands.

Herpetofauna

- Amphibian and reptile community structure was severely altered in floodplain habitats, with many common and characteristic taxa absent from baseline surveys.
- Channelization severely altered floodplain hydrology and patterns of amphibian reproduction in floodplain habitats.
- Common and highly visible species typical of upland habitats in central Florida were absent from baseline.

Fish

- Riverine fish communities are dominated by species that are characteristic of non-flowing systems and/or degraded conditions.
- Sunfish and bass relative abundance declined by approximately 50%.
- Fishing effort for largemouth bass decreased by approximately 30%.
- The number of fish species occurring in floodplain marshes decreased from 24 to 10 species.
- Floodplain fish community shifted from a mix of species to dominance by species typical of temporarily inundated or degraded wetland habitats.

Birds

- Dry season density of aquatic long-legged wading birds declined
- Species richness and densities of overwintering waterfowl declined.
- Appropriate habitats for wood stork, bald eagle, and snail kites declined.
- Available habitat increased for Audubon's crested caracara, which prefers a mixture of terrestrial and wetland habitats.

VOLUME II

**DEFINING SUCCESS:
EXPECTATIONS FOR RESTORATION OF THE KISSIMMEE RIVER**

Volume II is a compilation of 25 restoration expectations that were developed from reference and baseline data presented in Volume I. The expectations were developed to evaluate the Kissimmee River Restoration Project and guide future management of the restored river. This set of 25 expectations was derived from an initial set of 61 restoration expectations that were developed over an almost two-year period ending as the first phase of the restoration project was beginning in July 1999. This initial set of expectations was shortened to 25 expectations during several rounds of external and internal peer-review, primarily by combining related

Attribute — Any of the non-living (abiotic) and living (biotic) components of an ecosystem.

expectations and deleting those that lacked reference data. Volume II documents the development of each expectation and will serve as the definitive source of success criteria for the remainder of the restoration project. The restoration expectations can be used to evaluate restoration success and guide management because each expectation describes the anticipated response of an attribute of the ecosystem to the restoration project.

Anticipated responses of individual attributes are based on the difference between the baseline condition of the channelized ecosystem and an estimate of the reference condition prior to channelization, before ecological integrity was lost. Abiotic attributes can include water, soils, and materials such as oxygen. Biotic attributes can include a population of a single species such as largemouth bass or a community of species such as the group of plant species that form a marsh wetland on the floodplain. Each attribute is described by at least one metric that indicates how the attribute is being quantified. The metric can be expressed in many different forms such as concentration, duration, flow, number of species, number of individuals, or area of coverage. It may also specify a location where the measurements will be made, such as on the floodplain; and a time period for making measurements, such as only during the wet season. Because the expectations specify predicted values for particular metrics, they can be tested with data collected in the future by the evaluation program.

**RESTORATION EXPECTATIONS
DEVELOPMENT**

A major goal of Volume II was to document the development of each expectation in a standardized format. This format reflects the actual process used to guide the development of the expectations (Figure 5) and ensures that critical pieces of information are specified for each expectation. The common format also allows them to be reviewed and readily compared.

Restoration Expectation — A description of the condition of ecological integrity for one or more specific metrics that describe an attribute within the Kissimmee River ecosystem.

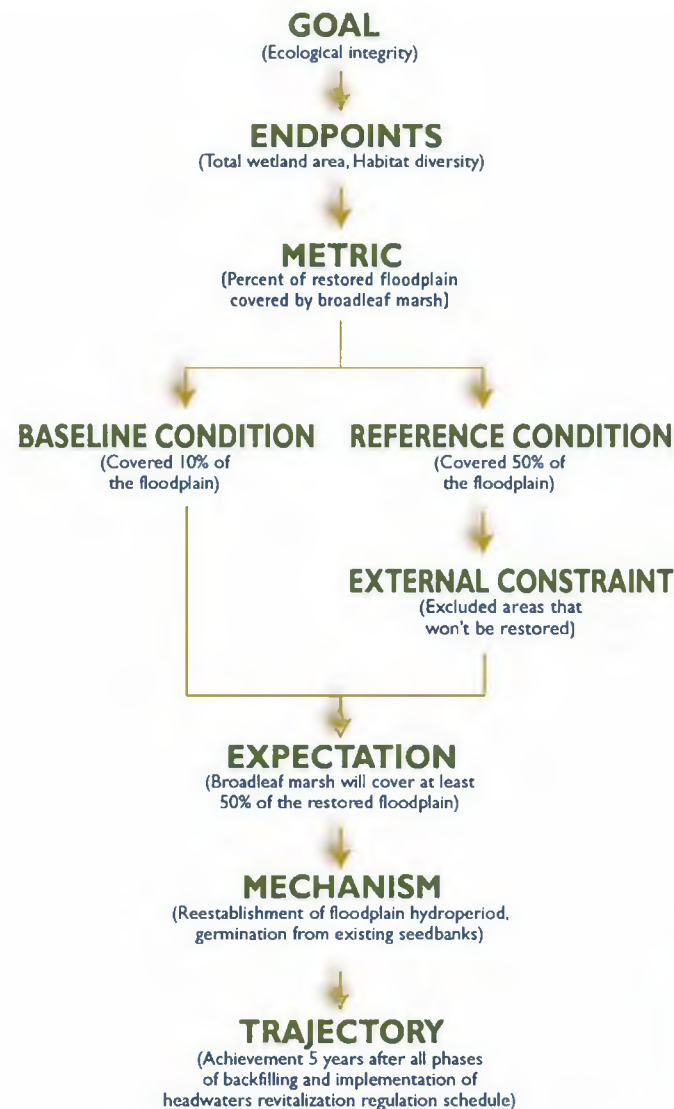


Figure 5. Process or sequence of steps for developing a restoration expectation for Kissimmee River Restoration Project. Parentheses contain examples based on Expectation 13 for Areal Coverage of Broadleaf Marsh.

As shown in Figure 5, the process of developing expectations begins with the goal of reestablishing ecological integrity. For purposes of

developing restoration expectations, the time period before the Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project represents ecological integrity in the Kissimmee Basin. The next step involved expressing the ecological integrity goal as a set of key characteristics of the system called endpoints. Each endpoint was represented by one or more metrics. For each metric, studies were conducted to collect data on remnant river channels or on the floodplain to establish the baseline condition. Reference conditions used to estimate pre-channelization conditions were identified from pre-existing data for each metric, and reference condition estimates were adjusted to account for constraints that are outside the influence of the restoration project. For example, the use of the restored ecosystem by highly mobile animals such as birds may be influenced

Expectations and Reference Conditions

- *Expectations were developed only when suitable reference data were available to estimate pre-channelization conditions.*
- *A number of attributes for which reference conditions were not available will be monitored because of their importance to the system, although expectations were not developed.*

by habitat conditions outside of the project area. The summary statement of an expectation is expressed as the difference between the baseline condition and the reference condition, adjusted for anticipated external constraints. For each expectation, a mechanism is proposed that outlines conceptually how the restoration project will cause the expectation to be achieved. Finally, a trajectory or appropriate time frame is identified for achieving the responses.

OVERVIEW OF THE RESTORATION EXPECTATIONS FOR THE KISSIMMEE RIVER AND FLOODPLAIN

Expectations were developed for metrics for which reference conditions were found. Despite extensive efforts, adequate reference conditions were not found for some important attributes, such as phosphorus, algal communities, and the species composition of floodplain plant communities. Although these attributes lack expectations, they are and will continue to be monitored. The 25 expectations (see the inset boxes below) are written in a highly technical style to facilitate formal statistical testing. The following paragraphs provide more general descriptions of the expectations.

Hydrology, Geomorphology and Water Quality Restoration Expectations

The first nine expectations describe responses by non-living or abiotic attributes of the ecosystem, including hydrology (depth and flow of water), geomorphology (river channel characteristics), and water quality (dissolved oxygen and turbidity). These abiotic responses are important because they describe habitat conditions that will lead to responses by plants and animals. Of these nine, five are especially important because they describe the reestablishment of the hydrologic attributes (water level, velocity, and discharge) that will drive other responses to the restoration project. These hydrologic



expectations emphasize the maintenance of flow in the river channel throughout the year, with a seasonal pattern of increasing and decreasing flow as in the pre-channelization river. The hydrologic expectations also emphasize a natural pattern of water level fluctuation in the river and floodplain and a slow rate of water level recession after high-water events, allowing the floodplain to be inundated for long periods of time.

Two expectations describe geomorphic responses to changes in the transport and deposition of river channel sediments that reflect the reestablishment of pre-channelization flow. These changes will result in exposure of the natural sand sediments and active formation of point sand bars. These geomorphic responses are critical for reestablishing habitat for plants and animals in the river channel.

The last two abiotic expectations describe changes in two general indicators of water quality — concentration of oxygen dissolved in water, and water turbidity. Maintaining desirable concentrations of

Expectations for Hydrology

- 1) *The number of days that discharge is equal to 0 cfs in a water year will be zero for the restored channel of the Kissimmee River*
- 2) *Intraannual monthly mean flows will reflect historic seasonal patterns and have interannual variability (coefficient of variation) 1.0.*
- 3) *River channel stage will exceed the average ground elevation for 180 d per water year and stages will fluctuate by 3.75 feet.*
- 4) *An annual prolonged recession event will be reestablished with an average duration 173 days and with peak stages in the wet season receding to a low stage in the dry season at a rate that will not exceed 1.0 ft (30 cm) per 30 days.*
- 5) *Mean velocities within the main river channel will range from 0.8 to 1.8 ft/s (0.2 to 0.6 m/s) a minimum of 85% of the year.*

Expectations for Geomorphology

- 6) *In restored river channels, mean thickness of substrate-overlying river bed deposits will decrease by 65%, percent of samples without substrate-overlying river bed deposits will increase by 165%, and the thickness of substrate-overlying river bed deposits at the thalweg (deepest point in the channel) will decrease by 70%.*
- 7) *Point bars will form on the inside bends of river channel meanders with an arc angle 70°.*

dissolved oxygen is important because it is essential to most aquatic organisms. The expectation for dissolved oxygen predicts increased concentrations of dissolved oxygen. In remnant river channels, the concentration of dissolved oxygen is chronically low because the lack of flow reduced the rate at which oxygen in the air dissolved into river water, and because dead plant material accumulated in the stagnant remnant channels.

Expectations for Water Quality

- 8) *Mean daytime concentration of dissolved oxygen in the Kissimmee River channel at 0.5–1.0 m depth will increase from 1–2 mg/L to 3–6 mg/L during the wet season (June–November) and from 2–4 mg/L to 5–7 mg/L during the dry season (December–May). Mean daily concentrations will be greater than 2 mg/L more than 90% of the time. Dissolved oxygen concentrations within 1 m of the channel bottom will exceed 1 mg/L more than 50% of the time.*
- 9) *Mean turbidity in the restored river channel will not differ significantly from mean turbidity in similar south Florida streams (3.9 NTU), and the median Total Suspended Solids concentration will not exceed 3 mg/L.*

The turbidity of water (an inverse measure of water clarity) is important because higher turbidity levels may indicate increases in sediment transport, limit light for submerged vegetation and attached algae, and decrease the efficiency with which some animals filter food from the water.

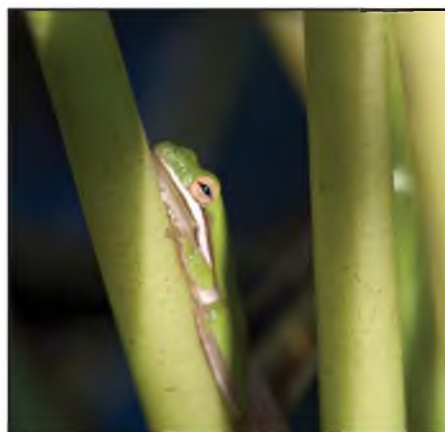
Vegetation Restoration Expectations

The remaining expectations focus on biological aspects of the Kissimmee River's restored channel and floodplain. All of the biotic expectations are valuable as biological indicators of restoration success, but many also serve as indicators of habitat conditions for other organisms. For example, vegetation is an important component of the habitat of many animals because it can serve as a food source and provide shelter. Invertebrates, amphibians, reptiles, and small fish are important food sources for larger animals such as largemouth bass and wading birds that occupy positions at the top of the food web.

Expectations for Vegetation

- 10) *Littoral vegetation beds will persist in restored river channels, but their mean widths will decrease to: (a) Five meters or less from the bank on inner channel bends. (b) Four meters or less from the bank on straight channel reaches.*
- 11) *Littoral plant community structure will undergo the following changes in restored river channels: (a) Combined mean relative cover of emergent species will increase to > 80%. (b) Combined mean relative cover of floating and mat-forming species will decrease to < 10%.*
- 12) *Wetland plant communities will cover ≥80% of the area of the restored floodplain in Phases I-IV.*
- 13) *Broadleaf marsh will cover at least 50% of the floodplain restored in Phases I-IV.*
- 14) *Wet prairie communities will cover at least 17% of the floodplain restored by Phases I-IV of the restoration project.*

Changes in plant communities in the restored river channel and floodplain are described by five expectations. In the restored river channel, vegetation cover is expected to decrease as a result of reestablishing continuous flow. The relative cover of emergent plant species should increase, and the relative cover of floating and mat-forming species should decrease. Expectations for plant communities on the floodplain predict increases in the total area of wetland plant communities, particularly broadleaf marsh and wet prairie, the two most common types of wetland found in this ecosystem.



Aquatic Invertebrates, Amphibians, and Reptiles Restoration Expectations

Aquatic invertebrates, amphibians, and reptiles will play many roles in the restored river floodplain ecosystem, especially because individual taxa will tend to occupy positions near the middle of the food web. Expectations for aquatic invertebrates describe changes in communities or guilds (i.e., a group of organisms using the same resources, such as consuming the same types of food) using measures of abundance and community structure in the restored river channel and on the floodplain.

The two expectations for amphibians and reptiles describe the richness (number of species) of the community in the restored ecosystem and the number of months out of the year that larval amphibians will be present in restored floodplain wetlands.

Expectations for Aquatic Macroinvertebrates

- 15) *Macroinvertebrate drift composition will be dominated by Coleoptera, Diptera, Ephemeroptera, and Trichoptera.*
- 16) *The passive filtering-collector guild will account for the greatest proportion of mean annual density, mean annual biomass, and mean annual snag-dwelling macroinvertebrate production.*
- 17) *Aquatic macroinvertebrate species richness and species diversity will be > 65 and > 2.37 respectively, in restored broadleaf marsh (currently pasture in the channelized system).*
- 18) *The macroinvertebrate fauna of river channel benthic (bottom associated) habitats will primarily consist of taxa that are common and characteristic of sandy substrates.*

Expectations for Amphibians and Reptiles

- 19) *At least 24 wetland amphibian and reptile taxa will be found in broadleaf marsh habitats that have been restored from pasture.*
- 20) *Larval amphibians will be present for at least seven months each year in broadleaf marsh habitats that have been restored from pasture.*

Fish and Bird Restoration Expectations

Fish and birds will also play diverse roles in the restored ecosystem, and some species belonging to these groups tend to occupy the highest positions in the food web. Fish and birds are especially important groups of animals because they include taxa that are significant to the local economy as recreational resources (game fish and waterfowl) and some, such as most wading birds, that are highly visible and valued by the public. Three expectations describe anticipated changes in the fish communities in the river channel and floodplain. These fish expectations describe increases in the abundance of small fish in restored marshes, a shift in the structure of the fish community in the river channel towards one more typical of a flowing water system, and an increase in the number of species and proportion of individuals occurring in restored marshes that are off-channel dependents (i.e., at least one stage in the life cycle is restricted to non-flowing, vegetated areas that are usually found in habitats off the main channel).

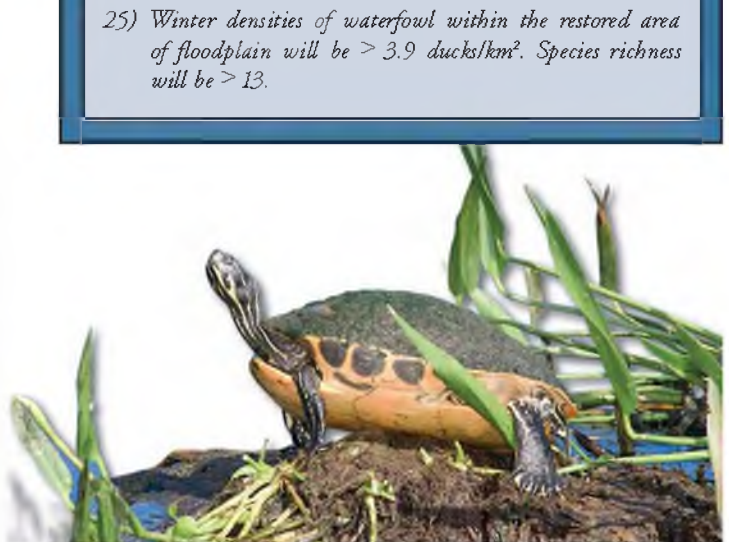
The expectations for bird communities call for increases in the number of long-legged wading birds during the dry season and for increases in the number of waterfowl species and total individuals during the winter.

Expectations for Fish

- 21) *Mean annual density of small fishes (fishes < 10 cm total length) within restored marsh habitats will be > 18 fish/m².*
- 22) *Mean annual relative abundance of fishes in the restored river channel will consist of < 1% *Amia calva* (bowfin), < 3% *Lepisosteus platyrhincus* (Florida gar), > 16% *Lepomis auritus*, redbreast sunfish, and > 58% centrarchids (sunfishes).*
- 23) *Off-channel dependents will comprise > 50% of fish assemblage composition in restored floodplain habitats and will be represented by > 12 taxa. Young-of-the-year or juveniles will comprise > 30% of the off-channel dependent guild.*

Expectations for Birds

- 24) *Mean annual dry season density of long-legged wading birds (excluding cattle egrets) on the restored floodplain will be > 30.6 birds/km².*
- 25) *Winter densities of waterfowl within the restored area of floodplain will be > 3.9 ducks/km². Species richness will be > 13.*



Expectations for the Kissimmee River Restoration Project

Hydrology

- 1) The number of days that discharge is equal to 0 cfs in a water year will be zero for the restored channel of the Kissimmee River.
- 2) Intraannual monthly mean flows will reflect historic seasonal patterns and have interannual variability (coefficient of variation) ≤ 1.0 .
- 3) River channel stage will exceed the average ground elevation for 180 d per water year and stages will fluctuate by 3.75 feet.
- 4) An annual prolonged recession event will be reestablished with an average duration ≥ 173 days and with peak stages in the wet season receding to a low stage in the dry season at a rate that will not exceed 1.0 ft (30 cm) per 30 days.
- 5) Mean velocities within the main river channel will range from 0.8 to 1.8 ft/s (0.2 to 0.6 m/s) a minimum of 85% of the year.

Geomorphology

- 6) In restored river channels, mean thickness of substrate-overlying river bed deposits will decrease by $\geq 65\%$, percent of samples without substrate-overlying river bed deposits will increase by $\geq 165\%$, and the thickness of substrate-overlying river bed deposits at the thalweg (deepest point of the channel) will decrease by $\geq 70\%$.
- 7) Point bars will form on the inside bends of river channel meanders with an arc angle $\geq 70^\circ$.

Water Quality

- 8) Mean daytime concentration of dissolved oxygen in the Kissimmee River channel at 0.5–1.0 m depth will increase from ≤ 1 –2 mg/L to 3–6 mg/L during the wet season (June–November) and from 2–4 mg/L to 5–7 mg/L during the dry season (December–May). Mean daily concentrations will be greater than 2 mg/L more than 90% of the time. Dissolved oxygen concentrations within 1 m of the channel bottom will exceed 1 mg/L more than 50% of the time.
- 9) Mean turbidity in the restored river channel will not differ significantly from mean turbidity in similar south Florida streams (3.9 NTU), and the median Total Suspended Solids concentration will not exceed 3 mg/L.

Vegetation

- 10) Littoral vegetation beds will persist in restored river channels, but their mean widths will decrease to: (a) Five meters or less from the bank on inner channel bends. (b) Four meters or less from the bank on straight channel reaches.
- 11) Littoral plant community structure will undergo the following changes in restored river channels: (a) Combined mean relative cover of emergent species will increase to $\geq 80\%$. (b) Combined mean relative cover of floating and mat-forming species will decrease to $\leq 10\%$.

- 12) Wetland plant communities will cover $\geq 80\%$ of the area of the restored floodplain in Phases I-IV.
- 13) Broadleaf marsh will cover at least 50% of the restored floodplain in Phases I-IV.
- 14) Wet prairie communities will cover at least 17% of the floodplain restored in Phases I-IV of the restoration project.

Aquatic Macroinvertebrates

- 15) Macroinvertebrate drift composition will be dominated by Coleoptera, Diptera, Ephemeroptera, and Trichoptera.
- 16) The passive filtering-collector guild will account for the greatest proportion of mean annual density, mean annual biomass, and mean annual snag-dwelling macroinvertebrate production.
- 17) Aquatic macroinvertebrate species richness and species diversity will be ≥ 65 and ≥ 2.37 respectively, in restored broadleaf marsh (currently pasture in the channelized system).
- 18) The macroinvertebrate fauna of river channel benthic (bottom associated) habitats will primarily consist of taxa that are common and characteristic of sandy substrates.

Amphibians and Reptiles

- 19) At least 24 wetland amphibian and reptile taxa will be found in broadleaf marsh habitats that have been restored from pasture.
- 20) Larval amphibians will be present for at least seven months each year in broadleaf marsh habitats that have been restored from pasture.

Fish

- 21) Mean annual density of small fishes (fishes ≤ 10 cm total length) within restored marsh habitats will be ≥ 18 fish/m².
- 22) Mean annual relative abundance of fishes in the restored river channel will consist of $\leq 1\%$ *Amia calva* (bowfin), $\leq 3\%$ *Lepisosteus platyrhincus* (Florida gar), $\geq 16\%$ *Lepomis auritus*, redbreast sunfish, and $\geq 58\%$ centrarchids (sunfishes).
- 23) Off-channel dependents will comprise $\geq 50\%$ of fish assemblage composition in restored floodplain habitats and will be represented by ≥ 12 taxa. Young-of-the-year or juveniles will comprise $\geq 30\%$ of the off-channel dependent guild.

Birds

- 24) Mean annual dry season density of long-legged wading birds (excluding cattle egrets) on the restored floodplain will be ≥ 30.6 birds/km².
- 25) Winter densities of waterfowl within the restored area of floodplain will be ≥ 3.9 ducks/km². Species richness will be ≥ 13 .



KISSIMMEE RIVER RESTORATION SUCCESS AND ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT

The restoration expectations will be used to guide the evaluation of project success and modification or adaptation of management actions for the restored Kissimmee River and floodplain. Assessment of project success will consider all of the expectations, which collectively describe the state of a Kissimmee River and floodplain with ecological integrity. This assessment will also consider other information collected by the evaluation program, including monitoring information that may not be associated with specific restoration expectations.

Evaluation of the restoration expectations will provide feedback for adaptive management by indicating whether particular attributes are recovering to the predicted state within the specified appropriate time frame (Figure 6). Slower recovery of an attribute can serve as a trigger for analysis to determine why the response is occurring more slowly than anticipated and whether monitoring should be continued or modified. Such analyses would also consider if modifications to management actions, such as fine tuning of flow regimes, are necessary to facilitate recovery. Alternatively, these analyses may also lead to reevaluation of expectations.

***Adaptive Management** — An approach to the management of natural resources where management actions are monitored, evaluated, and used to adjust future management actions.*

ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT



Figure 6. Adaptive management is an iterative process that involves monitoring, evaluating expectations, and analysis to determine if monitoring should be continued, modified, or terminated; and whether management actions need to also be modified to achieve project success.

KISSIMMEE RIVER RESTORATION: LOOKING FORWARD

This new series of publications on the Kissimmee River Restoration Program begins with two volumes that establish the foundations of the restoration evaluation program. Volume I, *Establishing a Baseline: Pre-Restoration Studies of the Channelized Kissimmee River*, characterizes the condition of the channelized system and uses comparisons to reference conditions to identify metrics that indicate the impacts of channelization and that should be most useful for evaluating the restoration project. Volume II, *Defining Success: Expectations for Restoration of the Kissimmee River*, summarizes the 25 expectations that can be used to evaluate the restoration project. Completion of restoration project construction is projected for 2012, and monitoring for restoration evaluation is required by federal-state agreement to continue for an additional five years through 2017. As future project milestones are reached, additional publications or brochures will be added to this series.

The comprehensive analysis of data presented in these two volumes sets the stage for evaluation of the first phase of the restoration project by identifying specific metrics for measurement and time lines for evaluation. Coupling the understanding gained from the existing field monitoring program for restoration evaluation to the insights that will be gained from future hydrologic simulation analyses of basin operations will facilitate ongoing adaptive management and ultimately will result in greater integration of Kissimmee watershed management with the Kissimmee River Restoration Project. Integration of management practices will be essential for addressing the pressing and sometimes conflicting issues associated with flood control, water supply, water quality, and natural systems management in the Kissimmee watershed, which is predicted to increase in population size by approximately 90% over the next twenty years, making it the fastest growing region within the South Florida Water Management District boundaries.

For additional information on Kissimmee River Restoration please visit our website at: www.sfwmd.gov

**VOLUME II
KISSIMMEE RIVER RESTORATION STUDIES**



Defining Success: Expectations for Restoration of the Kissimmee River

Edited by:
David H. Anderson
Stephen G. Bousquin
Gary F. Williams
David J. Colangelo

sfwmd.gov

STUDIES

**VOLUME I
KISSIMMEE RIVER RESTORATION STUDIES**



Establishing a Baseline: Pre-restoration Studies of the Channelized Kissimmee River

Edited by:
Stephen G. Bousquin
David H. Anderson
Gary F. Williams
David J. Colangelo

sfwmd.gov

KISSIMMEE RIVER RESTORATION STUDIES

Technical Publication ERA 432A



South Florida Water Management District
3301 Gun Club Road • West Palm Beach, Florida 33406
561-686-8800 • FL WATS 1-800-432-2045 • www.sfwmd.gov

MAILING ADDRESS: P.O. Box 24680 • West Palm Beach, FL 33416-4680

sfwmd.gov

VOLUME I
KISSIMMEE RIVER RESTORATION STUDIES



*Establishing a Baseline: Pre-restoration
Studies of the Channelized Kissimmee River*

November 2005
Technical Publication ERA 432

Edited by:

Stephen G. Bousquin

David H. Anderson

Gary E. Williams

David J. Colangelo

sfwmd.gov

KISSIMMEE RIVER RESTORATION STUDIES

ESTABLISHING A BASELINE: PRE-RESTORATION STUDIES OF THE CHANNELIZED KISSIMMEE RIVER

*Edited by Stephen G. Bousquin, David H. Anderson,
Gary E. Williams, and David J. Colangelo*

Technical Publication ERA #432

November 2005



sfwmd.gov

South Florida Water Management District, 3301 Gun Club Road, West Palm Beach,
Florida 33406

(561)686-8800 / FL WATS 1-800-432-2045

Mailing Address: P. O. Box 24680, West Palm Beach, FL 33416-4680

Editors: Stephen G. Bousquin, David H. Anderson, Gary E. Williams, and David J. Colangelo

Technical Editors: Kate Colangelo, Monica L. Daeumler, and Brent C. Anderson

Cover Photo: Patrick Lynch

Cover Designer: Jeanne Brais

Photo Researcher: Monica L. Daeumler and Brent C. Anderson

Majority of Photos by: Patrick Lynch

Suggested Citation Format:

Bousquin, S. G., D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. 2005. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.

Printed in the United States of America

Additional copies or CDs of this volume are available from the below listed address:

Kissimmee Division
Watershed Management Department
South Florida Water Management District
3301 Gun Club Road, MS 4460
West Palm Beach, Florida 33406

**ESTABLISHING A BASELINE: PRE-RESTORATION STUDIES OF THE CHANNELIZED
KISSIMMEE RIVER**

CONTENTS

Contents	----- Page iii
Acknowledgments	----- Page v
Chapter 1 Introduction to Baseline Studies of the Channelized Kissimmee River <i>Stephen G. Bousquin, David H. Anderson, David J. Colangelo, and Gary E. Williams</i>	----- Page 1-1
Chapter 2 Impacts of Channelization on the Kissimmee River, Florida <i>David H. Anderson and Joanne R. Chamberlain</i>	----- Page 2-1
Chapter 3 River Channel Geomorphology of the Channelized Kissimmee River, Florida <i>David H. Anderson, Don Frei, and William Patrick Davis</i>	----- Page 3-1
Chapter 4 Dissolved Oxygen in the Channelized Kissimmee River and Seven Reference Streams <i>David J. Colangelo and Bradley L. Jones</i>	----- Page 4-1
Chapter 5 Water Quality in the Channelized Kissimmee River <i>Bradley L. Jones</i>	----- Page 5-1
Chapter 6 Algal Species Richness, Diversity and Biomass in the Channelized Kissimmee River <i>David J. Colangelo, Robert W. Pillsbury, and Shelly L. Schmidt</i>	----- Page 6-1
Chapter 7 Littoral Vegetation in the Channelized Kissimmee River <i>Stephen G. Bousquin</i>	----- Page 7-1
Chapter 8 Channelized Kissimmee River Floodplain Vegetation <i>Stephen G. Bousquin</i>	----- Page 8-1

Chapter 9	Classification of the Vegetation of the Kissimmee River and Floodplain <i>Stephen G. Bousquin and Laura L. Carnal</i>	----- Page 9-1
Chapter 10	Areal coverage of the Floodplain Plant Communities in Pool C of the Channelized Kissimmee River <i>Laura L. Carnal and Stephen G. Bousquin</i>	----- Page 10-1
Chapter 11	Aquatic Invertebrate Community Structure and Functional Characteristics in the Kissimmee River-Floodplain Ecosystem: Baseline and Reference Conditions and Expectations for Restoration <i>Joseph W. Koebel Jr., David H. Anderson, and Lourdes M. Rojas</i>	----- Page 11-1
Chapter 12	Amphibian and Reptile Communities of the Lower Kissimmee River Basin Prior to Restoration: Baseline and Reference Conditions and Expectations for Restoration <i>Joseph W. Koebel Jr., J. Lawrence Glenn III, and R. Harper Carroll IV</i>	----- Page 12-1
Chapter 13	Status of Fish Assemblages of the Kissimmee River Prior to Restoration Baseline Conditions and Expectations for Restoration <i>J. Lawrence Glenn III</i>	----- Page 13-1
Chapter 14	Studies of Bird Assemblages and Federally-Listed Bird Species of the Channelized Kissimmee River, Florida <i>Gary E. Williams and Stefani L. Melvin</i>	----- Page 14-1
A	Appendix	----- Page A-1
MA	Map Appendix	----- Page MA-1
DA	Digital Appendix (Located on the CD attached at the back of the Executive Summary)	----- Page DA-1

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The editors would like to extend their thanks to Bonnie Rose for her assistance and coordination of the various maps used in these volumes; to Monica L. Daeumler and Brent C. Anderson for formatting both volumes and developing an associated literature database; to R. Harper Carroll IV, Rene Hartless, Kim Kanter, Jennifer Zimmerman, Christine Carlson, Lou Toth, and Jose Valdes, who have made significant contributions to the Kissimmee River Restoration Evaluation program; to former Kissimmee Division Directors Seán Sculley, Larry Gerry, Paul Whalen, and Patricia Strayer, and Jennifer Jorge, current Division Director, for program leadership and support. Previous versions of these chapters were improved by comments from an external review panel that included Drs. Arthur C. Benke, Arnold G. van der Valk, Clifford N. Dahm, James R. Karr, and Milton W. Weller. We appreciate the panel's encouragement to improve and publish these chapters.



CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION TO BASELINE STUDIES OF THE CHANNELIZED KISSIMMEE RIVER

Stephen G. Bousquin, David H. Anderson, David J. Colangelo, and Gary E. Williams

*Kissimmee Division, Watershed Management Department, South Florida Water Management District,
West Palm Beach, FL 33406*

The Kissimmee River in central Florida (Figure 1-1) is the subject of one of the largest river restoration projects in the world. The goal of the project is to restore ecological function and biological communities to much of the river and floodplain, primarily by restoring lost hydrologic drivers. The project is expected to affect over 150 km² of former floodplain, and will restore approximately 80 km² of floodplain wetlands and over 70 km of meandering river channel. The restoration effort has a projected cost of \$578 million and will take an estimated 15 years to complete. With a project of this size and scope, evaluation of success is of considerable interest. This volume collects the results of studies conducted prior to the start of restoration of the Kissimmee River to establish a benchmark for comparison with the restored system. These baseline studies will be used to evaluate changes resulting from the restoration, and ultimately, to evaluate the success of the project in meeting its primary goal, restoration of ecological integrity.

As part of the Central & Southern Florida (C&SF) flood control project, canal C-38 was excavated along the entire length of the Kissimmee River floodplain. The canal was designed to provide a high level of flood protection for surrounding communities and agricultural interests after a number of disastrous hurricanes and floods in the early half of the 20th century. The primary flood protection strategy in the design of C-38 was to contain all flow that the river and floodplain had formerly carried. The canal effectively eliminated flow in the river and ended seasonal overbank flow and inundation of the floodplain. This highly successful engineering project was decried for its environmental impacts even before it was completed in 1971.

The project resulted in the loss of almost 8000 ha of wetlands; drastic declines in bird, fish, and other animal populations that depended on the wetlands; and substantial reductions in water quality. Initial studies explored ways to restore some portion of the river and floodplain while retaining the level of flood protection provided by the C&SF project. Modeling and evaluation in the early stages of feasibility planning indicated that adequate flood protection could be sustained by a combined strategy of property acquisition and backfilling of over one-third of the canal's 56 mile reach. The main engineering/construction efforts of the restoration project are to backfill a substantial portion of C-38, which bisects the Kissimmee River's floodplain, and to recarve and reconnect disconnected (remnant) river channels where necessary to restore continuity to the river channel. These efforts, when coupled with system operation strategies, will result in the restoration of flow to the river and seasonal inundation to the floodplain. Reestablished flow and inundation are expected to restore ecosystem function, and provide the impetus for recovery of native communities.

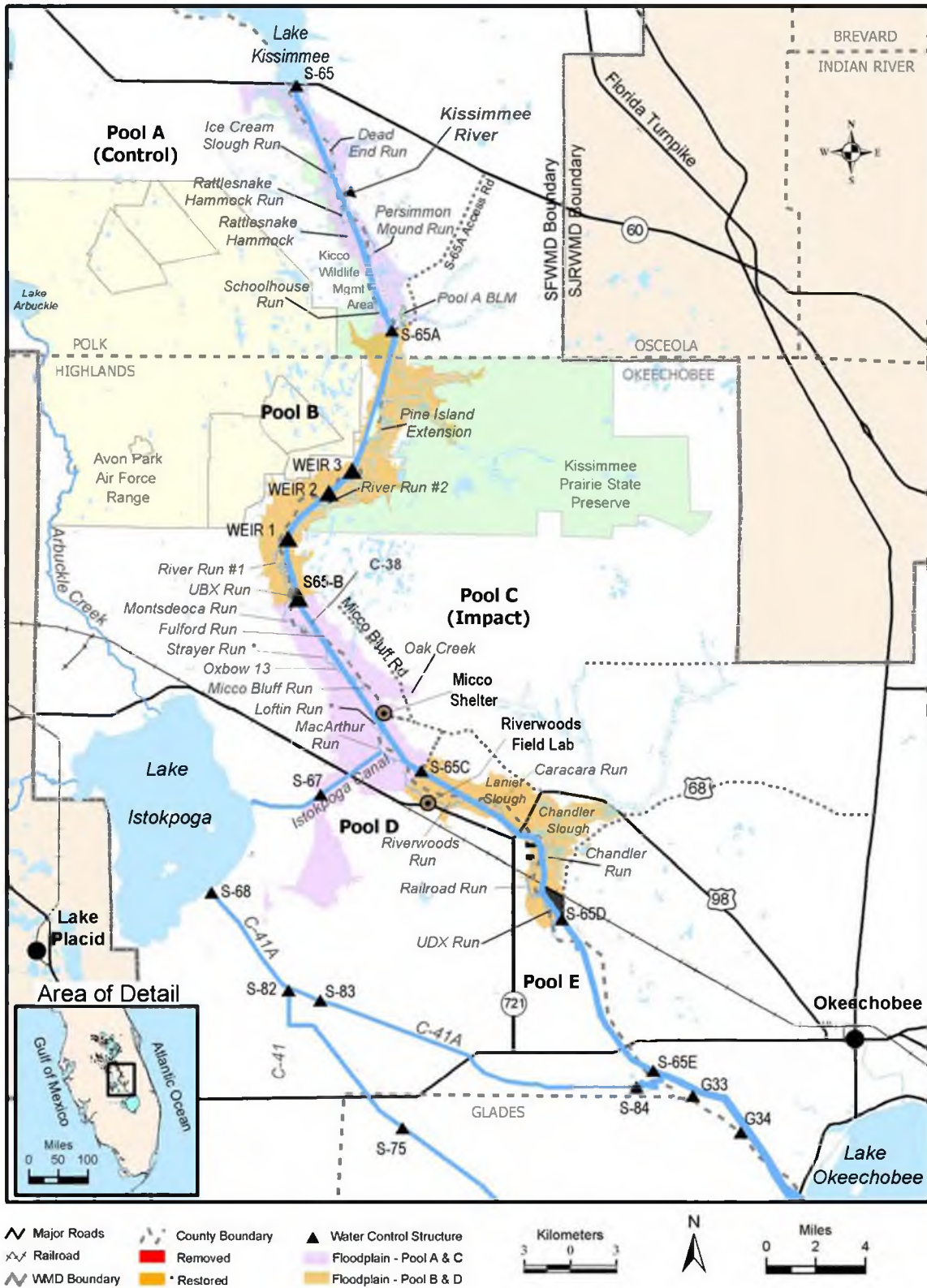


Figure 1-1. Map of the Kissimmee River from Lake Kissimmee to Lake Okeechobee.

This volume presents a diverse set of ecological studies designed and conducted specifically for the purpose of restoration evaluation. The scope of data collection in these studies has rarely been implemented for a channelized river. Primary goals of the volume are to collect what has been learned about the impacts of channelization on the river ecosystem and to establish a baseline for future comparisons with post-restoration data. In addition to presentation of baseline data, most of the chapters also predict specific responses of biological or abiotic attributes of the restored river and floodplain based on estimates of conditions prior to channelization. A companion volume (Anderson et al. 2005) summarizes these predictions in the form of restoration performance measures called expectations.

The specific objectives of this chapter are to provide:

- (1) a brief overview of the history of impacts to the Kissimmee River,
- (2) a summary of the plan to restore the river,
- (3) a presentation of the approach and logic of the Kissimmee River Restoration Evaluation Program (KRREP),
- (4) an overview of the 13 baseline chapters, each of which encompasses one or more studies conducted for the restoration evaluation program.

HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

Regional Setting

The Kissimmee River watershed is located in south-central Florida (Figure 1-1). The watershed is typically subdivided into the upper basin, which encompasses 4135 km² and consists of approximately 24 lakes varying in size from 0.5 to 152 km²; and the 1731 km² lower Kissimmee Basin, located between Lake Kissimmee and Lake Okeechobee, which contains the Kissimmee River and tributaries. The river and floodplain slope to the south from an elevation of 15.5 m at Lake Kissimmee to 4.6 m at Lake Okeechobee (approximately 0.07 m km⁻¹) (Koebel 1995).

The regional climate is humid sub-tropical, with nearly equal-length wet and dry seasons and an average yearly rainfall of 121 and 114 cm in the upper and lower basins, respectively (Figure 1-2). Air temperature ranges from 5° C to 30° C (Figure 1-3). Soils of the lower Kissimmee basin consist mostly of the Manatee-Delray-Okeelanta soil association (McCollum and Pendleton 1971). These soils typically have a surface layer high in organic matter content overlying mineral subsoil (Toth et al. 1995).

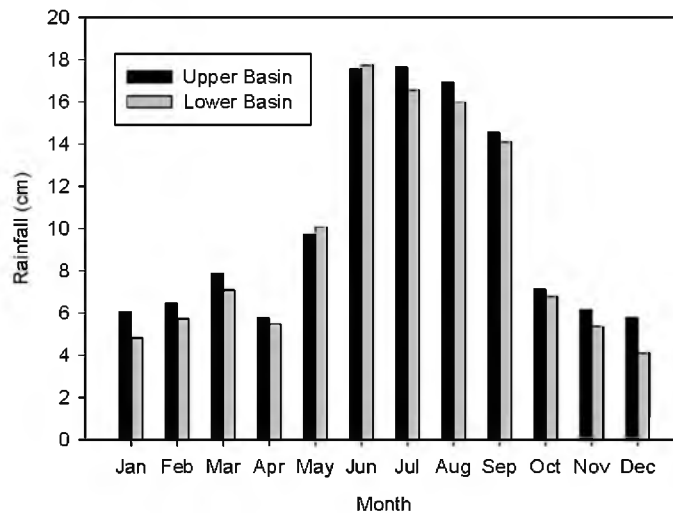


Figure 1-2. Average monthly rainfall in the upper and lower Kissimmee Basins (1971-2000).

Early Changes in the Kissimmee River Basin

A number of events altered the Kissimmee River Basin and affected conditions within the river (Table 1-1). These events began with the Seminole Wars, which opened the basin for settlement by European-Americans. The Second Seminole War (1835 - 1842) ended with the Seminoles confined to a temporary reservation that included the Peace River, the head of Lake Istokpoga and the Kissimmee River southward to Lake Okeechobee (Tebeau 1971). During this war, the military made several expeditions into the basin including a canoe trip up the Kissimmee River and around some of the lakes (Preble 1945). Fort Gardiner was constructed between Lake Hatchineha and Lake Kissimmee in the upper basin and Fort Basinger was constructed in the lower basin. The conclusion of the Third Seminole War (1855 - 1858) pushed the Seminoles south of Lake Okeechobee into the Everglades and the Big Cypress area, and opened the Kissimmee Basin to settlement. Ranchers and farmers settled in the basin and began to drain swampland, which further opened the area to development.

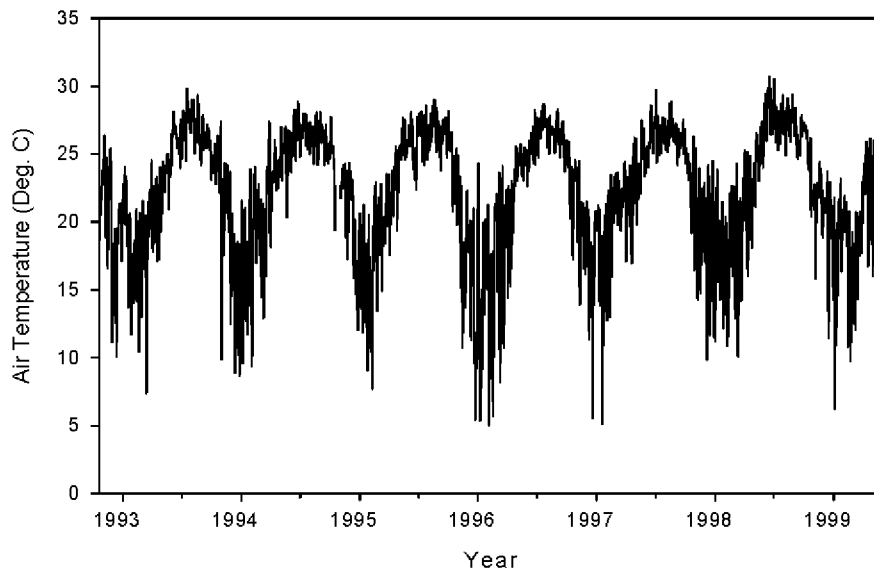


Figure 1-3. Mean daily temperature at water control structure S-65C from October 1992 - June 1999 (SFWMD DBHYDRO Database).

A major factor in the development of the basin was the passage by the U. S. Congress of the Swamp and Overflowed Land Act of 1850. This act allowed the state legislatures to transfer the ownership of swamp and overflowed lands to private entities with the stipulation that proceeds be used to reclaim the land through drainage and levee projects (Blake 1980). Hamilton Disston, a wealthy businessman from Pennsylvania and co-heir to the Disston Saw Company, was interested in draining wetlands to facilitate agricultural and residential development. In 1881, he negotiated a contract with the State of Florida's Internal Improvement Fund that would allow him to keep half of the land that he drained in and around Lake Okeechobee and the Kissimmee River. To conduct this drainage project, Disston formed the Atlantic and Gulf Coast Canal and Okeechobee Land Company and became its largest stockholder.

Between 1881 and 1884, the Gulf Coast Canal and Okeechobee Land Company dredged a canal to connect Lake Okeechobee with the Caloosahatchee River, the Southport Canal to connect Lake Tohopekaliga and Lake Cypress, and the St. Cloud Canal between Lake Tohopekaliga and East Lake Tohopekaliga. Additional dredging of and snag removal from existing river channels and lakes created a navigable waterway between St. Cloud on East Lake Tohopekaliga to Fort Myers on the Gulf Coast. As a result of this project, water levels in the Kissimmee Upper Basin dropped (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991) and the area was opened to steamboat traffic. To maintain a navigable channel, clearing and snagging operations were conducted along the Kissimmee River. A 1901 map constructed by the U. S.

Army Corps of Engineers (Map of the Kissimmee River from Lake Kissimmee to Lake Okeechobee, surveyed under the direction of Captain T. H. Rees), shows a number of channel remnants that were probably cut-off by Disston's dredging activities. Commercial steamboat traffic between the towns of Kissimmee and Fort Myers on the coast began in 1885 and continued into the 1920s. Steamboats as large as 75 feet in length could now carry supplies from the coast to settlers in the interior of the state, and products such as oranges, hides, resin, wood, fish, and turpentine could be transported on the return trip.

In 1902, Congress authorized the Corps of Engineers to construct a navigation channel three feet deep and 30 feet wide extending from the city of Kissimmee to Fort Basinger in what is now Pool D. A similar channel was constructed in Istokpoga Creek, which connects Lake Istokpoga to the Kissimmee River. These projects were completed in 1909. The newly dredged channels were used until the 1920s when railroads became the primary transport for commercial products. The last federal navigational maintenance of these channels occurred in 1927 (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991).

By 1938, the lower reach of the Kissimmee River was modified during construction of the 34 foot tall Herbert Hoover Dike around the south shore of Lake Okeechobee. This flood control project was initiated in response to extreme flooding and loss of life during the September 1928 hurricane (Blake 1980). A minor feature of this project was the construction of a 6.5 mile levee along the east side of the Kissimmee River below what is now Pool E (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1956). The material used to construct the levee was excavated from an eight mile long borrow canal. When part of the flow to Lake Okeechobee was diverted through the borrow canal, it became known as Government Cut and the section of river channel that was cut off became known as Paradise Run. Paradise Run continued to receive some flow and fluctuating water levels (Perrin et al. 1982).

Channelization and the Central & Southern Florida Flood Control Project

In response to severe droughts and hurricanes which caused extensive, prolonged flooding in the Kissimmee Basin in the mid 1940's, Congress authorized the Central & Southern Florida (C&SF) flood control project in 1948. This project would increase flood protection, allow for better control over the flow of water throughout the upper and lower Kissimmee Basins, and significantly alter the hydrology of the area. The Kissimmee River portion of the C&SF project was authorized by Congress in 1954 and was designed between 1954 and 1960. The river was channelized between 1962 and 1971. The project included excavation of a 90 km long, 10 m deep, 100 m wide flood control canal (C-38) that bisected the Kissimmee River floodplain from Lake Kissimmee to Lake Okeechobee, and construction of six water control structures (S-65 - S-65E) along the length of the canal (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991).

In addition to channelizing the Kissimmee River, the C&SF project enlarged some of the canals connecting lakes in the upper basin, and installed water control structures to regulate lake levels and the movement of water between the lakes. The S-65 structure installed at the outflow from Lake Kissimmee regulated the releases to the Kissimmee River.

The C&SF project also modified the routing of water between Lake Istokpoga and the Kissimmee River. Prior to the C&SF project, Istokpoga Creek connected the lake with the river. By 1949, a local drainage district had excavated the Istokpoga Canal parallel to Istokpoga Creek and installed a sheet pile weir (G-85 structure) to regulate flow to the river. The principal outflow from the lake continued to involve overflowing the southwestern end, creating sheetflow across the Indian Prairie toward Lake Okeechobee. After the C&SF project, the principal outflow from Lake Istokpoga was through the S-68 structure at the southeastern end of the lake. This structure discharged into the C-41 canal, which branched to form the C-41A and C-40 canals. The C-41A canal discharged directly into the Kissimmee River just south of the S-65E structure.

Impacts of the Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project

Following channelization of the Kissimmee River, the lower basin was transformed into a series of impounded reservoirs (pools) separated by water control structures. The 2-3 m deep original river channel was intersected by C-38, leaving stagnant, remnant river channel sections on either side of the canal. Channelization stabilized water levels, permanently inundating the southern end of each pool and permanently draining approximately two thirds of the floodplain at the northern end. Discharges, which under pre-channelization conditions were conducted by both the river channel and floodplain, were now contained entirely within the canal. Disconnected remnant river channels received virtually no discharge.

CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION TO BASELINE STUDIES

Due to the regulation schedules of the Kissimmee Upper Basin lakes, there were frequent episodes of zero discharge into the lower basin (Anderson and Chamberlain 2005, Toth et al. 1995).

Table 1-1. Timeline of events that led to changes in the Kissimmee Basin.

Year	Changes	Source
1837	Fort Gardiner built.	
	Fort Basinger built on the Kissimmee River.	
Late 1830s	Fort Kissimmee constructed.	
1856	Yates family is first family to settle in Shingle Creek.	Hetherington 1980
1881	February 26, Hamilton Disston contracts with the State of Florida to drain lands in exchange for ownership of half the reclaimed land.	
1882	January – Disston’s company completes canal to connect lake Okeechobee with the Caloosahatchee River. July – Disston’s company completes Southport Canal between Lake Tohopekaliga and Lake Cypress .	
1883	January – Disston’s company begins work on St. Cloud Canal between Lake Tohopekaliga and East Lake Tohopekaliga.	
1884	September – St. Cloud Canal completed. Over a 30 day period, water levels drop approximately 3 feet exposing a sand beach between the cypress and the new waterline.	
1883	Settlement of Allendale becomes Kissimmee City.	Mueller 1966
1884	Canal from Lake Tohopekaliga to East Lake Tohopekaliga completed; East Lake Toho stages fall 36 inches in 30 days. Canal from Lake Tohopekaliga to Lake Cypress completed. Kissimmee River was streamlined by cutting off number of bends. Snag boat in operation on the river.	Mueller 1966
1885	June 5 - Regular steamship service from Fort Meyers to Kissimmee begins.	Casselberry 1984
1902-09	Corps of Engineers completes navigation project to dredge a 3 foot navigation channel in the Kissimmee River to Istokpoga Creek; snag removal operations.	USACE 1969
1921	Completion of railroad to Fort Meyers brings steamship era to an end.	Casselberry 1984
1927	Last Federal maintenance for Kissimmee River navigation authority. Last steam boat operation on the upper basin lakes.	
1938	During the Herbert Hoover Dike Project for Lake Okeechobee, Corps of Engineers creates a 6.5 mile levee from Lake Okeechobee along the east side of the Kissimmee River. Part of the flow was diverted through the eight mile barrow canal. The canal became known as Government Cut and the remnant river channel as Paradise Run. Istokpoga Creek dredged to create Istokpoga Canal.	U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. 1969
1948	1948 Flood Control Act authorizes Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project.	
1962-71	Excavation of the C-38 canal.	Abtew 1992
1963	S-59 installed to regulate outflow from East Lake Tohopekaliga.	Guardo 1992
1963	S-61 installed to regulate outflow from Lake Tohopekaliga.	Guardo 1992
1964	S-65 installed in August to regulate the outflow from Lake Kissimmee.	Guardo 1992
1965	Installation of the S-68 on Lake Istokpoga in Dec 14.	
1970	C&SF construction completed in the upper basin lakes and interim operating schedules adopted for water control structures.	USACE 1996
1971	Lake Tohopekaliga drawdown (Feb-Nov) 1971 Governor’s Conference On Water Management recommends	Dierberg and Williams 1989

CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION TO BASELINE STUDIES

Year	Changes	Source
	restoration of the river.	
1976	Adoption of regulation schedules outlined in Report to the Governing Board on Regulatory Levels in the upper Kissimmee Basin.	USACE 1996
1977	Lake Kissimmee drawn down (Jan-Dec).	
1978-85	First Federal Feasibility Study for the Kissimmee River restoration.	
1979	Lake Tohopekaliga drawdown (Jan-May).	
1982	In April revised regulation schedules were implemented.	USACE 1996
1983	Coordinating Council recommends the backfilling plan.	
1984	Sheet pile Weir 3 installed (Oct 1 – Nov 6) for Pool B Demonstration Project.	Toth 1991
1984-90	Kissimmee River Demonstration Project.	
1985	Sheet pile Weir 2 installed (Feb 5 – Mar 16) for Pool B Demonstration Project.	Toth 1991
	Sheet pile Weir 1 installed (May 2 – Jun 9) for Pool B Demonstration Project.	Toth 1991
	Pool B stage fluctuation initiated on October 28 . (Note: Obeysekera and Loftin 1990 use September 1985).	Toth 1991
1987	Lake Tohopekaliga drawdown (Jan-Sep) with muck removal.	
1988	Kissimmee River restoration symposium adopts the ecological integrity goal.	
1990-95	Second Federal Feasibility Study recommended the level II backfilling plan	
1990	Drawdown in East Lake Tohopekaliga.	
1992	Water Resources Act authorizes the Kissimmee River restoration project.	
1994	Drawdown in Lake Jackson. Project Cooperative Agreement between the District and the U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. Test backfill constructed and high flow tests.	
1995-99	Baseline sampling conducted.	
1995	Drawdown in Lake Jackson.	
1996	Drawdown in lake Kissimmee.	
1997	Drawdown in Lake Jackson.	

The physical effects of channelization, including alteration of the system’s hydrologic characteristics, drastically reduced the extent of floodplain wetlands, and severely degraded fish and wildlife resources of the basin (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991). Approximately 8000 ha of floodplain wetlands were drained, covered with spoil material, or converted into canal (Carnal and Bousquin 2005). No-flow regimes in remnant channels encouraged extensive growth of floating vegetation, which impeded navigation (Toth 1990). Senescence and death of encroaching vegetation produced large amounts of organic matter that covered the shifting sand substrate, greatly increasing the biological oxygen demand of the system (Anderson et al. 2005).

The effects of channelization and other disturbances, such as invasion by exotic vegetation and grazing, have significantly altered plant communities of the river channel and floodplain. Wetland types such as broadleaf marsh, wet prairie, and wetland shrub communities that were dominant prior to channelization were replaced by pasture and other upland vegetation (Carnal and Bousquin 2005).

By the late 1970s, floodplain use by wintering waterfowl had plummeted. Diverse and abundant wading bird populations declined and were largely replaced by cattle egret (*Bubulcus ibis*), a species generally associated with upland, terrestrial habitats (Perrin et al. 1982).

The largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*) fishery was decimated, while fish species tolerant of low dissolved oxygen, such as Florida gar (*Lepisosteus platyrhincus*) increased (Perrin et al. 1982). Aquatic invertebrate taxa of the channelized system were typical of those found in lakes and reservoirs rather than riverine systems (Harris et al. 1995). Stabilized water levels greatly reduced river-floodplain interactions, disrupting critical food web linkages dependent on seasonal flooding and protracted floodplain recession

rates (Harris et al. 1995). Other impacts on the Kissimmee River Basin that may or may not be related to channelization include an increase in human population growth (Figure 1-4); changes in land use (South Florida Water Management District 2000); and invasion by exotic species of plants, fish, birds, and invertebrates (Ferriter et al. in press).

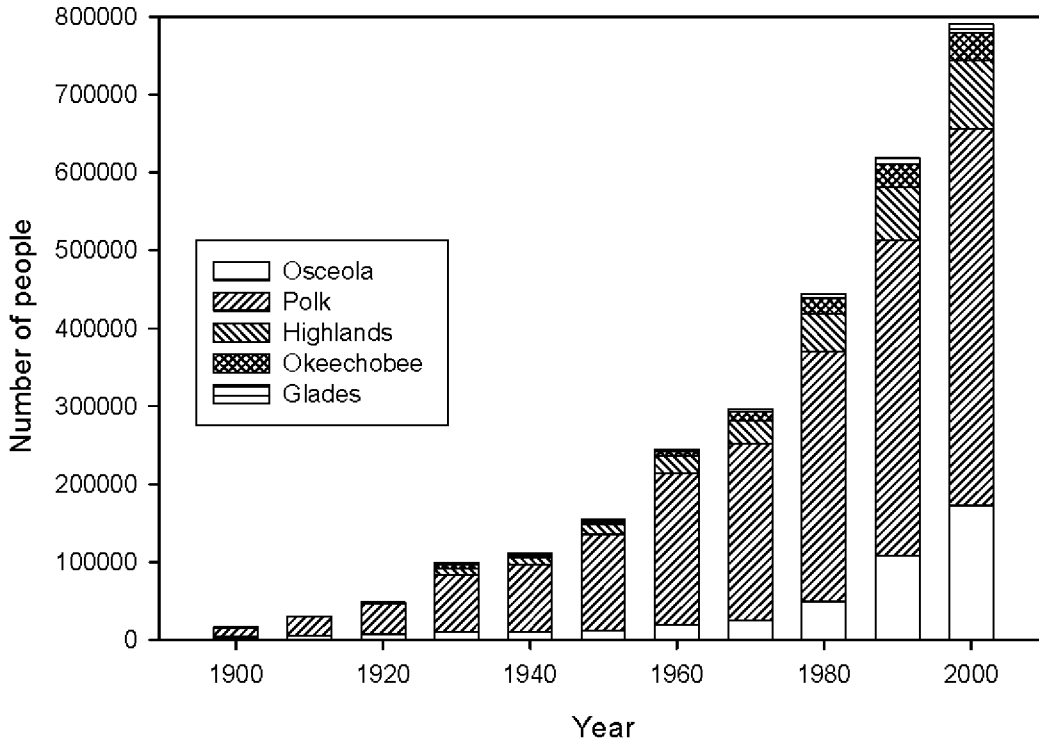


Figure 1-4. Population size for five counties that overlap the Kissimmee Basin. Population estimates were obtained from the State of Florida web page.

THE RESTORATION PROJECT

Mandate and Authorization for Restoration

Even before construction of the C&SF Project began, its potential for ecological damage was recognized (USFWS 1959). During construction (1962-1971), a grassroots movement formed with the goal of restoring the Kissimmee River (Loftin et al. 1990, Koebel 1995). In 1972, just one year after construction was completed, the Central and Southern Florida Flood Control District (now known as South Florida Water Management District) held the first public hearing on the potential for restoration of the Kissimmee River (Loftin et al. 1990). Concern over the effects of the Kissimmee Project eventually led the Florida legislature to pass the Kissimmee River Restoration Act (Section 373.1965, Florida Statutes), which mandated the creation of the Kissimmee River Coordinating Council (KRCC). The KRCC was tasked with developing measures to improve water quality in the Kissimmee River Valley and Taylor Creek/Nubbin Slough Basin, with specific goals that included restoration of natural seasonal water level fluctuations in Upper Basin lakes and the Kissimmee River floodplain, and re-creation of conditions that would lead to reestablishment of wetland flora and fauna. Following the creation of the KRCC, three restoration evaluation and planning studies (the first federal feasibility study, the Kissimmee River Demonstration Project, and the second federal feasibility study) were initiated by the U. S. Army Corps of Engineers and/or the South Florida Water Management District (SFWMD).

The first federal feasibility study (1978 - 1985) was authorized via resolutions of the Committee on Public Works and Transportation of the U. S. House of Representatives, and the Committee on

Environment and Public Works of the U. S. Senate on April 25, 1978. The primary purpose of the study was to “evaluate the feasibility of modifying the existing flood control system for purposes of improving water quality and enhancing fish and wildlife resources” (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1985, Koebel 1995). As a result of the study, various restoration plans were developed.

The first feasibility study concluded that the best opportunities for meeting the above goal involved (1) pool stage manipulations, (2) restoration of wetland values to Paradise Run near Lake Okeechobee, and (3) implementation of best management practices (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1985). The study did not endorse federal support for these projects because they did not meet federal water and land resource planning guidelines requiring a net contribution to the nation’s economic benefit. It did recommend that state and local interests use the report to develop a framework for long term management of the Kissimmee Basin. Eventually, because of overwhelming public support for the plans that called for backfilling C-38 over other restoration alternatives, the KRCC endorsed backfilling as the preferred option (Koebel 1995).

The Demonstration Project (1984-1990) was initiated by the SFWMD to assess the feasibility of the backfill plan. This project had four components: (1) reestablishing seasonal floodplain inundation in the project area, (2) construction of three navigable weirs along C-38 to divert flow through remnant river channel sections, (3) creating a flow-through marsh system, and (4) performing hydrologic and hydraulic modeling studies (Toth 1991, Koebel 1995). Additionally, physical and biological monitoring was performed to evaluate the feasibility of recreating the river’s pre-channelization structure and function. Results of the Demonstration Project indicated increased floodplain inundation and reestablishment of some of the biological communities that existed before channelization, suggesting that restoration of the structure and function of the system was feasible (Toth 1991, 1993).

The purpose of the second federal feasibility study (1990 - 1991) was to determine how the backfilling plan would be implemented and how much federal participation would be granted. The 1986 Water Resources Development Act authorized the U. S. Army Corps of Engineers to modify existing Corps projects to enhance environmental quality in the public interest and to calculate the benefits of such enhancements as being equal to other costs (Woody 1993). This change removed the barrier that prevented the first feasibility study from recommending federal support for the restoration project. The results of this study, which included extensive value engineering, led to the adoption of the modified Level II Backfilling Plan as the recommended restoration plan. This plan called for continuous backfilling of approximately 47 km of C-38 from the middle of Pool B to Pool E and included removal of structures S-65B, S-65C, and S-65D as well as excavation of river channels that had been destroyed during C-38 construction (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991, Koebel 1995). The plan was further modified following a recommendation in 1992 by Assistant Secretary of the Army, Nancy P. Dorn, to eliminate federal participation in the removal of S-65D and backfilling in Pool E (Assistant Secretary of the Army 1992). Following this recommendation, the geographic scope of backfilling was reduced to approximately 35 km of backfilling of C-38 in Pools B-D. Plans for the removal of S-65D were also discontinued.

Implementation of the Restoration Plan

In 1992, the U. S. Congress jointly authorized ecosystem restoration of the Kissimmee River and the Kissimmee River Headwaters Revitalization Project (Headwaters) via the Water Resources Development Act. Headwaters was authorized primarily because modifications of the Upper Kissimmee Basin were necessary for successful restoration of the Kissimmee River. Specifically, Headwaters was designed to provide the Upper Basin storage and flow characteristics necessary to meet or exceed the needs of the (KRRP), while increasing the quality and quantity of wetland habitat in littoral zones of the Upper Basin lakes (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1996). The 1994 cost-sharing Project Cooperative Agreement between the U. S. Army Corps of Engineers and the SFWMD combined the restoration project and Headwaters into the single restoration entity called the Kissimmee River Restoration Project. Because of the large scale of the KRRP and the lack of other similar restoration projects to use as templates, a pilot “test fill” project of C-38 was initiated in April, 1994. The test fill project involved filling a 330 m section of C-38 to evaluate fill consolidation and stability, construction methodologies, water quality impacts, and subsequent colonization of backfill by vegetation (Koebel et al. 1999). This project demonstrated that the planned construction methodology would produce stable soils in the area of backfilling without causing long-term impacts to downstream water quality (Koebel et al. 1999).

Construction of the KRRP was divided into four major phases, the first of which was initiated in 1999. Phase I included removal of the S-65B structure, and backfilling of a small portion of lower Pool B and

most of Pool C. Phase II/III will remove S-65C, and will backfill the remainder of Pool C and most of Pool D. Phase IV, which will backfill a section of Pool B north of the Phase I area, is scheduled for completion in 2012. The new headwaters regulation schedule will be implemented following completion of KRRP/Headwaters, which is scheduled for 2010 (Figure 1-5).

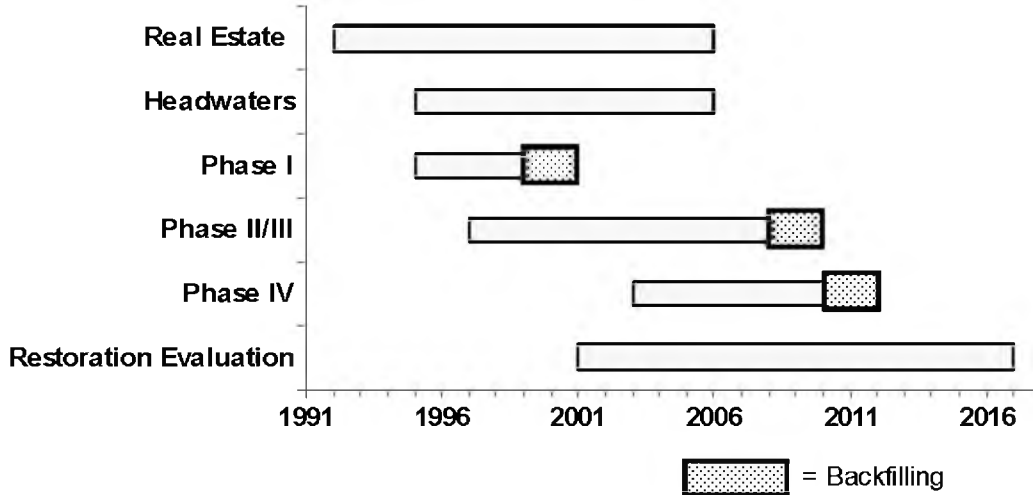


Figure 1-5. Timeline for completing major components of the KRRP including real estate acquisition, headwaters revitalization, Phases I through IV of backfilling and construction, and restoration evaluation.

THE RESTORATION EVALUATION PROGRAM

The Goal of Ecological Integrity

The goal of the KRRP is to restore ecological integrity to the Kissimmee River and its floodplain. Ecological integrity is a characteristic of ecosystems that are "... capable of supporting and maintaining a balanced, integrated, adaptive community of organisms having a species composition, diversity, and functional organization comparable to that of the natural habitat of the region" (Toth 1990 after Karr and Dudley 1981). The restoration project is designed to achieve this goal by reestablishing the natural hydro-geomorphic drivers of the floodplain river ecosystem that were disrupted by channelization. These ecosystem drivers are expected to facilitate complex ecological interactions that will lead to changes in nutrient cycling and dissolved oxygen levels, and precipitate ecological processes such as re-establishment of a pre-channelization vegetation mosaic, colonization or expansion of aquatic invertebrates, and use and colonization of habitats by native fish and birds. This cascade of abiotic and community assembly responses to restoration is expected to continue even after the completion of the construction phases of the restoration, ultimately resulting in a functional and resilient ecological system.

The Mandate for Monitoring: The Integrated Feasibility Report

The Final Integrated Feasibility Report (IFR) for the KRRP (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991) identified the need for a program to evaluate the success of the restoration project. Restoration evaluation is also specified in the 1994 cost-sharing Project Cooperative Agreement between the U. S. Army Corps of Engineers and the SFWMD, and this agreement assigns responsibility for evaluation to SFWMD.

As specified in the IFR, ecological monitoring should address a suite of goals for monitoring. These goals were to a) assess impacts during the phased construction project and future management of the system, b) signal potential needs for adaptive management, c) assess applicability of the restoration

CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION TO BASELINE STUDIES

approach to other projects, and d) provide information needed to evaluate project success. These are discussed below.

Construction Monitoring

Two studies were designed specifically to monitor construction impacts. River turbidity will be monitored during all phases of restoration construction, as will nesting territories of Audubon's crested caracara, which is classified as threatened by the U. S. Fish & Wildlife Service. Other studies (Table 1-2) monitored initial responses during or shortly after construction.

Adaptive Management

Adaptive management refers to the use of monitoring results to guide resource management. In the context of KRREP, failure to meet the expectations associated with evaluation project metrics may initiate further study, which may ultimately lead to changes in the operational or construction activities believed to be inhibiting recovery. While the predicted response of the system is the natural recovery of ecological integrity, the U. S. Army Corps of Engineers (1991) report recognized that variable inflow from the headwaters of the Kissimmee River must be maintained in order to initiate and sustain the expected biological and ecological responses. Therefore, a primary function of the restoration evaluation program is providing a feedback loop to guide water control operations and management efforts throughout the watershed.

Applications to Other Restoration Projects

The IFR recognized that the KRRP should yield invaluable insights for future large scale river restoration projects. Applications to other restoration projects are addressed through ongoing comprehensive documentation of the evaluation program. The KRRP has been noted as one of the most well-documented restoration projects in the nation (Bernhardt et al. 2005). Regular publications allow for independent peer review of the evaluation program and help ensure that project science is of the highest quality. The results of the Kissimmee River Restoration Demonstration Project were documented in a SFWMD technical bulletin (Toth 1991), a series of papers in peer-reviewed journals (Toth 1993, Toth et al. 1993, Toth et al. 1998), and in a symposium volume (Loftin et al. 1990). An issue of the journal *Restoration Ecology* (1995, Vol. 3, No. 3) was dedicated to the restoration project. It included papers on the history of the project (Koebel 1995) and conceptual models for major components of the ecosystem including habitat/vegetation (Toth et al. 1995), aquatic invertebrates (Harris et al. 1995), fish (Trexler 1995), water birds (Weller 1995), and the overall ecosystem (Dahm et al. 1995). A pair of separately-published papers outlined the conceptual framework for restoration evaluation (Anderson and Dugger 1998) and the process used to develop restoration expectations to evaluate the success of the project (Toth and Anderson 1998). The current volume documents the baseline-period studies, and a companion volume documents the restoration expectations for the restoration project (Anderson et al. 2005). As the project progresses, other publications will document specific phases of the project, such as impacts during construction for Phase I backfilling (Colangelo and Jones 2005). Annual updates on the project will be included in the South Florida Environmental Report (e.g., Williams et al. 2005). Kissimmee River Restoration Evaluation Program staff presentations at national and regional conferences provide the science community with timely updates on system responses (Anderson 2002, 2003, 2004; Bousquin 2003a, 2003b, 2004; Colangelo and Jones 2000, 2004; Carnal and Bousquin 2003; Colangelo 2003, 2004; Jones 2003a, 2003b; Jones and Colangelo 2003; Koebel 2003; Williams 2004).

The restoration literature suggests that the approach taken by the Kissimmee River Restoration Project has influenced the conceptualization and planning of other river restoration projects (Palmer et al. 2005, Bernhardt et al. 2005). The KRRP was used as a detailed case study of a river restoration project (National Research Council 1992), to illustrate the application of ecological understanding to a large restoration project (MacMahon 1998), as an example of restoration at the landscape level for a general ecology text (Molles 1999), and to demonstrate the importance of replicating natural disturbance regimes such as flooding for ecosystem management (Dodds 2002). The KRRP is frequently used in university courses as an example of ecological restoration (D. H. Anderson, SFWMD, personal communication).

CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION TO BASELINE STUDIES

Table 1-2. Relationship of baseline studies to monitoring program components identified in the feasibility report.

Baseline Study	Ecology/Fish and Wildlife					Hydraulics	Sediment	Stability
	Birds	Fish/ Fisheries	Habitat	Water Quality	Threatened/ Endangered Species			
Hydrology			X			X		
Geomorphology			X				X	X
Water Quality			X	X				
Dissolved Oxygen			X	X				
River Channel Vegetation			X					
Vegetation Classification			X					
Vegetation Mapping			X					
Floodplain Vegetation			X			X		
Algae			X			X		
Invertebrates						X		
Fish		X				X		
Reptiles and Amphibians						X		
Birds	X				X			

Much of our knowledge about river restoration of channelized streams is derived from smaller-scale projects, or from streams affected by dissimilar channelization than that found on the Kissimmee River. Extensive documentation of the KRRP will yield valuable insights for future restoration design and implementation.

Restoration Evaluation

Restoration evaluation was to take place primarily through monitoring. The U. S. Army Corps of Engineers (1991) report listed four programs as “necessary basic components” of the monitoring program, to be conducted during and after restoration construction. These included monitoring of (1) ecological (usually referred to as “fish and wildlife”), (2) hydraulic, (3) sedimentation, and (4) stability attributes. The IFR clearly placed all of these components in an ecological context.

Ecological Monitoring. The IFR recognized that restoration of ecological integrity necessitated evaluation of multiple indicators. It specifically identified water quality, habitat, ecological (usually called “fish and wildlife”), birds, fish/fisheries, threatened and endangered species, and ecosystem function as components of a comprehensive restoration monitoring program for the Kissimmee River. These components and others have been integrated into the KRREP (Table 1-2).

Hydraulic, Sedimentation, and Stability Monitoring. Studies of the hydrology of the river and floodplain are fundamental to the restoration project. A hydraulic resistance study is being implemented as specified in U. S. Army Corps of Engineers (1991) to determine the upstream limit of backfilling in Pool B to be reached by the construction project. The flood control needs of surrounding interests will constrain the ultimate size of the restoration project. Hydrologic monitoring and investigations also provide guidance for the operation of the Upper Basin for flood control and water supply. Hydrologic monitoring is needed to assess the status of the five specific hydrologic criteria outlined in U. S. Army Corps of Engineers (1991), which are discussed in detail in Chapter 2. Finally, continuous monitoring of the hydrology of the system is necessary to draw inferences about the relationships between ecological variables and hydrology.

Because the restoration project involves both construction of channels and management of flow through the reconnected river channel and floodplain, the U. S. Army Corps of Engineers (1991) identified the need to monitor sedimentation and channel stability. Of particular concern is the potential for restored flow to erode or deposit sediments in recarved and connector sections of river channel and on graded reaches of backfilled canal. The types of monitoring needed to address these concerns include studies of

bank and bed stability and mass transport downstream including suspended and bed loads. Some of these, as well as stability issues, are addressed by the hydrology and geomorphology projects.

The Kissimmee River Restoration Evaluation Program

The Integrated Feasibility Report (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991) broadly identified general monitoring needs. To supplement the IFR's recommendations, the SFWMD sought input on the design of the restoration evaluation program from an advisory panel of external experts on river and wetland ecology and hydraulics (Karr et al. 1992). This guidance helped refine the vision presented in the IFR, yet maintained the spirit of its goals. SFWMD scientists have taken the lead in implementing and expanding these recommendations to create the KRREP. At the core of the KRREP is a group of projects that encompass the four monitoring components outlined by U. S. Army Corps of Engineers (1991). These projects are designed to address these components for the purpose of restoration evaluation. Four important elements of the KRREP are (1) prediction of restoration response, (2) estimation of baseline conditions, (3) sampling designs, and (4) estimation of pre-channelization conditions.

Predictive vs. Monitoring-only Metrics

In addition to collecting data and reporting results, most of the KRREP projects also include restoration expectations, which are formal statements predicting responses of selected metrics to restoration. Expectation development is summarized and archived in an expectation document, which states the expectation and condenses the background, rationale, and data that led to the expectation. The expectation documents are compiled in Anderson et al. (2005). The expectations were developed based on the information presented in this volume's chapters. The baseline studies monitor metrics that fall into one of two main groups, either or both of which may be used in a single study.

Predictive metrics are associated with formal expectations of response to restoration and are used to evaluate the success of the project. Predictive metrics are associated with reference data from the pre-channelized Kissimmee River, from another system judged to be appropriate to represent pre-channelized conditions on the Kissimmee, or that are based on known relationships of the metric to driving variables. Because of their role in restoration evaluation, predictive metrics will be monitored until the necessary drivers have been achieved, and the expected responses have had time to occur. If they have not been achieved by that point, adaptive management actions may be needed, or more detailed study may be necessary to understand why predicted outcomes are not taking place.

Monitoring-only metrics are not associated with expectations but are measured at intervals to evaluate restoration progress. Monitoring-only metrics are also important for evaluation, but lack sufficient information to make the reliable predictions needed for predictive metrics. Some will provide additional information about driver-metric relationships. Both kinds of metrics will be useful in restoration evaluation as the project proceeds, and will likely be used to evaluate achievement of ecological integrity, and to establish any needs for adaptive management.

Estimation of Baseline Conditions

Studies intended to evaluate restoration projects often have failed to include the collection of baseline data prior to the restoration (Anderson and Dugger 1998, Wissmar and Beschta 1998). Without pre-restoration data as a benchmark for comparison with post-restoration data, however, it is not possible to demonstrate that change occurred. Conclusions about achievement of the restoration project's goals, and the success or failure of the project, are enhanced by an ability to prove quantitatively and statistically that the restored system has changed. Change detection relative to a baseline condition is therefore an important aspect of restoration evaluation.

The chapters in this volume describe studies of the channelized river during a baseline period prior to Phase I of the restoration project. The timing of the baseline period varies among studies, but generally ends by June 1, 1999, when construction for the first phase of the project began. For most studies, the baseline period began during or after 1995 and continued for at least one year, although several monitor twice yearly or continuously, and will continue to do so through restoration. A few studies (i.e., hydrology, water quality) were able to use baseline data from existing monitoring programs that were begun in the early 1970s when the channelization project was completed.

Most of the chapters present data for the baseline period of the Phase I project area (most of Pool C

and lower Pool B) and make predictions only for Phase I of restoration construction, although some projects extend predictions to other project phases. U. S. Army Corps of Engineers (1991) recognized the primary importance of baseline data from the Phase I area, the need to monitor change until restoration effects stabilize, and the importance of using monitoring results from to Phase I of the project to inform the design and implementation of monitoring of future phases of restoration.

Before-After-Control-Impact Design and Control and Impact Area Sampling

A BACI (before-after-control-impact) approach was used in the design of most of the evaluation studies (Stewart-Oaten et al. 1992). Before-after-control-impact involves measurement of a variable before and after a perturbation both at a location that will be affected by the perturbation (impact) and in an area that will not be affected (control). The approach is analogous to an experimental design in which some subjects receive a treatment and others do not, although true replication in the experimental sense may not be possible. One classic approach to analysis proposed by Stewart-Oaten et al. (1992) is to compare the mean difference between the control and impact area in the before period with the mean control-impact difference in the after period. A significant difference suggests that an effect of the perturbation has been detected.

The KRREP studies used portions of river and floodplain where C-38 would not be backfilled in Phase I (Pools A and/or D) as control areas, and sections that would be restored (most of Pool C, lower Pool B) as impact areas. Pool A is upstream of the restoration project and C-38 will not be backfilled in this pool. Therefore, Pool A should be minimally impacted by the restoration project. In the BACI design, a control site does not have to be identical to the impact area but it should exhibit similar trends over time, as would be expected for locations within the same watershed.

Estimation of Reference Pre-channelization Conditions

Depending on the project and available data, determination of pre-channelization conditions may involve the use of data from the pre-channelization Kissimmee River, areas of the Kissimmee that were judged to be remnant examples of conditions prior to channelization, data available from other systems, or results of experiments. An example of the highest level of reference information, actual pre-channelization data, is the work of Pierce et al. (1982), who used 1952-1954 pre-channelization aerial photography to produce a vegetation map for the entire Kissimmee River and floodplain prior to channelization (this information is used in Chapters 8 and 10 as reference data). Areal data from a digitized version of this map made it possible to estimate the impacts of channelization on floodplain vegetation and to make predictions about the likely results of restoration. The results of Demonstration Project (Toth 1991) studies provided reference data for a number of evaluation studies. Other studies used data collection performed specifically for the study in minimally impacted areas. Estimation of the impact of channelization on study metrics usually involved a comparison of the reference data with baseline data.

Baseline Compendium Volume Overview

The remaining twelve chapters in this volume of baseline studies summarize original data collected on the channelized river and floodplain. Most chapters also present available reference conditions and use the reference information to make inferences about the impacts of channelization and to help develop expectations for the restored ecosystem. The studies were concentrated in Pool C, which contains most of the area of Phase I of the restoration project. This section provides an overview of these chapters.

The first four chapters describe abiotic components of the ecosystem: hydrology, geomorphology, dissolved oxygen, and water quality. Chapter 2 takes advantage of long-term monitoring at permanent stations along the length of the river channel to assess changes in stage and flow characteristics associated with channelization. In Chapter 3, the geomorphology study focuses on the composition of the river channel bed and how it has changed in the absence of flow. In Chapter 4, the concentration of dissolved oxygen is characterized in river channel remnants and compared to values for seven reference streams that also occur in the Lake Okeechobee watershed. Chapter 5 examines a large number of water quality parameters, especially nutrients, and demonstrates the importance of measuring water quality parameters of inflows from upstream and the surrounding watershed. Collectively these four chapters show that abiotic characteristics of the environment were altered by channelization.

CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION TO BASELINE STUDIES

Chapters 6 through 10 deal with algal and plant communities. In Chapter 6, algal communities attached to surfaces (periphyton) and suspended in the water column (phytoplankton) are characterized using a combination of community structure and functional groups. Chapter 7 uses permanent transects to evaluate the coverage and structure of aquatic plant communities associated with river channel margins. Chapter 8 examines the structure of floodplain plant communities at permanent plots positioned along elevation gradients across the floodplain to characterize major plant communities. Chapter 9 describes a classification system used in other chapters, which reduces the complexity of plant species data to a smaller, more manageable number of communities. In Chapter 10, the vegetation classification is combined with aerial photography to map the distribution of dominant plant communities across the floodplain. These chapters document changes in algal and plant communities that reflect the impacts of channelization, and illustrate the loss of ecological integrity for a river-floodplain ecosystem. Changes in plant communities have implications for animal communities because plants are an important component of habitat for many animal species.

The final four chapters deal with major groups of animals including aquatic invertebrates, amphibians and reptiles, fish, and birds. In Chapter 11, the community structure, functional feeding and habitat groupings, and secondary production of aquatic invertebrates is quantified for major river and floodplain habitats. Chapter 12 focuses on species richness and other measures of community structure to characterize amphibian and reptile communities associated with degraded floodplain habitats. Chapter 13 summarizes a number of studies of ecological and socioeconomic aspects of fish in both the floodplain and river channel that include assemblage structure, habitat guilds, diet, movement patterns, creel surveys, bioaccumulation of mercury, and physiological responses to hypoxia. Chapter 14 reports studies of wading bird and waterfowl communities and includes the only single species studies in the evaluation program, which examine four federally listed species: wood stork (*Mycteria americana*), bald eagle (*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*), snail kite (*Rostrhamus sociabilis*), and Audubon's crested caracara (*Caracara cheriway*).

CONCLUDING REMARKS

The Kissimmee Basin has undergone numerous changes over the last 150 years. The greatest changes to the Kissimmee River were associated with channelization and flow regulation by the C&SF Project. A major effort is underway to restore ecological integrity to the central portion of the river/floodplain system. The KRREP represents an effort to assess the success of the restoration project and guide future management of the system. The KRREP includes studies of major abiotic components of the ecosystem (hydrology, geomorphology, and water quality) and major biological communities (e.g., plants, invertebrates, fish, and birds). To assess achievement of ecological integrity, the evaluation process will focus on the collection of baseline data as a benchmark against which to evaluate restoration-related change, estimation of the impacts of channelization, development of restoration expectations to predict the effects of restoration, and monitoring of these metrics to assess change as the system responds to restoration.

The 13 chapters that follow perform the initial steps in this evaluation process. Each study reports results of field measurements, usually of multiple metrics, collected during the channelized period. Most were able also to estimate pre-channelization conditions for study metrics and use these data both for estimation of the effects of channelization and prediction of the effects of restoration. Monitoring for the KRREP will proceed through all future project construction phases, and continue for a minimum of five years following project completion.

LITERATURE CITED

- Abtew, W. 1992. An atlas of the lower Kissimmee River and Lake Istokpoga surface water management basins. Technical Memorandum. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Anderson, D. H. 2002. Ranking multiple restoration expectations for the Kissimmee River, Florida. Presented at Special Session on The Restoration of Aquatic Ecosystems at the 50th Annual meeting of the North American Benthological Society, May 28 - June 1, 2002, Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, USA.
- Anderson, D. H. 2003. Reestablishing the hydrogeomorphic habitat templet in the Kissimmee River. Presented at Greater Everglades Ecosystem Restoration Conference, April 13-18, 2003, Palm Harbor, Florida, USA.
- Anderson, D. H. 2004. Ranking and integrating restoration expectations for the Kissimmee River, Florida. Presented at National Conference on Ecosystem Restoration (NCER), December 6-10, 2004, Orlando, Florida, USA.
- Anderson, D. H., S. G. Bousquin, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. 2005. Defining success: expectations for restoration of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #433.
- Anderson, D. H., and J. R. Chamberlain. 2005. Impacts of channelization on the hydrology of the Kissimmee River, Florida. Chapter 2 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Anderson, D. H., and B. D. Dugger. 1998. A conceptual framework for evaluating restoration success. *Transactions of the North American Wildlife and Natural Resource Conference* 63:111-121.
- Assistant Secretary of the Army. 1992. Letter of Transmittal replication. Page ix *in* Kissimmee River Restoration Study, Communication from the Assistant Secretary of the Army. U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., USA.
- Bernhardt, E. S., M. A. Palmer, J. D. Allan, G. Alexander, K. Barnes, S. Brooks, J. Carr, S. Clayton, C. Dahm, J. Follstad-Shah, D. Galat, S. Gloss, P. Goodwin, D. Hart, B. Hassett, R. Jenkinson, S. Katz, G. M. Kondolf, P. S. Lake, R. Lave, J. L. Meyer, T. K. O'Donnell, L. Pagano, B. Powell, and E. Sudduth. 2005. Synthesizing U. S. River restoration efforts. *Science* 308:636-637.
- Blake, N. M. 1980. Land into water - water into land. University Presses of Florida, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- Bousquin, S. G. 2003a. Initial responses of littoral vegetation to restored flow in the Kissimmee River. Oral paper presented at Ecological Society of America (ESA) 2003 Annual Meeting, August 8, 2003, Savannah, Georgia, USA.
- Bousquin, S. G. 2003b. Responses of littoral vegetation to restored flow in the Kissimmee River. Presented at Greater Everglades Ecosystem Restoration (GEER) Science Conference, April 13-18, 2003, Palm Harbor, Florida, USA.
- Bousquin, S. G. 2004. Responses of littoral vegetation to restored flow in the Kissimmee River: 2003 update. Presented at National Conference on Ecosystem Restoration (NCER), December 6-10, 2004, Orlando, Florida, USA.
- Carnal, L. L., and S. G. Bousquin. 2003. A Summary of Baseline Vegetation Data for Phase I of the Kissimmee River Restoration Project and Expectations for Wetland Vegetation Recovery in the Restored System. Presented at Greater Everglades Ecosystem Restoration (GEER) Science Conference, April 13-18, 2003, Palm Harbor, Florida, USA.
- Carnal, L. L., and S. G. Bousquin. 2005. Areal coverage of floodplain plant communities in Pool C of the channelized Kissimmee River. Chapter 10 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee

CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION TO BASELINE STUDIES

- River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432
- Casselberry, H. 1984. South Florida steamboat era. Pages 27-29 *in* E. A. Mueller, and B. A. Purdy, editors. The steamboat era in Florida. University of Florida Press, Gainesville, Florida, USA.
- Colangelo, D. J. 2003. Dissolved oxygen in the Kissimmee River: Baseline condition and initial response to restoration. Presented at Greater Everglades Ecosystem Restoration (GEER) Science Conference, April 13-18, 2003, Palm Harbor, Florida, USA.
- Colangelo, D. J. 2004. Restoration of the Kissimmee River: response of river metabolism. Presented at National Conference on Ecosystem Restoration (NCER), December 6-10, 2004, Orlando, Florida, USA.
- Colangelo, D. J., and B. L. Jones. 2000. Restoring Florida's Kissimmee River: the response of water quality. Poster presented at the Annual Symposium of the North American Lake Management Society, November 8-10, 2000, Miami, Florida, USA.
- Colangelo, D. J., and Jones, B. L. 2005. Phase I of the Kissimmee River Restoration Project, Florida, USA: impacts of construction on water quality. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment* 102:139-158.
- Dahm, C. N., K. W. Cummins, H. M. Valett, and R. L. Coleman. 1995. An ecosystem view of the restoration of the Kissimmee River. *Restoration Ecology* 3:225-238.
- Dierberg, F. E., and V. P. Williams. 1989. Lake management technique in Florida, USA: cost and water quality effects. *Environmental Management* 13:729-742.
- Dodds, W. K. 2002. *Freshwater ecology*. Academic Press, San Diego, California, USA.
- Ferriter, A., B. Doren, C. Goodyear, D. Thayer, J. Burch, L. Toth, M. Bodle, J. Layne, D. Schmitz, S. Snow, and K. Langeland. In press. The status of non-indigenous species in the South Florida environment. Chapter 9 *in* South Florida Environmental Report Volume I: The South Florida Environment – Water Year 2005. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida and Florida Department of Environmental Protection, Tallahassee, Florida.
- Guardo, M. 1992. An atlas of the Upper Kissimmee surface water management basins. Technical Memorandum. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Harris, S. C., T. H. Martin, and K. W. Cummins. 1995. A model for aquatic invertebrate response to the Kissimmee River restoration. *Restoration Ecology* 3:181-194.
- Hetherington, A. 1980. *The river of the long water*. Mickler House Publications, Chuluota, Florida, USA.
- Jones, B. L. 2003a. Benefit of Kissimmee River restoration to Lake Okeechobee phosphorus control. Presented at Greater Everglades Ecosystem Restoration (GEER) Science Conference, April 13-18, 2003, Palm Harbor, Florida, USA.
- Jones, B. L. 2003b. Restoring the Kissimmee River: early ecological responses. Presented at 12th Annual Southeast Lakes Management Conference, North American Lake Management Society, June 2-5, 2003, Orlando, Florida, USA.
- Jones, B. L., and D. J. Colangelo. 2003. Water quality of the channelized Kissimmee River and expectations for improvement after restoration. Presented at 67th Annual Meeting of the Florida Academy of Sciences, March 21-22, 2003, Orlando, Florida, USA.
- Karr, J. R., and D. R. Dudley. 1981. Ecological perspectives on water quality goals. *Environmental Management* 5:55-68.
- Karr, J. R., H. Stefan, A. C. Benke, R. E. Sparks, M. W. Weller, J. V. McArthur and J. H. Zar. 1992. Design of a restoration evaluation program. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Koebel, J. W. 1995. An historical perspective on the Kissimmee River Restoration Project. *Restoration Ecology* 3:149-159.

CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION TO BASELINE STUDIES

- Koebel, J. W. 2003. Using aquatic invertebrates to assess restoration of the Kissimmee River ecosystem. Presented at Greater Everglades Ecosystem Restoration (GEER) Science Conference, April 13-18, 2003, Palm Harbor, Florida, USA.
- Koebel, J. W., B. L. Jones, and D. A. Arrington. 1999. Restoration of the Kissimmee River, Florida: water quality impacts from canal backfilling. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment* 57:85-107.
- Loftin, M. K., L. A. Toth, and J. T. B. Obeysekera. 1990. Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- MacMahon, J. A. 1998. Empirical and theoretical ecology as a basis for restoration: an ecological success story. Pages 220-246 *in* M. L. Pace and P. M. Groffman, editors. *Success, limitations and frontiers in ecosystem science*. Springer-Verlag, New York, New York, USA.
- McCollum, S. H., and R. F. Pendleton. 1971. Soil survey of Okeechobee County, Florida. Soil Conservation Service, U. S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D. C., USA
- Molles, M. C. 1999. *Ecology concepts and applications*. WCB/McGraw-Hill, Boston, Massachusetts, USA.
- Mueller, E. A. 1966. Kissimmee steamboating. *Tequesta* 26:53-87.
- National Research Council. 1992. *Restoration of aquatic ecosystems*. National Academy Press, Washington, D. C., USA
- Palmer, M. A., E. S. Bernhardt, J. D. Allan, P. S. Lake, G. Alexander, S. Brooks, J. Carr, S. Clayton, C. N. Dahm, J. Follstad Shah, D. L. Galat, S. G. Loss, P. Goodwin, D. D. Hart, B. Hassett, R. Jenkinson, G. M. Kondolf, R. Lave, J. L. Meyer, T. K. O'Donnell, L. Pagan, and E. Sudduth. 2005. Standards for ecologically successful river restoration. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 42:208-217.
- Perrin, L. S., M. J. Allen, L. A. Rowse, F. Montalbano, K. J. Foote and M. W. Olinde. 1982. A report on fish and wildlife studies in the Kissimmee River Basin and recommendations for restoration. Florida Game and Fresh Water Fish Commission, Okeechobee, Florida, USA.
- Pierce, G. J., A. B. Amerson, and L. R. Becker. 1982. Final report: pre-1960 floodplain vegetation of the lower Kissimmee River Valley, Florida. Biological Services Report 82-3. U. S. Army Corps of Engineers, Jacksonville, Florida, USA.
- Preble, G. H. 1945. A canoe expedition into the Everglades in 1842. *Tequesta* 5:30-51.
- South Florida Water Management District. 2000. Kissimmee Basin water supply plan. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida.
- Stewart-Oaten, A., J. R. Bence, and C. W. Osenburg. 1992. Assessing effects of unreplicated perturbations: no simple solutions. *Ecology* 73:1396-1404.
- Tebeau, C. W. 1971. *A history of Florida*. University of Miami Press, Coral Gables, Florida, USA.
- Toth, L. A. 1990. Impacts of channelization on the Kissimmee River ecosystem. Pages 47-56 *in* K. Loftin, L. Toth, and J. Obeysekera, editors. *Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium*. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Toth, L. A. 1991. Environmental responses to the Kissimmee River Demonstration Project. Technical Publication 91-02. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Toth, L. A. 1993. The ecological basis of the Kissimmee River restoration plan. *Florida Scientist* 56:25-51.
- Toth, L. A. 1995. Principles and guidelines for restoration of river/floodplain ecosystems - Kissimmee River, Florida. Pages 49-73 *in* J. Cairns, editor. *Rehabilitating damaged ecosystems*. Second edition. Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, Florida, USA.
- Toth, L. A., and D. H. Anderson. 1998. Developing expectations for ecosystem restoration. *Transactions of the North American Wildlife and Natural Resource Conference* 63:122-134.

CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION TO BASELINE STUDIES

- Toth, L. A., D. A. Arrington, M. A. Brady, and D. A. Muszick. 1995. Conceptual of factors potentially affecting restoration of habitat structure within the channelized Kissimmee River ecosystem. *Restoration Ecology* 3:160-180.
- Toth, L. A., S. L. Melvin, D. A. Arrington, and J. Chamberlain. 1998. Hydrologic manipulations of the channelized Kissimmee River. *Bioscience* 48:757-764.
- Toth, L. A., J. T. B. Obeysekera, W. A. Perkins, and M. K. Loftin. 1993. Flow regulation and restoration of Florida's Kissimmee River. *Regulated Rivers* 8:155-166.
- Trexler, J. C. 1995. Restoration of the Kissimmee River: a conceptual model of past and present fish communities and its consequences for evaluating restoration success. *Restoration Ecology* 3:195-210.
- U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. 1956. Central and Southern Florida Project for flood control and other purposes. Part II: Kissimmee River basin and related areas - General Design Memorandum Kissimmee River Basin. U. S. Army Engineer District, Jacksonville Corps of Engineers. Jacksonville, Florida, USA. Supplement 5.
- U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. 1969. Central and Southern Florida project for flood control and other purposes. Part II: Kissimmee River and related areas, Section 2 - General Design Memorandum. U. S. Army Corps of Engineers, Jacksonville, Florida, USA. Supplement 5.
- U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. 1985. Central and Southern Florida Kissimmee River Florida Final Feasibility Report and Environmental Impact Statement. U. S. Army Corps of Engineers, Jacksonville District, Jacksonville, Florida, USA.
- U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. 1991. Final integrated feasibility report and environmental impact statement environmental restoration Kissimmee River, Florida. U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. Jacksonville, Florida, USA.
- U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. 1996. Kissimmee River headwaters revitalization project: integrated project modification report and supplement to the Final Environmental Impact Statement. U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. Jacksonville, Florida, USA.
- U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1959. A detailed report of the fish and wildlife resources in relation to the Corps of Engineers' plan of development, Kissimmee River basin, Florida. Appendix A *in* Central and Southern Florida Project for Flood Control and Other Purposes: Part II - General Design Memorandum, Kissimmee River Basin. U. S. Army Engineers, Office of the District Engineer, Jacksonville, Florida, USA. Supplement 5.
- Weller, M. W. 1995. Use of two waterbird guilds as evaluation tools for the Kissimmee River restoration. *Restoration Ecology*, 3: 211-224.
- Williams, G. E. 2004. Initial responses of wading birds to Phase I of the Kissimmee River Restoration Project. Presented at National Conference on Ecosystem Restoration (NCER), December 6-10, 2004, Orlando, Florida, USA.
- Williams, G. E., J. W. Koebel, D. H. Anderson, S. G. Bousquin, D. J. Colangelo, J. L. Glenn, B. L. Jones, C. Carlson, L. Carnal, and J. Jorge. 2005. Kissimmee River Restoration and Upper Basin Initiatives. Chapter 11 *in* South Florida Environmental Report Volume I: The South Florida Environment - Water Year 2004. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA; and Florida Department of Environmental Protection, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- Wissmar, R. C., and R. L. Beschta. 1998. Restoration and management of riparian ecosystems: a catchment perspective. *Freshwater Biology* 40:571-585.
- Woody, T. 1993. Grassroots in action; the Sierra Club's role in the campaign to restore the Kissimmee River. *Journal of the North American Benthological Society* 12:201-205.



CHAPTER 2

IMPACTS OF CHANNELIZATION ON THE HYDROLOGY OF THE KISSIMMEE RIVER, FLORIDA

David H. Anderson¹ and Joanne R. Chamberlain^{1,2}

¹ *Kissimmee Division, Watershed Management Department, South Florida Water Management District,
West Palm Beach, FL 33406*

² *Current affiliation: BEM, West Palm Beach, FL 33418*

ABSTRACT: Long-term records of rainfall, stage, and discharge data for different stations along the length of the Kissimmee River were used to investigate changes in hydrologic characteristics associated with channelization of the river during the 1960s as part of the Central & Southern Flood Control Project. Data were organized by water years (May 1–April 30) for a pre-channelization reference period that ended with Water Year 1962 or earlier to avoid confounding with the channelization project. Data from the reference period were compared to data for a channelized baseline period that could begin as early as 1972 and end as late as 1999 depending on the availability of data for a site. In general, channelization and flow regulation narrowed the range of stage fluctuation, caused more erratic discharge patterns especially increasing the number of days with no flow, shifted the seasonality of flow, and resulted in flow being carried by the C-38 canal and not by the natural river channel. Based on these changes in hydrologic characteristics, five hydrologic expectations were developed for the restored river. These expectations describe the number of days with no flow, the seasonality of flow, stage hydrograph characteristics, stage recession rates, and mean channel velocities.

INTRODUCTION

The ecological integrity of river ecosystems is closely coupled to hydrologic conditions, which can influence the composition of biological communities, the availability and quality of habitat, and connectivity with riparian areas including floodplains (Karr, 1991, Trush et al. 2000). Two of the most common impacts on river hydrology that can degrade ecological integrity involve channelization and flow regulation (e.g., Brookes 1988, Petts 1984), which have become problems of global significance (Benke 1990, Dynesius and Nilsson 1994, Tharme 2003). The importance of recreating natural flow variability for the restoration and management of river ecosystems is captured in the concept of the natural flow regime. This concept characterizes flow in terms of magnitude, frequency, duration, timing and predictability, and rate of change (Poff et al. 1997). While these impacts have been long recognized, they have not always been considered in the cost-benefit analysis of implementing a channelization project (e.g., Arthur D. Little, Inc. 1973). Only recently have there been efforts to restore rivers by managing for the natural flow regime.

One of the most prominent examples of such a restoration project is the Kissimmee River Restoration Project in south-central Florida.

Hydrologic conditions in the Kissimmee River have been altered by more than 100 years of anthropogenic modifications to the channel and flow regime (Appendix 2-1A). By far, the greatest changes are associated with channelization of the river along its entire length from Lake Kissimmee to Lake Okeechobee and with regulation of inflows from Lake Kissimmee during the 1960s as part of the Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project. Channelization involved excavation of a canal that is much wider and deeper than the natural river channel so that its conveyance capacity (cross-sectional area) was approximately ten-times that of the natural channel. Flow regulation was accomplished by installing gated water control structures at the outflow from Lake Kissimmee and at five downstream locations, which created five terraced pools with nearly level water surfaces. Channelization altered the longitudinal water surface and energy profiles from a continuous, gradually sloping profile, to a discontinuous profile of nearly zero slope with little opportunity for generating flow in remnant river channels. The operation of these structures altered the movement of water through the system by shifting the seasonal distribution of flow volume between wet and dry seasons, increasing the rate of change especially during recession events, and increasing the frequency of periods without flow (Obeysekera and Loftin 1990). Discontinuous flows and the presence of the water control structures have resulted in the flattening of the water surface within a pool so that the upstream portion of each pool remains dry while the downstream portion is inundated permanently. These changes in hydrology have been linked to degradation of river channel habitat and the loss of floodplain wetlands, and changes in biological communities including invertebrates, fish, waterfowl, and wading birds that depend on these habitats (Toth 1990a).

Currently, the South Florida Water Management District and the U. S. Army Corps of Engineers are engaged in the restoration of ecological integrity to the Kissimmee River and its floodplain. The restoration project is guided by hydrologic criteria, which were used to select the most viable among alternative restoration plans (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991). A key feature of this restoration project is an evaluation program, which examines major components of the ecosystem including hydrology. The program will be used to determine if the project is successful and to facilitate adaptive management of the post-project system.

Objectives

The goals of this chapter are to assess changes in hydrologic characteristics of the Kissimmee River that were associated with channelization, and to establish a baseline for evaluating post-restoration hydrologic responses. Hydrology differs from most other baseline studies of the Kissimmee River because long periods of hydrologic data spanning pre- and post-channelization time periods are available. These data allow changes to be measured directly without making comparisons to reference sites. However, it is important to separate changes caused by channelization from those caused by other confounding factors, especially changes in hydrologic drivers (e.g., rainfall). Thus, it is helpful to outline a conceptual model for hydrology to clarify the relationships between hydrologic drivers and responses to the restoration project. Evaluating hydrologic changes also requires a review of the hydrologic criteria that were proposed for the project (Loftin et al. 1990b, U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991). Finally, the baseline assessment must characterize baseline conditions for an expanded hydrologic monitoring network established for Phase I of the restoration project. To meet this goal, the chapter has the following objectives (1) present a conceptual model of surface water hydrology for the Kissimmee River, (2) examine changes in the hydrologic drivers, (3) quantify changes in hydrologic characteristics of the river channel and floodplain, (4) reexamine the hydrologic criteria proposed for the Kissimmee River Restoration Project and develop specific hydrologic restoration expectations, and (5) summarize baseline data for the expanded hydrologic monitoring network.

A Hydrologic Conceptual Model

The Hydrologic Conceptual Model

A conceptual model is a formal representation of the components of a system, their interactions, and the factors that influence those interactions. By representing these relationships, a conceptual model is a useful starting point for predicting how a system is likely to respond to management actions such as channelization and flow regulation. Conceptual models were developed for guiding the evaluation program

for the Kissimmee River Restoration Project. Existing conceptual models for the river describe changes associated with channelization for major biological communities including vegetation (Toth et al. 1995), invertebrates (Harris et al. 1995), fish (Trexler 1995), and water birds (Weller 1995), as well as an overall ecosystem model (Dahm et al. 1995). Several important abiotic attributes of the system, including dissolved oxygen, nutrients, geomorphology, and hydrology were not captured in detail in those models. Hydrologic changes are a critical driver in the existing models, but hydrology per se was never treated in detail.

This section develops a highly simplified conceptual model of hydrology for the Kissimmee River (Figure 2-1). The model contains a single compartment that represents the quantity of water present as stage or water elevation. For the purposes of this simplified model, the compartment can be thought of as representing any level in a hierarchy of spatial units for a stream ecosystem (e.g., Frissell et al. 1986) — from a channel cross-section, to an alternating point bar unit, to a reach between tributaries, or to the entire drainage network.

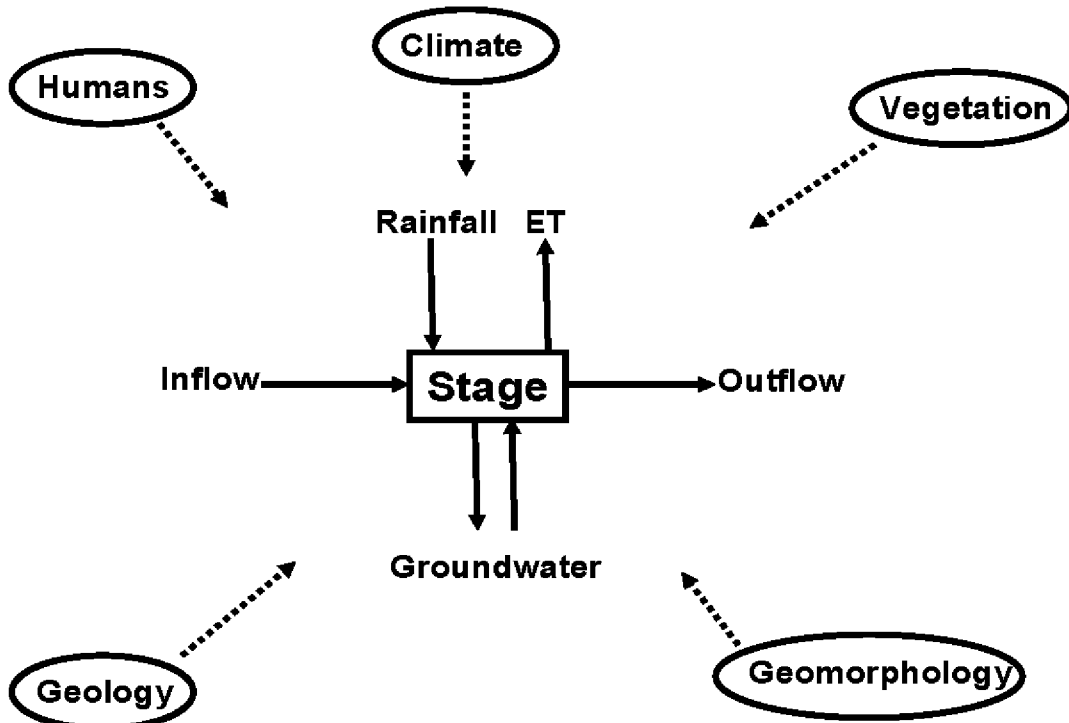


Figure 2-1. Conceptual model for hydrology in the Kissimmee River. The box represents a single compartment for water storage indicated by stage. Solid arrows represent fluxes into and out of the compartment. Ovals and dashed arrows represent system drivers.

The conceptual model can be expanded by adding compartments to capture spatial complexity. Additional compartments could distinguish between the river channel and floodplain in the horizontal dimension, between surface water and groundwater in the vertical dimension, and between upstream and downstream reaches (e.g., pools) in the longitudinal dimension.

Hydrologic Processes

Changes in stage or storage within the compartment depend on differences between fluxes into and out of the compartment (Figure 2-1). These fluxes are determined by a small number of hydrologic processes that are commonly illustrated as steps in the hydrologic cycle in introductory hydrologic texts.

Precipitation. Within the Kissimmee Basin, precipitation takes the form of rainfall and has a highly seasonal distribution.

Inflows and outflows. Inflows are surface water inflows, including those from the upstream reach and tributaries. The outflow is to the downstream reach of the Kissimmee River, which ultimately discharges into Lake Okeechobee. The Kissimmee River lacks distributaries.

Groundwater exchanges. Exchanges between surface water and ground water have not been well-studied within the Kissimmee Basin. In the basin, groundwater can be partitioned into a Surficial Aquifer System (SAS) and a deeper Floridan Aquifer System (FAS), which are separated by an intermediate confining layer of variable thickness (Hawthorne Formation) (Phelps 2002). At certain times of the year, exchanges between the surface water and the SAS may be significant (e.g., as floodplain water levels are receding). Exchanges between the SAS and the FAS occur in the upper basin (Parker et al. 1955), but it is unclear how important connections between the SAS and the FAS are in the lower basin. A recent attempt to use stable isotopes and other chemical parameters to measure the contribution of groundwater from the FAS produced equivocal results (Phelps 2002).

Evapotranspiration. Evapotranspiration includes the return of water vapor to the atmosphere either from soil and water surfaces (evaporation) or from plants (transpiration). Rates of evaporation depend on temperature and relative humidity. The flux also depends on the area of the water surface exposed to the atmosphere. Transpiration strongly depends on the type of vegetation. Evapotranspiration rates (estimated from rainfall-runoff) showed significant decreases between pre-channelization to post-channelization periods for the lower basin, but not the upper basin (Obeysekera and Loftin 1990). Obeysekera and Loftin suggest that more rapid drainage in the channelized system may have reduced the opportunity for evapotranspirative losses.

Drivers

When characterizing differences among stream ecosystems, four factors (relief, lithology, runoff, and vegetation) are generally considered to control stream ecosystem hydrology and geomorphology (Brussock et al. 1985, Montgomery 1999, Winter 2001). These factors can also be used to understand changes over time in the Kissimmee River. A fifth factor, human influences, must also be included.

Climate. Climate affects hydrology in south Florida primarily through the quantity, timing, and distribution of rainfall. The Kissimmee Basin rainfall is highly seasonal with distinct wet (June–November) and dry (December–May) seasons. Climatic shifts associated with El Niño can profoundly influence rainfall patterns over the basin. During El Niño events, the Kissimmee Basin has experienced significantly above normal dry season rainfall (Schmidt et al. 2001). Climatic events can also influence the strength of tropical systems, including tropical storms and hurricanes, which can be significant sources of rainfall during the wet season. Temperature and relative humidity can influence the rates of evapotranspiration.

Vegetation. Vegetation acts in four important ways. First, interception by and stemflow down vegetation can alter the timing and quantity of rainfall reaching the ground. Second, type of vegetation can influence the rate of evapotranspiration. Third, vegetation offers resistance to flow. Resistance varies with the species, growth form, size, and density of the plants. Fourth, vegetation along channel banks can increase bank stability and can affect channel characteristics.

Lithology. Lithology or the composition of the underlying rock has several effects. Porosity influences the amount of storage available for groundwater, the rates of groundwater movement, and the exchange between the SAS and the FAS. The type of underlying material determines to what degree the channel is confined. Chemical composition of the underlying rock can influence the overlying water chemistry and the distribution and composition of vegetation.

Relief. Relief describes the shape of the land surface. It acts primarily by determining the slope of the water surface gradient, which in turn has a major influence on the velocity and discharge of water. Relief was altered by the excavation of the C-38 canal and other drainage projects (agricultural drainage ditches) within the basin, especially on the floodplain.

Humans. Human activity is a super-driver capable of influencing other drivers. In the case of the Kissimmee River, these influences can include very specific impacts associated with the channelization and flow regulation. Human activity can also have indirect effects such as changes in land use with population growth that can alter relationships between rainfall, runoff and inflows into the river. These indirect effects are much more difficult to demonstrate.

Conceptual Model Synthesis

The hydrologic conceptual model raises several issues that are important to consider while examining changes to the hydrology of the river. (1) The Kissimmee River is a spatially complex system with conditions likely to vary with local conditions (e.g., ground elevation) along the length of the channel and across the breadth of the floodplain. Conditions within natural river channels are likely to be quite different from those in the C-38 canal. (2) The channelization project directly and indirectly affected hydrology. Direct changes included altering the relief of the system by excavating the C-38 canal and regulating the flow with water control structures. Indirect effects included changes in rates of evapotranspiration associated with changes in the distribution of water and possibly vegetation. (3) Changes in climatic drivers may be confounded with changes in channelization.

Evolution of the Hydrologic Criteria*Hydrologic needs*

A number of scientists, engineers, managers, and concerned stakeholders involved with the Kissimmee River participated in the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium in 1988. The symposium was a forum to summarize data from studies of the river, especially the Kissimmee River Demonstration Project, and to discuss ecological and engineering concerns related to restoration of the river. The proceedings from this symposium were published by the South Florida Water Management District (Loftin et al. 1990a). One outcome of this symposium was the adoption of ecological integrity as the restoration goal. An ecosystem with ecological integrity is one that is capable of “supporting and maintaining a balanced, integrated, and adaptive community of organisms having a species composition, diversity, and functional organization comparable to that of natural habitat of the region” (Toth 1990b). The ecological integrity goal emphasized the need to reestablish hydrologic drivers to meet the needs of an ecosystem, rather than focusing on the needs of individual species.

Several presentations at the Symposium referred to specific hydrologic requirements for the Kissimmee River. The following statements paraphrase those requirements:

- To avoid impacting fish communities in river channels, sustained average velocities should not exceed 0.5 m/s (1.5 ft/s) and minimum sustained flows of ≥ 7 m³/s (247 ft³/s) are needed to preserve habitat quality (Wulschleger et al. 1990b).
- Florida Game and Fresh Water Fish Commission personnel concluded the following: (1) mean channel velocity up to 2 ft/s would be tolerated by most river species if rest areas (backwaters) were available; (2) if rest areas are not available, velocity of 1.5 ft/s would cause fish migration; (3) if fish migrated from an area, they would not return until velocity was <1 ft/s (Miller 1990).
- Increased bird use of Paradise Run (a portion of the Kissimmee River near Lake Okeechobee), can be attributed to the run’s relict pre-channelization river characteristics including some channel flow, periodic water level fluctuation, flooding, plant species, and structural diversity (Toland 1990).
- Stage fluctuations that create flooding during fall and early winter make wet prairies attractive feeding sites especially for dabbling ducks, which feed on seeds. Overwintering ducks leave the area by March. Dewatering wet prairies from spring through early summer allowed annual plants such as wild millet (*Echinochloa walteri*) to germinate and produce seed (John and Turnbull 1990).
- Maintain minimum flows in river channels during summer (June–October) of 250 cfs to maintain dissolved oxygen levels (Wulschleger et al. 1990a).
- Previous studies show that Kissimmee River wetland vegetation communities depend on seasonally fluctuating hydroperiod and that Kissimmee River water levels can fluctuate 3–4 ft annually and flooding can persist for three to five months (Miller et al. 1990).
- Channelization altered flow regimes in the river, which resulted in the loss of (1) inundation of floodplain adjacent to the river channel, which allowed fish movements; (2) fluctuating stages; (3) floodplain recession, which allowed export of animals to the channel to support the river channel food web; and (4) plant growth, sediment deposition, and habitat diversity (Toth 1990a).

These statements indicate that a range of attributes of the river-floodplain ecosystem depend on the hydrologic regime, and that the attributes can depend on different aspects of the flow regime (stage, discharge, velocity). Some statements identify specific thresholds for flows and velocities. Where specific values are given, it was not always clear how they were determined. In some cases, it was not clear if velocity meant mean channel velocity or point measurements.

Papers by Toth (1990b) and Obeysekera and Loftin (1990) discuss changes to hydrologic characteristics of the river associated with channelization. Toth (1990b) in particular, linked the ecological integrity of the river to hydrologic characteristics, especially the flow regime and stage fluctuations. Toth (1990b) summarized the hydrologic determinants of ecological integrity in the following excerpt:

“In summary, pre-channelization hydrologic determinants of ecological integrity of the Kissimmee River ecosystem featured highly variable stage and discharge regimes that included: (1) continuous discharge regimes, with velocities ranging from 0.6 to 1.8 ft/sec when flows were confined within channel banks, (2) a discharge/stage relationship that resulted in frequent overbank flow and long recession intervals, (3) lengthy floodplain hydroperiods with depths typically between 1–2 feet on most of the floodplain, but deeper near the river, and (4) water level fluctuations that led to regular seasonal wet and dry cycles along the periphery of the floodplain, while the remainder of the floodplain was exposed to only intermittent drying periods that varied in timing, duration, and spatial extent.”

Hydrologic criteria

The four hydrologic determinants of ecological integrity described above by Toth (1990b) eventually became five hydrologic criteria for the river restoration project. The hydrologic determinants were revisited in a memorandum from L. A. Toth to M. K. Loftin dated 1988. This memorandum describes hydrologic characteristics that were supplied to Dr. H. W. Shen to support hydrologic modeling to evaluate alternative restoration plans for the Kissimmee River. The modeling report appears as an appendix in Loftin et al. (1990b) and includes a copy of this memorandum as an appendix. The four determinants were reworked into five restoration criteria that must all be met simultaneously to achieve the ecological integrity. These criteria were included in Loftin et al. (1990b) for use in evaluating alternative restoration plans, and were also included in the feasibility report for the Kissimmee River Restoration Project (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991). The five criteria are:

- (1) Continuous flow with duration and variability characteristics comparable to pre-channelization records. The most important features of this criterion are: (a) reestablishment of continuous flow from July through October, (b) highest annual discharges in September–November and lowest flows in March–May, and (c) a wide range of stochastic discharge variability.
- (2) Average flow velocities between 0.8–1.8 feet per second, when flows are contained within channel banks.
- (3) A stage-discharge relationship that results in overbank flow along most of the floodplain when discharges exceed 1400 cubic feet per second in the upper reaches of the river and 2000 cubic feet per second in the lower reaches.
- (4) Stage recession rates on the floodplain that do not typically exceed 1 foot per month.
- (5) Stage hydrographs that result in floodplain inundation frequencies comparable to pre-channelization hydroperiods, including seasonal and long-term variability characteristics.

The feasibility report goes on to describe the relationship of each criterion to ecological integrity. These criteria have also been restated in several publications, including Shen et al. (1994), Toth (1995), and Shen (1996).

The hydrologic criteria describe different aspects of magnitude, frequency, duration, timing, and rates of change of hydrologic events (Table 2-1). These same attributes are captured in the natural flow regime concept defined by Poff et al. (1997). The natural flow regime is based on flow because flow data, unlike stage data, are readily comparable among sites and are available for a network of stream gauging sites established early in the 20th century and maintained by the United States Geological Survey (USGS). Each criterion, except stage-discharge relationships, corresponds to one of the components of the natural flow regime. One challenge for this chapter is to express the hydrologic criteria as quantifiable metrics that can be evaluated as restoration expectations by the evaluation program.

CHAPTER 2 HYDROLOGY

Table 2-1. Hydrologic criteria and the metrics used for evaluation.

Criterion	Notes	Ecological function	Natural Flow characteristic*	Candidate metric
Continuous flow	Continuous flow during June–Oct.	Needed to maintain DO regime	Duration / Magnitude	Days with zero discharge
Seasonality of flow	Peak flow in Sept.–Nov., low flow in March–May		Timing	Mean monthly flow
	Stochastic variability of flow		Timing	
Mean channel velocity	Avg velocity of 0.8–1.8 ft/s when flow is within channel banks	Protect river biota from excessive flows that could disrupt feeding and reproduction, maximizes habitat availability	Magnitude	Mean channel velocity
Stage-discharge relationships	Bankfull Q = 1400–2000 cfs	Defines threshold for floodplain inundation		
Stage recession rates	Rate <1 ft/30 d	Allows prolonged inundation of the floodplain needed for wetland plants	Rate of change	Event recession rate
Stage hydrographs		Requires inundation of the floodplain needed for wetland plants and for the exchange of organisms and materials between the channel and floodplain	Frequency	Maximum stage Minimum stage Mean stage Median stage Change in stage No of days inundation

* Natural flow regime considers five characteristics of flow: magnitude of flow events, frequency, duration, timing, and rate of change (Poff et al. 1997).

METHODS

Study Site

The Kissimmee Basin

The Kissimmee Basin is located in subtropical, south-central Florida (Figure 2-2), where rainfall averages 124 cm/year and falls primarily during a summer-autumn wet season (Warne et al. 2000). The basin is located entirely within the Atlantic Coastal Plain physiographic province in a region of low topographic relief (White 1970). The basin occupies a swale on the Osceola and Okeechobee Plains that is bordered by the Lake Wales Ridge to the west and northwest, and by marine scarps to the east. For

purposes of discussion, the basin is frequently divided into an upper basin that extends northward from Lake Kissimmee and a lower basin that contains the Kissimmee River from the outflow of Lake Kissimmee to Lake Okeechobee.

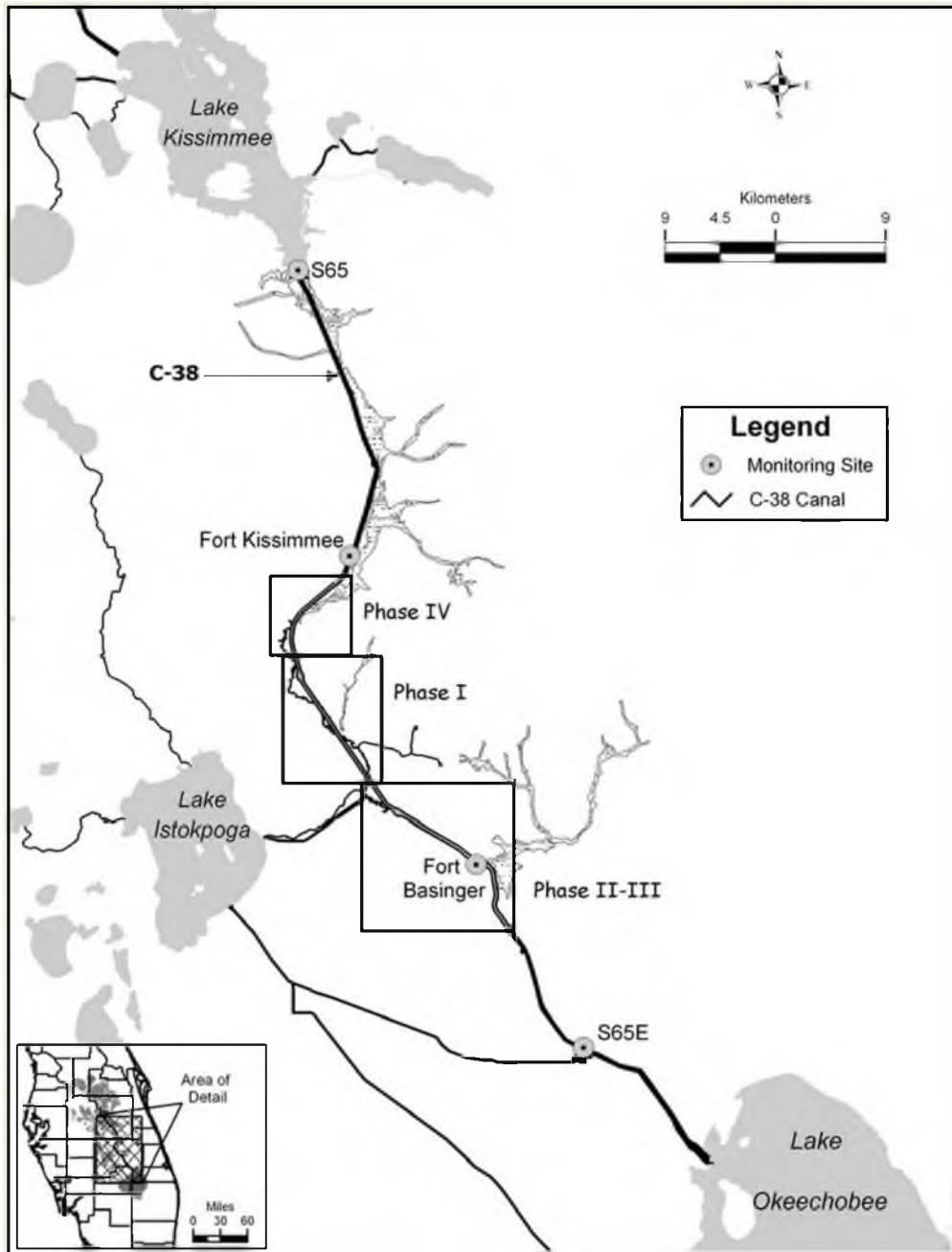


Figure 2-2. Map of the Kissimmee River showing the locations of pre-channelization hydrologic monitoring sites. Rectangles identify the reaches of the river affected by each phase of the restoration project.

The upper basin (4229 km²) includes several small tributary streams and more than 20 lakes. Collectively, lakes account for 10% of the area of the upper basin. The three major tributary streams are Boggy Creek, which flows into East Lake Tohopekaliga; Shingle Creek, which flows into Lake

Tohopekaliga; and Reedy Creek, which flows into Lake Hatchineha. Excessive rain can raise lake stages causing overflow of the lake margin.

The lower basin (1963 km²) contains the Kissimmee River and extends from the outlet of Lake Kissimmee to the inflow of Lake Okeechobee. Early studies indicated that mean annual discharge was 1647 cfs in the Kissimmee River near Lake Okeechobee, and that the upper basin contributed approximately 58% of the flow in the river (Parker et al. 1955, p. 307). The remaining 42% came from direct rainfall over the river and from inflow from tributary basins, which range in area from a few square miles, to 143 mi² for Chandler Slough (Abteu 1992). The river channel has slopes of only 0.00009 to 0.000057 (Warne et al. 2000). River channels were approximately 115 ft (35 m) wide with a floodplain of 1–3 miles (2–5 km) in width. Early descriptions of the area emphasized that the Kissimmee River flowed through a marshy floodplain with few trees. The floodplains were flanked by dry grassy prairies with some clumps of low shrubs and occasional cabbage palm (*Sabal palmetto*), slash pine (*Pinus caribaea*), and live oak (*Quercus geminata*) savannahs, especially in the Indian Prairie region (Harper 1927).

Hydrologic conditions in the Kissimmee River have been modified by a number of changes to the basin since the 1880s, but the greatest changes were associated with the Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project (Appendix 2-1A). During the 1960s, the Kissimmee River was channelized along its entire length by excavation of the C-38 canal. This canal is wider, at 90–300 feet (27–91 m), and deeper, at 30 feet (9 m), than the natural river channel. It is 56 mi (90 km) in length, only about half the length of the original meandering channel. The C-38 canal is divided into five pools by water control structures. These structures are operated to maintain stage within a fairly narrow range. The presence of the water control structures and the characteristics of the canal flattened the normal slope of the water surface. These changes permanently inundated the floodplain at the downstream end of the pool and permanently drained the upstream end. Additional information on the basin hydrology can be found in Huber et al. (1976), Loftin et al. (1990a, 1990b), and Warne et al. (2000).

Field Methods

Long Term Changes

Long term changes in hydrologic conditions in the Kissimmee River were examined using stage and flow data from permanent stations that have long periods of record spanning pre- and post-channelization conditions (Table 2-2). These sites were originally established by the USGS as stage and flow monitoring sites. After the Central & Southern Florida (C&SF) flood control project in 1948, the Fort Kissimmee and Fort Basinger stations were deactivated and later reactivated. The S-65 and S-65E stations were originally USGS locations that were replaced by water control structures and taken over by the South Florida Water Management District (SFWMD) (Appendix 2-2A). Stage was monitored with mechanical stage recorders, and converted to discharge using rating curves developed from stage and field measurements of velocity and discharge (Parker et al. 1955). At water control structures, flow was estimated from flow equations using head and tailwater stages, and information about gate openings (Otero 1995, Ansar and Alexis 2003).

Table 2-2. Stations with periods of record before and after channelization.

Station	Data type	Period of record	Min	Max
S-65	Discharge (cfs)	1-Oct-33–30-Apr-99	0	11600
Fort Kissimmee	Stage (ft)	9-Dec-41–30-Apr-99	37.95	50.12
Fort Basinger	Stage (ft)	21-Jun-31–30-Apr-99	23.88	55.84
S-65E	Discharge (cfs)	1-Oct-48–30-Sep-64	247	16800
	Stage (ft)	1-Jan-30–30-Apr-99	13.27	29.31
	Discharge (cfs)	1-Oct-28–30-Apr-99	0	23500

Mean daily stage and flow data were retrieved from the SFWMD hydrologic database DBHYDRO. Stage data are always in reference to the NGVD 1929 datum. In DBHYDRO, each data series is identified with a dbkey, a unique identifier in the database. The dbkeys for the data used in this study and notes on the data series are summarized in Appendix 2-2A. Data were organized by water years lasting from May 1 to April 30, which follows the convention used by the South Florida Environmental Report, so that future

analyses can be compared directly with that annual report. Descriptive analyses (time series, frequency distributions, stage duration curves) were used to characterize stage and flow data for a reference period prior to channelization and a baseline period that characterized the channelized system. The length of the reference and baseline periods varied among sites depending upon data availability (Table 2-2). The reference period ended in Water Year (WY) 1962 (April 30, 1962) because this water year preceded completion of any of the water control structures in the upper basin (Guardo 1992). The baseline period began as early as WY 1972 because this period followed the completion of the channelization project. The baseline period ended in WY 1999, just prior to the beginning of Phase I construction in June 1999.

All the pre-channelization stage data were collected at river channel stations. To evaluate floodplain inundation, river channel stage was compared to estimates of the average floodplain elevation given in Obeysekera and Loftin (1990) of 43 feet at Fort Kissimmee, 28.5 feet at Fort Basinger, and 21 feet at S-65E. Similar average floodplain elevations of 43 feet MSL at Fort Kissimmee, 30 feet at Fort Basinger, and 20 feet at S-65E were also given on Plate 5 in U. S. Army Corps of Engineers (1969).

In addition to river data, climatic data were also examined because of the potential for climatic shifts to be confounded with the impacts of channelization. Monthly rainfall for the upper and lower basins was obtained from weighted averages monthly values estimated from Thiessen polygons (Geoff Shaughnessy, SFWMD, unpublished data). Also, information was extracted from Abteu et al. (2004) on drought conditions, as indicated by the Palmer Drought Severity Index, for both the upper and lower Kissimmee Basins. Information on El Niño/La Niña conditions were drawn from Huebner (2000).

Hurricanes and tropical storms passing over the Kissimmee Basin were identified from tracking maps in Williams and Duedall (2002) and Neumann et al. (1999). Hurricane effects, particularly rainfall, occur over a larger area than a line representing the hurricane track. Two hurricanes that made landfall in Florida in September and October 1947 were included even though the hurricane track shows both storms passing to the south of Lake Okeechobee. These storms are commonly considered to have contributed to severe flooding in the Kissimmee Basin (Shen et al. 1994, Koebel 1995).

Evaluation of Hydrologic Criteria

Evaluation of the hydrologic criteria, as stated in the feasibility report (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991), poses two problems. First, all criteria were not expressed as specific metrics. Second, desirable conditions (e.g., stage recessions not to exceed 1 ft /30 d) were identified for only a few of the criteria, and even for these the metrics were not clearly stated. To resolve these issues, one or more candidate metrics were identified for each hydrologic criterion. These metrics were evaluated for pre-channelization and post-channelization periods.

Phase I Baseline Monitoring

Phase I of the restoration project spans most of Pool C and the downstream end of Pool B. The area included in Phase I does not contain any of the long-term hydrologic monitoring stations (Figure 2-2). To evaluate hydrologic changes associated with Phase I, a dense hydrologic monitoring network (Figure 2-3) was established in Pool C between August 22, 1996 and November 24, 1998 to collect hydrologic data prior to the initiation of restoration. Four stations were located in remnant river channels: PC11R, PC33, KRBNS (PC43), and KRDRS (PC54). The remaining 17 stations were located on the floodplain. The 21 stations were arranged as five transects running east to west across the floodplain. This design was adopted so that these monitoring sites could provide information about changes in stage, which could be used to calibrate hydraulic simulation models (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991).

At each station, surface water elevation (stage in feet NGVD 1929) was monitored using a float-encoder. Stage measurements were made to the nearest 0.01 feet and the calibration of the instrument was maintained within 0.02 feet. Surface water wells were positioned so that water levels could be monitored even if water levels dropped below the ground's surface. Additionally, an ultrasonic velocity meter (UVM) was installed at PC33 to allow continuous discharge measurements. Flow measurements are described in detail in Appendix 2-5A.

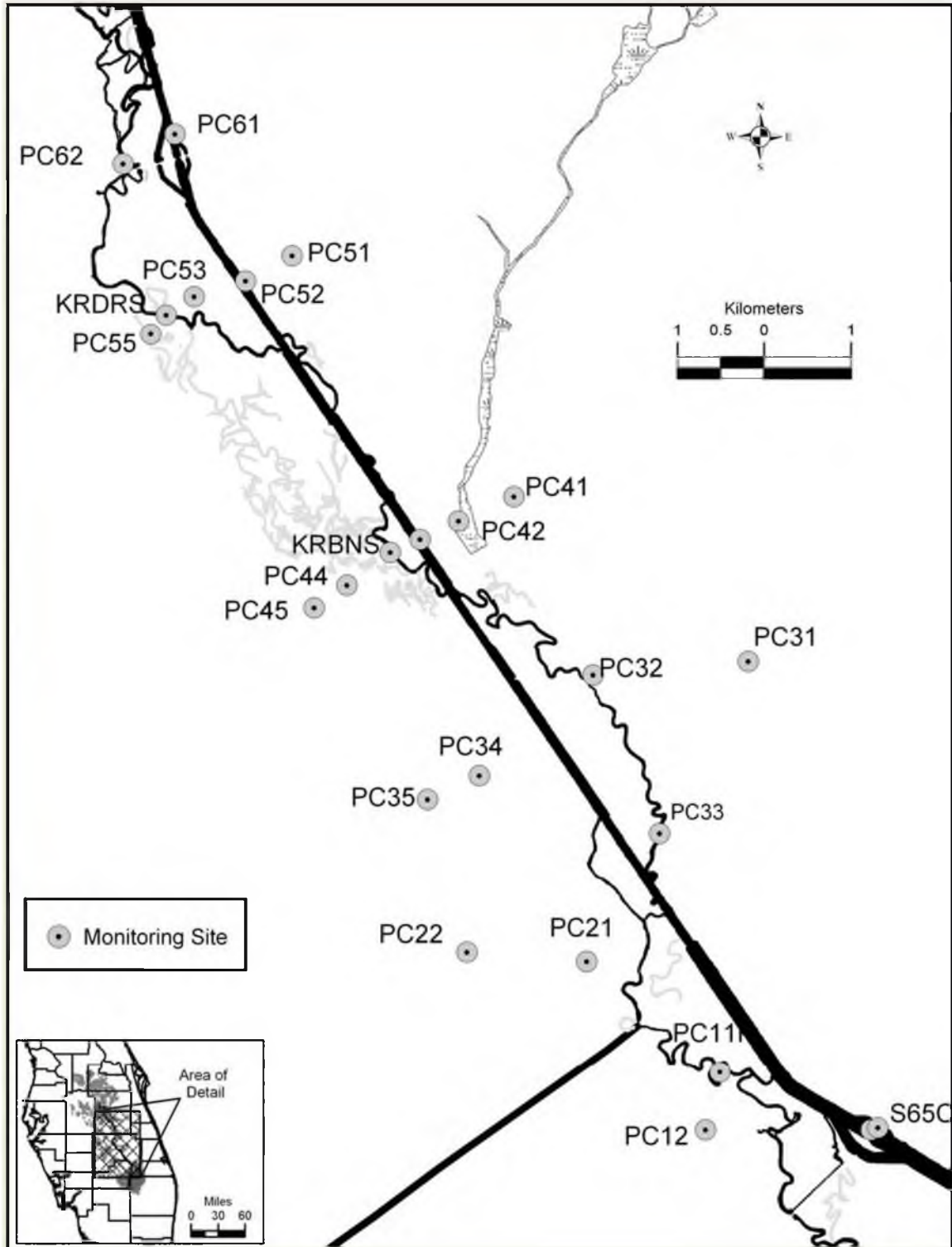


Figure 2-3. Locations of the baseline hydrologic monitoring sites in the area of Phase I of the Kissimmee River Restoration Project.

RESULTS

Long Term Trends

Rainfall

Annual rainfall ranged from 27 to 84 inches in the Kissimmee Basins for 1915–1999 (Figure 2-4A). For most water years, annual rainfall in the upper and lower basins increased or decreased in the same direction but not always by the same amount. For nearly 50 years preceding channelization (WY 1915–1961), annual rainfall in the upper basin ranged from 31.22 inches to 84.05 inches and averaged 51.00 (SE = 1.42) inches. Over the same period, annual rainfall in the lower basin had a slightly narrower range (35.20 inches to 66.48 inches), but a nearly identical average of 51.04 inches (SE 1.24). In the 28 years following channelization but prior to the initiation of Phase I construction (WY 1972–1999), annual rainfall in the upper basin ranged from 33.24 inches to 68.40 inches and averaged 48.08 inches (SE = 1.45). Over the same channelized period, annual rainfall in the lower basin ranged from 27.10 inches to 64.78 inches and averaged 45.27 inches (SE = 1.51). Similar spread of the box plots and their symmetry about the median suggested that variances were homogenous between the upper and lower basins during the reference and baseline periods (Figure 2-4B).

The reference and baseline periods had similar values for mean monthly rainfall, which suggested that only small changes had occurred in the seasonality of rainfall (Figure 2-5). The distribution of mean monthly rainfall suggested distinct dry (November–May) and wet seasons (June–October). For dry season months, mean monthly rainfall for the reference period tended to be within 1 SE of the mean for the baseline period in both basins. For wet season months, mean monthly rainfall for reference period was usually within 1 SE of the baseline values for the upper basin. However, in the lower basin, mean monthly rainfall for the reference period tended to be higher than for the baseline period.

Flood events in the Kissimmee Basin have been linked to hurricane and tropical storm activity. The frequency of tropical storms passing over the Kissimmee Basin was 0.13 storms/year for both the baseline and reference periods (Appendix 2-3A and Appendix 2-4A). The frequency of hurricanes passing over the basin after channelization was 0.08 hurricanes per year, which was approximately half the frequency of 0.17 for the reference period. Not all hurricanes maintained hurricane strength as they passed over the basin.

River Channel Stage

Mean daily stage was available at four stations along the river and was plotted through May 31, 1999, which marked the beginning of Phase I construction (Figure 2-6). From upstream to downstream, these stations were S-65 at the outflow from Lake Kissimmee, Fort Kissimmee in upper Pool B, Fort Basinger in upper Pool D, and S-65E near Lake Okeechobee. Stages decreased with location along the river channel in relation to the sloping ground elevation. All four stations exhibited a narrowing of the range of stage fluctuation after stage regulation began in the 1960s.

Mean daily stage data for Fort Kissimmee was available for a 20 year reference period (WY 1943–1962) representing pre-channelization, and a 14 year baseline period (WY 1985–1999) representing the channelized river (Appendix 2-2A). During the reference period, data were missing for 579 d, which included one year of missing values (October 1, 1953–September 30, 1954). During the baseline period, data were missing for 77 d. During the reference period, mean daily stage ranged from 38.47 feet to 50.12 feet and averaged 44.20 feet (Figure 2-7A). A frequency distribution of mean daily stages approximated a normal distribution. During the baseline period, mean daily stage had a narrower range of only 38.02 feet to 46.76 feet and averaged 41.61 feet (Figure 2-7B), which was 2.59 feet less than the average stage for the reference period. Stage conditions at this site are not representative of the rest of the river during the baseline period because a fluctuating pool stage regulation schedule was implemented on October 28, 1985 for Pool B (Toth 1991). When the S-65B structure was installed, it was operated to maintain a constant stage of 40 feet in Pool B. The fluctuating stage schedule was implemented as part of the Kissimmee River Restoration Demonstration Project. The schedule allowed stage to vary from 39 feet to 42 feet with a drawdown to 38 feet every three–five years. Stage fluctuation within a water year at Fort Kissimmee ranged from 0.72 feet to 9.02 feet during the reference period and 3.0 feet to 8.3 feet during the baseline period. Stage duration curves for Fort Kissimmee showed that a greater percentage of the reference period exhibited higher stages than during the baseline period (Figure 2-7C). The stage duration curve for the reference period shows that 76% of the measurements exceeded 43 feet, which is the average floodplain elevation (Obeysekera and Loftin 1990).

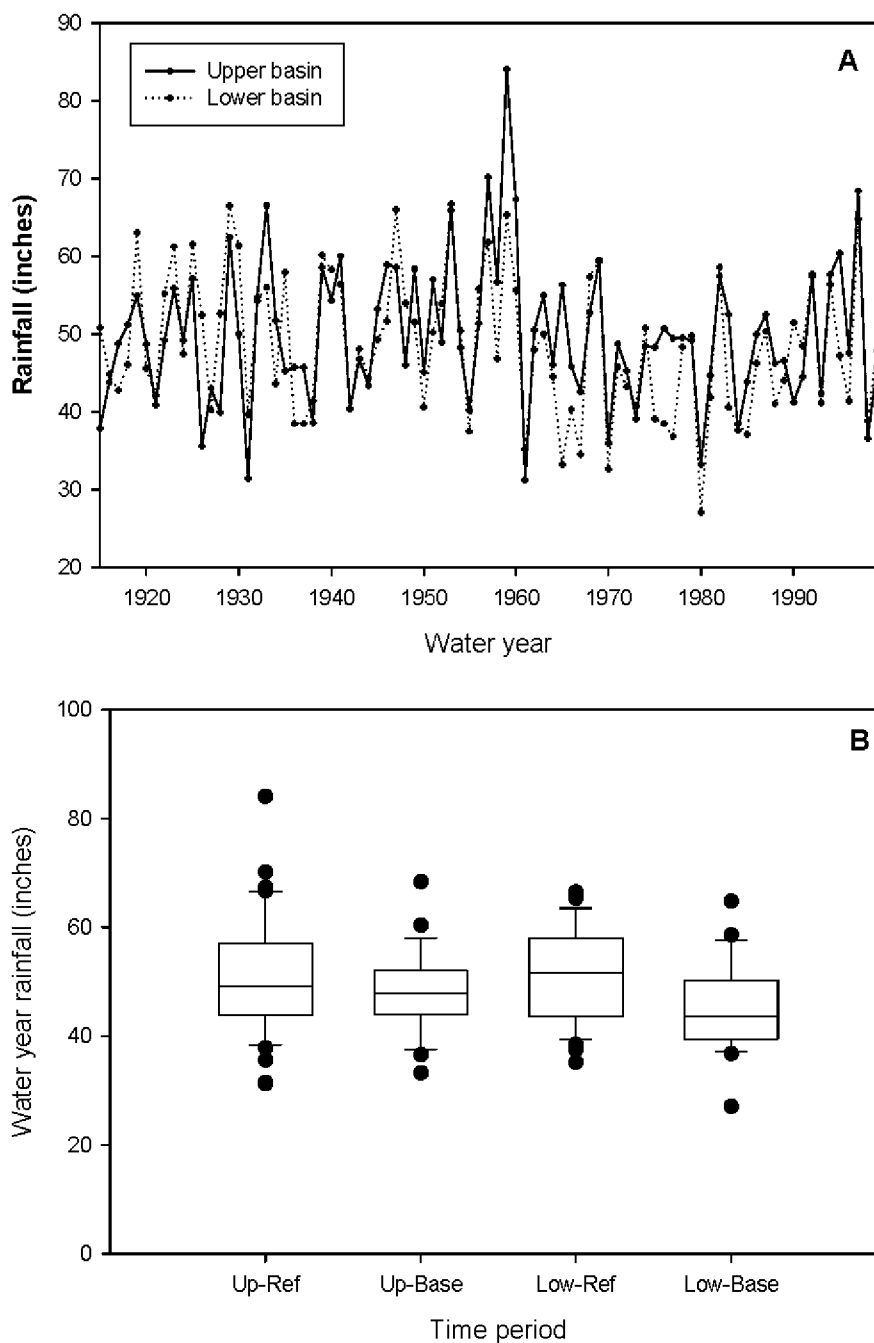


Figure 2-4. A. Annual rainfall by water year (May 1–April 30) for the upper and lower Kissimmee Basins. B. Box plots of annual rainfall for the upper basin reference and baseline periods, and for the lower baseline reference and baseline periods. The reference period was WY 1915–1961, and the baseline period was WY 1972–1999. In the box plots, the horizontal line is the median, the ends of the box represent the 25th and 75th percentiles and the error bars represent the 10th and 90th percentiles. Filled circles are values <10th or >90th percentile.

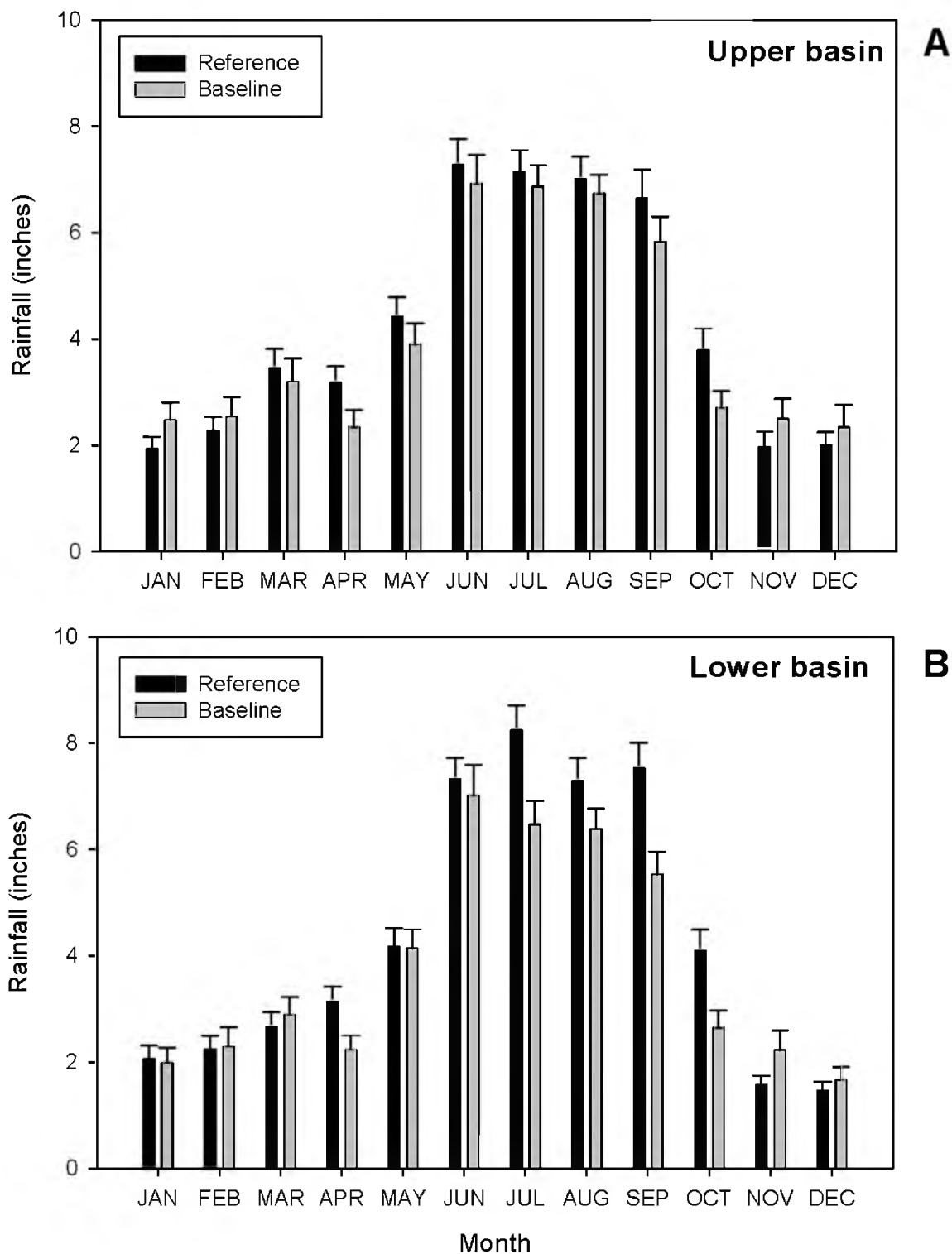


Figure 2-5. Mean monthly rainfall for the reference (1915–1961) and baseline (1972–1999) periods in the upper basin (A) and lower basin (B). Error bars are 1 SE.

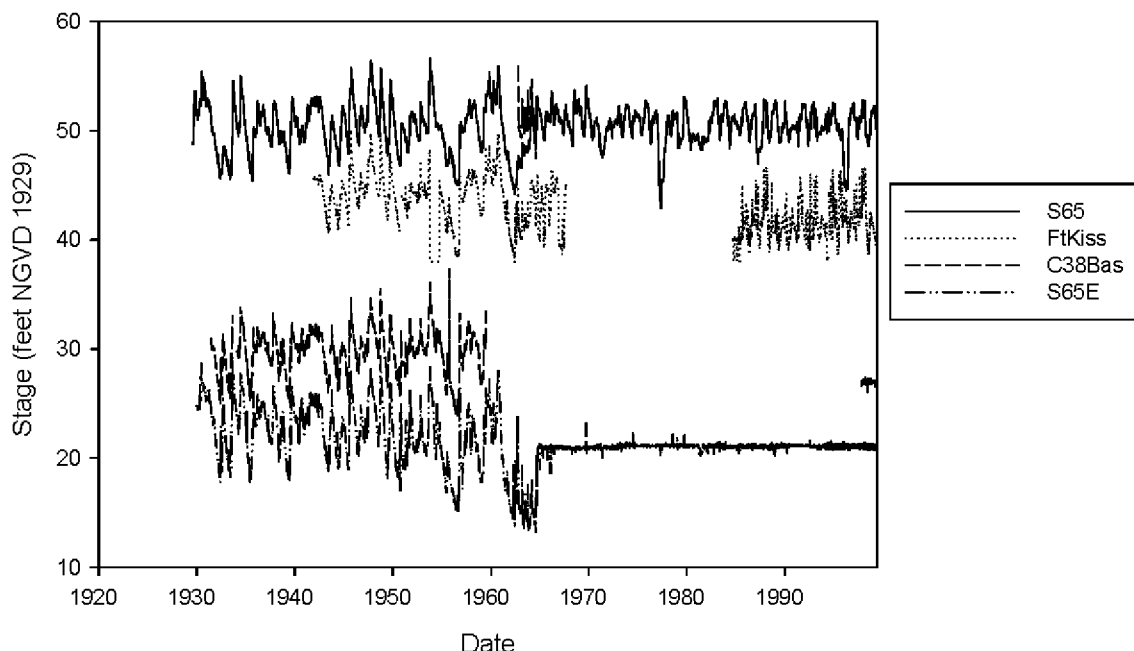


Figure 2-6. Mean daily stage at S-65, Fort Kissimmee, C38Bas, and S-65E. Period of record shown was truncated on June 1, 1999, for the end of the baseline period. Note that the Fort Kissimmee stage period of record resumes after a fluctuating regulation schedule was implemented for Pool B as part of the Kissimmee River Demonstration Project.

At Fort Basinger, stage data were available for 20 years (WY 1933–1962) during the reference period, but only one year (WY 1999) was available during the baseline period. Data were missing for 247 d during the reference period, but none was missing for the baseline period. During the reference period, mean daily stage ranged from 23.88 feet to 37.34 feet and averaged 29.69 feet (Figure 2-8A). For the single year of baseline data, stages varied over a much narrower range of 26.03 feet and 27.82 feet, and the average stage of 26.94 feet for the baseline period was 2.75 feet less than the average for the reference period (Figure 2-8B). Stage duration curves indicate that the mean floodplain elevation of 28.5 ft at this location was exceeded on approximately 75% of days during the reference period (Obeysekera and Loftin 1990), while floodplain elevation never exceeded the mean during the baseline period (Figure 2-8C).

At S-65E, mean daily stage data were available for 32 years (WY 1931–1962) during the reference period, and data were missing for only three days. Mean daily stage ranged from 14.5 feet to 29.31 feet and averaged 22.30 feet (Figure 2-9A). During the baseline period, mean daily stage data were available for 29 years (WY 1972–1999), and data were missing for 33 days. During the baseline period, mean daily stage varied over a much smaller range of 20.00 feet to 22.23 feet and averaged only 21.07 feet (Figure 2-9B). Stage duration curves showed that mean daily stage exceeded the mean floodplain elevation of 21 feet at this location (Obeysekera and Loftin 1990) for 69% of the reference period and for 97% of the baseline period (Figure 2-9C). The nearly continuous flooding at this location during the baseline period reflected ponding at the lower end of the pools that resulted from the flat water surface within pools.

Discharge

Changes in discharge associated with channelization were examined using a continuous record (i.e., no missing values except during construction) of mean daily discharge for the outflow from Lake Kissimmee, which is the location of S-65, and in the lower Kissimmee River at the present location of S-65E. Discharge data were not included for Fort Basinger or Fort Kissimmee because data at Fort Basinger were available for only three years (October 1, 1948–September 30, 1951) before channelization, and none were available for Fort Kissimmee.

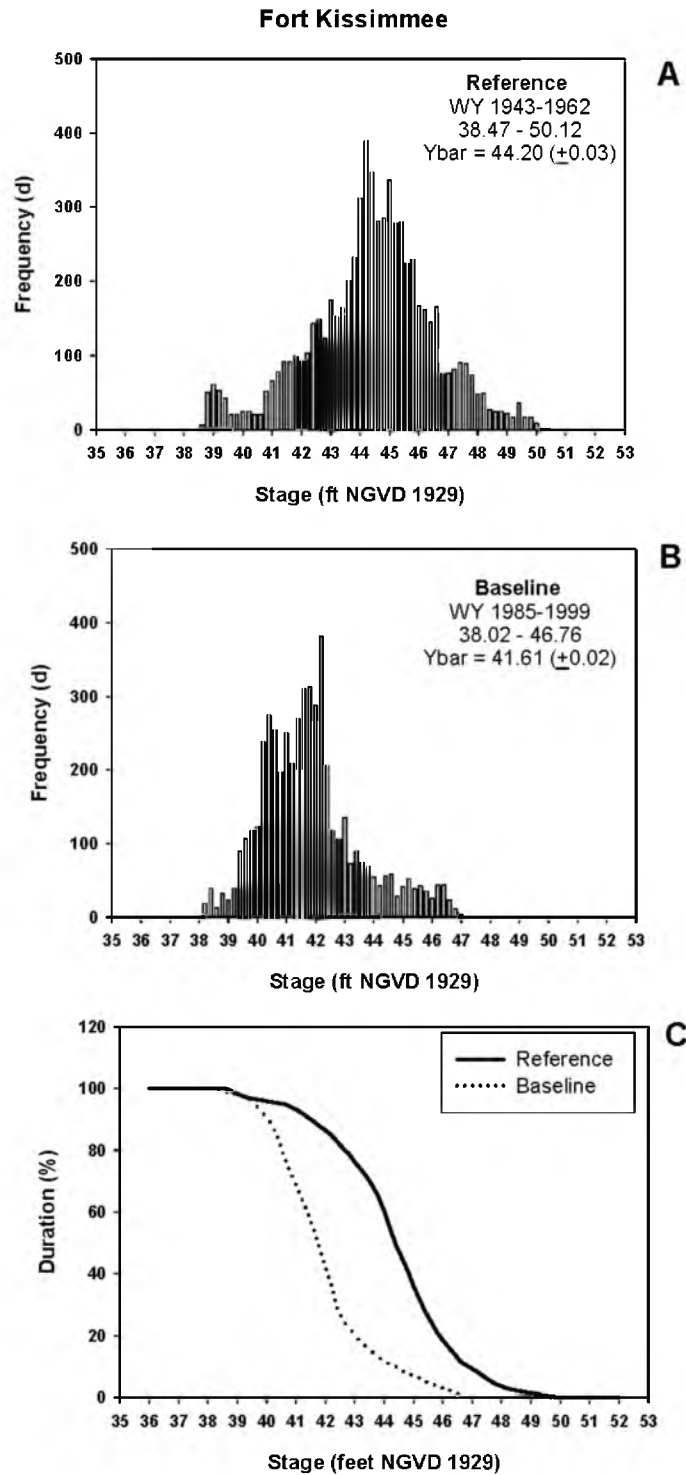


Figure 2-7. A. Frequency of mean daily stage at Fort Kissimmee for the reference period. B. Frequency of mean daily stage during the baseline period. C. Stage duration for the reference and baseline periods. Mean floodplain elevation at this station is 43 feet (Obeysekera and Loftin 1990).

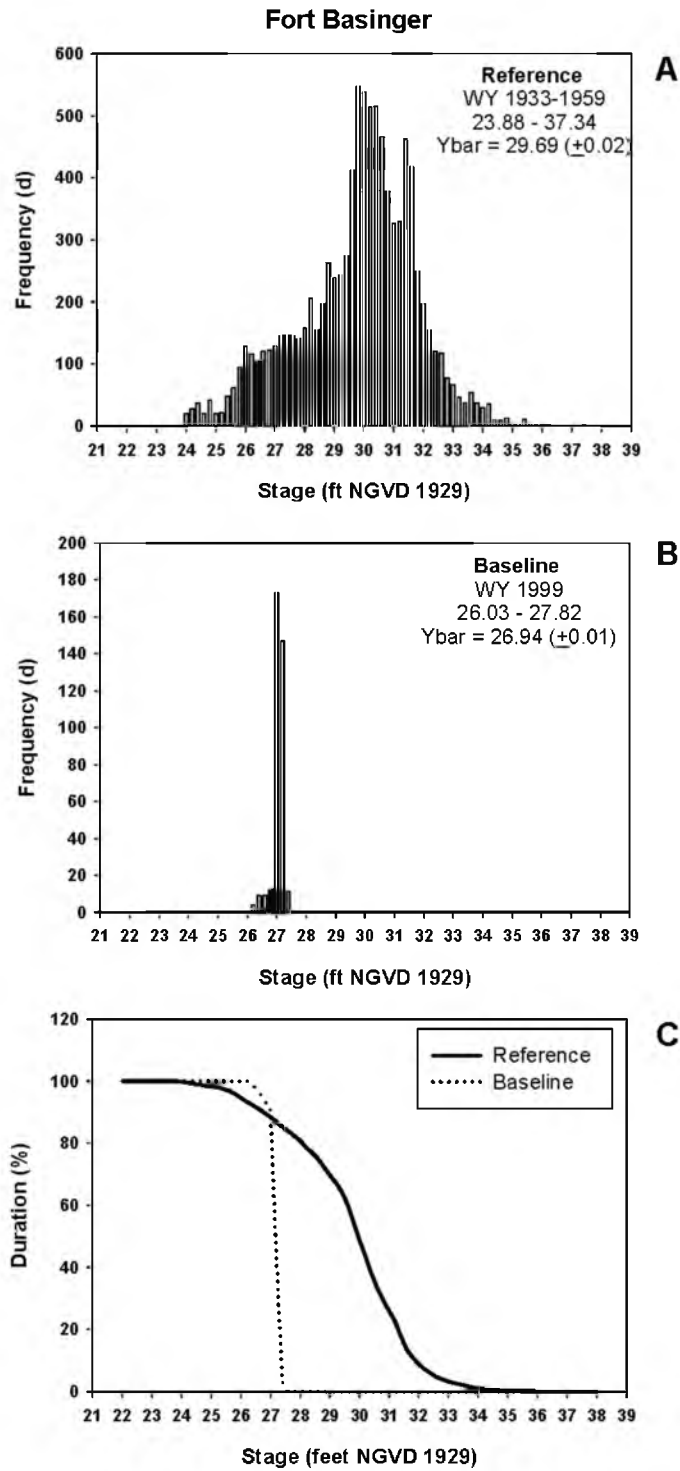


Figure 2-8. A. Frequency of mean daily stage at Fort Basinger for the reference period. B. Frequency of mean daily stage during the baseline period. C. Stage duration for the reference and baseline periods. Mean floodplain elevation at this station is 28.5 feet (Obeysekera and Loftin 1990).

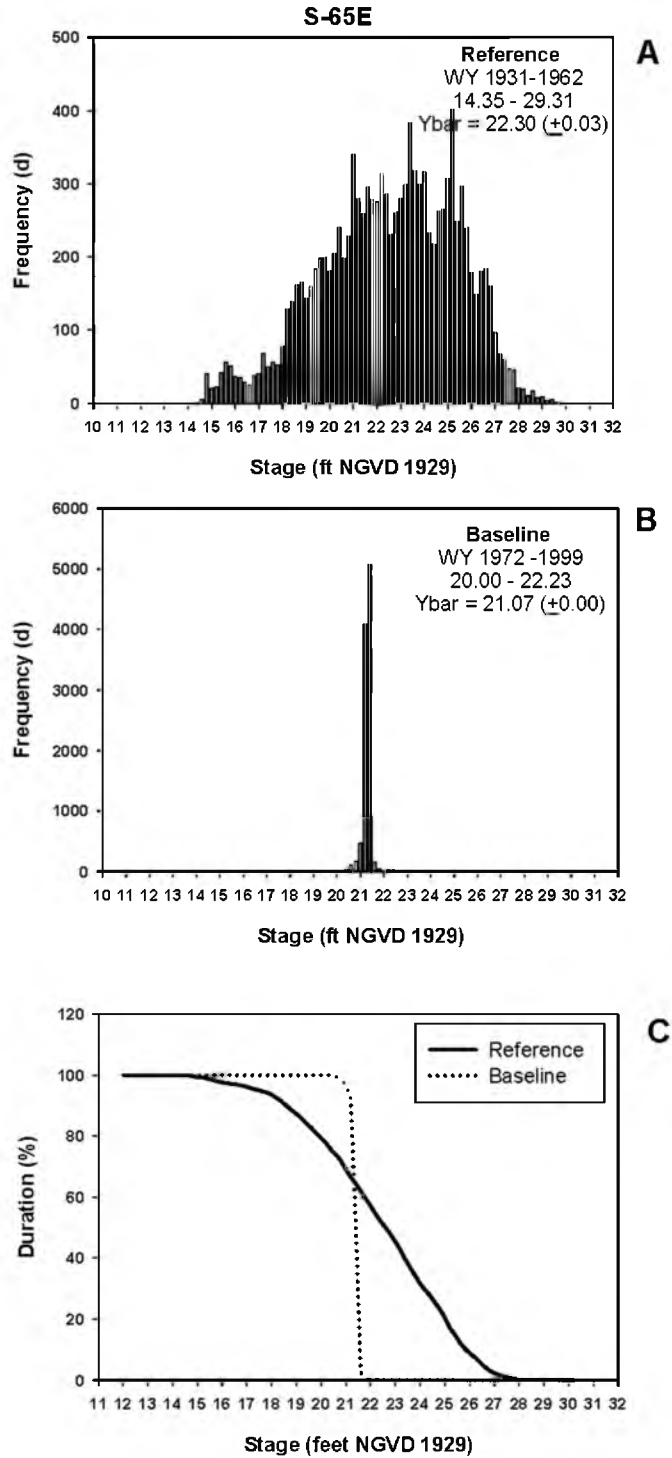


Figure 2-9. A. Frequency of mean daily stage at S-65E for the reference period. B. Frequency of mean daily stage during the baseline period. C. Stage duration for the reference and baseline periods. Mean floodplain elevation at this station is 21 feet (Obeysekera and Loftin 1990).

At both S-65 and S-65E, mean daily discharge tended to change more gradually during the pre-channelization period than during the post-channelization period (Figure 2-10). Extreme highs and lows and rapid changes were much more frequent in the post-channelization period. For example, prior to channelization, discharge was 0 cfs for only six days at S-65 and always >0 cfs at S-65E, but during the baseline period, the number of days with discharge of 0 cfs increased to 3108 d at S-65 and 787 d at S-65E. The smaller number of days without discharge at S-65E than at S-65 probably reflected its downstream position in the drainage network and the contribution of watershed inflows from tributaries and runoff.

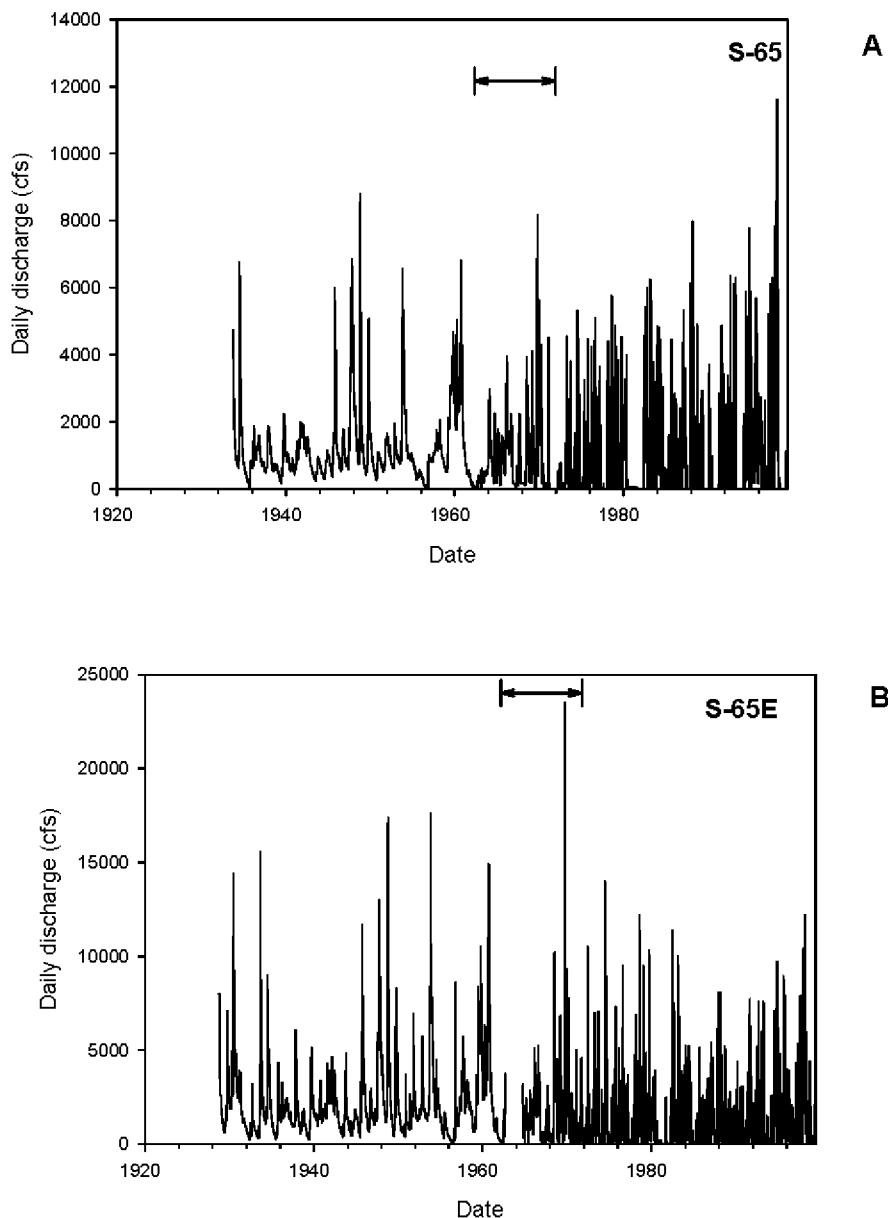


Figure 2-10. Mean daily discharge at S-65 and S-65E. Double-headed arrows indicate the time interval when channelization occurred.

A frequency distribution of mean daily discharge at S-65 approximated the shape of a log normal distribution during the reference period (WY 1935–1962) (Figure 2-11A). For this period, mean daily discharge varied between 0 and 8800 cfs and averaged 1233 cfs. After channelization, mean daily discharge varied over a larger range of between 0 and 11600 cfs than during the reference period (Figure 2-11B), but the average of 909 cfs for the baseline period (WY 1972–1999) was lower than for the reference period. At S-65, the reference period contained a larger percentage of mean daily discharges between 0 cfs and 1400 cfs, but the baseline period contained a larger percentage of discharges of 0 cfs or >1400 cfs (Figure 2-11C).

At S-65E, mean daily discharge during the reference period (WY 1930–1962) ranged from 68 cfs to 17600 cfs and averaged 2191 cfs (Figure 2-12A). During the baseline period (WY 1972–1999), mean daily discharge ranged from 0 to 14,000 cfs (Figure 2-12B). A larger percentage of time during the reference period than the baseline period exhibited mean daily discharges >0 cfs and \leq 3000 cfs when the stage duration curves converge (Figure 2-12C).

Mean annual discharge at S-65 (mean daily discharge averaged for a water year) did not show clear trends between the reference and baseline period (Figure 2-13A). During the reference period (WY 1935–1962), mean annual discharge ranged from 331 cfs to 3042 cfs and averaged 1233 (SE = 145) cfs. During the baseline period (WY 1972–1999), mean annual discharge had a slightly lower range of 24–3005 cfs and a slightly lower average of 909 (SE = 139) cfs. At S-65E, mean annual discharge exhibited a similar small decrease from the reference (WY 1929–1962) to the baseline (WY 1972–1999) period (Figure 2-13B). During the reference period, mean annual discharge ranged from 568 cfs to 5287 cfs and averaged 2191 (SE = 226) cfs, and during the baseline period, it ranged from 158 cfs to 3802 cfs and averaged 1327 (SE = 177) cfs.

Hydrologic Criteria

Continuous Flow

The continuous flow criterion was quantified with the metric - number of days in a water year when the mean daily discharge was 0 cfs. Days of zero discharge were rare during the reference period at S-65 (Figure 2-14A) and S-65E (Figure 2-14B), but were much more common after channelization and flow regulation in the 1960s. During the reference period at S-65, only six days of zero discharge were recorded and these occurred in October 1956 (WY 1957). These days, which were recorded as zero discharge in DBHYDRO, were actually a period of reverse flow into Lake Kissimmee (J. Chamberlain, unpublished data). Reverse flow occurred because heavy rainfall (16 in. in two days) followed severe drought conditions, and because constructed levees along the river reduced the floodplain width to 400 ft in some downstream areas. During the baseline period, days of zero discharge were much more common at S-65 especially after 1980 (Figure 2-14A), which may have resulted from changes in the regulation schedule. Days of zero discharge ranged from 0 to 312 d per water year and averaged 111 d (Table 2-3). At S-65E, zero discharge did not occur during the reference period. During the baseline period, it ranged from 1 d to 125 d per water year and averaged 28 d per water year (Table 2-3). Data for PC33 were available only for one year (WY 1999) in the baseline period, during which PC33 had 346 d of zero discharge.

Flow Variability

The second part of the continuous flow criterion emphasizes the seasonality and natural variability of discharge. Flow variability was assessed using the distribution of mean monthly discharge (average of mean daily discharge for a given month) and the coefficient of interannual mean monthly discharge

Reference Conditions. Reference conditions were derived from daily discharge data at historic river channel gages at the outlet of Lake Kissimmee (near existing location of S-65) and near Lake Okeechobee (near existing location of S-65E) from 1933 to 1960. Pre-channelization discharge data were estimated for S-65C to provide reference conditions for Phase I of the restoration project. These data were estimated using pre-channelization daily discharge at the outlet of the Kissimmee River basin (S-65E) and the ratios of drainage basin areas associated with these locations.

Pre-channelization mean monthly flows were higher during September through November and lower from January through June (Figure 2-15A). Interannual variation of historic monthly flows (Figure 2-15B) indicates minimal differences between months, with the largest variation occurring in June at the downstream gauge near Lake Okeechobee.

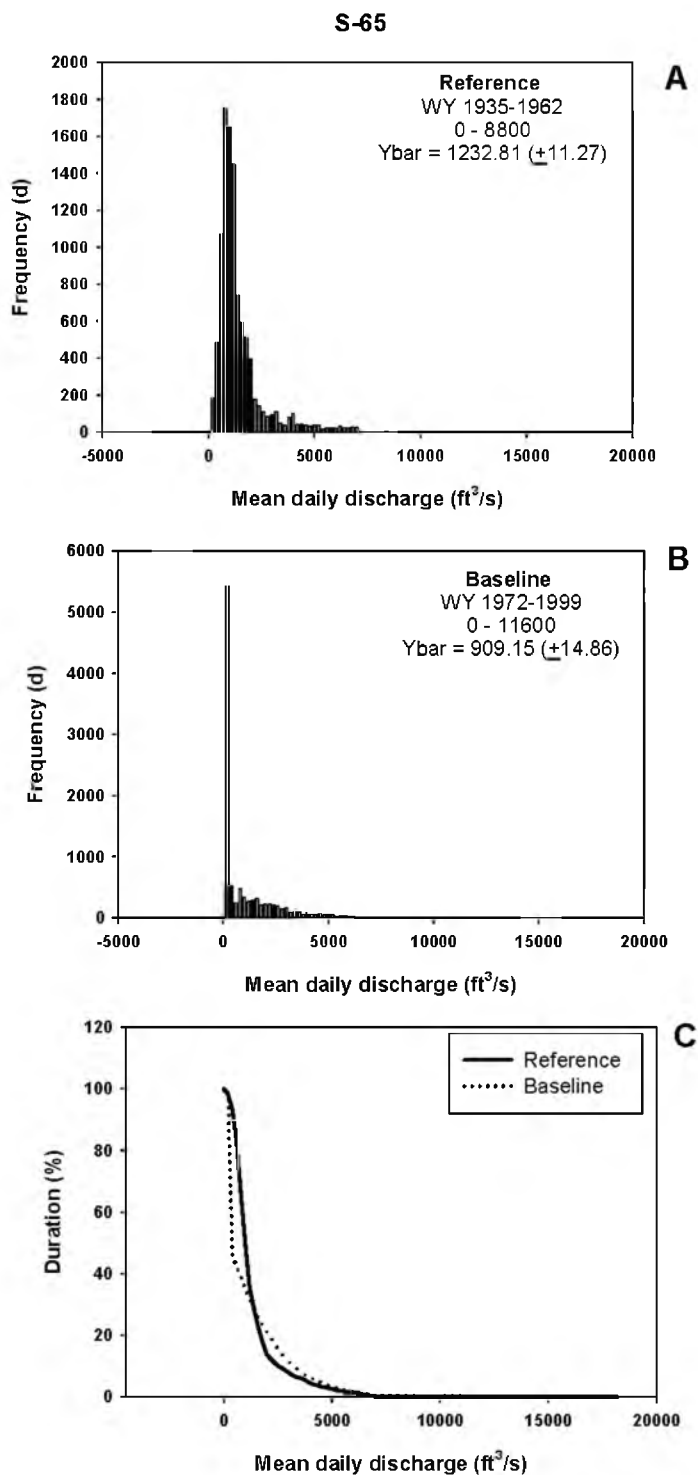


Figure 2-11. A. Frequency distribution of mean daily discharge for the reference period at S-65. B. Frequency distribution of mean daily discharge for the baseline period. C. Duration of discharges during the time interval for the reference period and the baseline period.

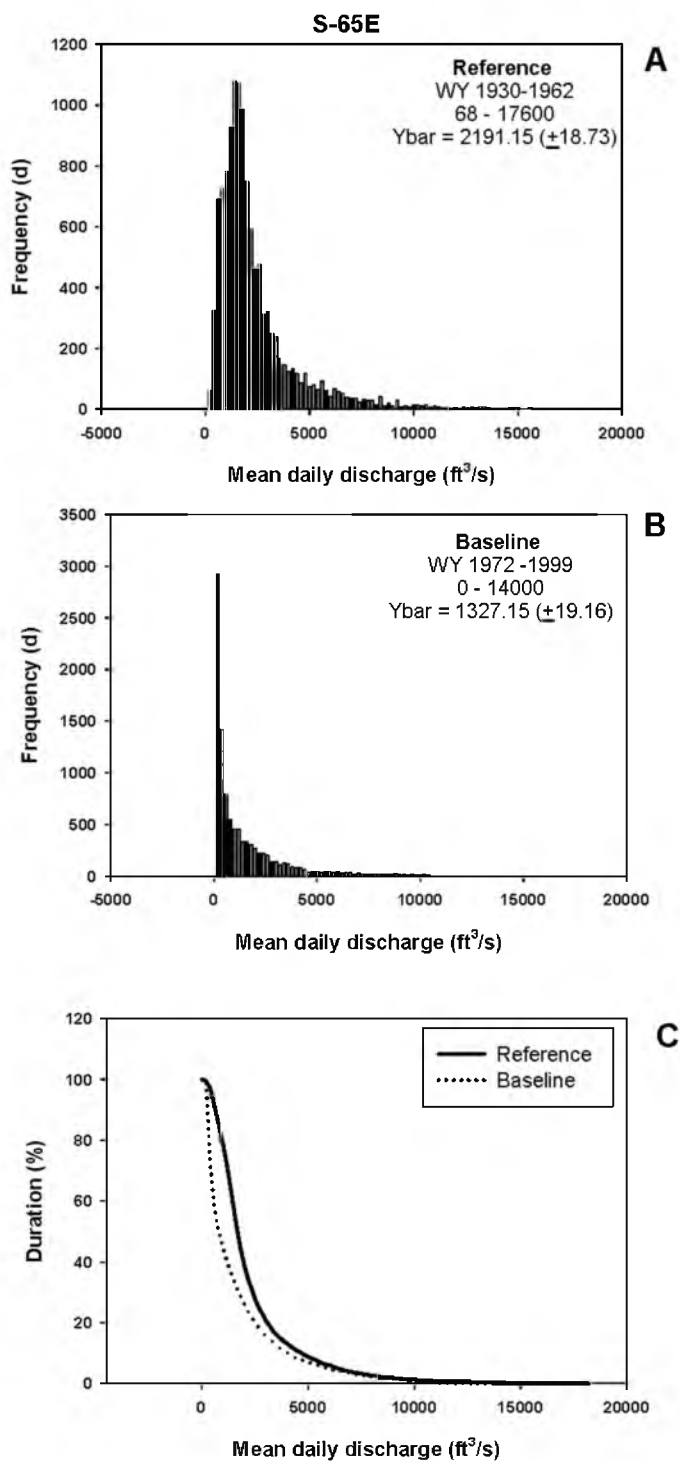


Figure 2-12. A. Frequency distribution of mean daily discharge for the reference period at S-65E. B. Frequency distribution of mean daily discharge for the baseline period. C. Duration of discharges during the time interval for the reference period and the baseline period.

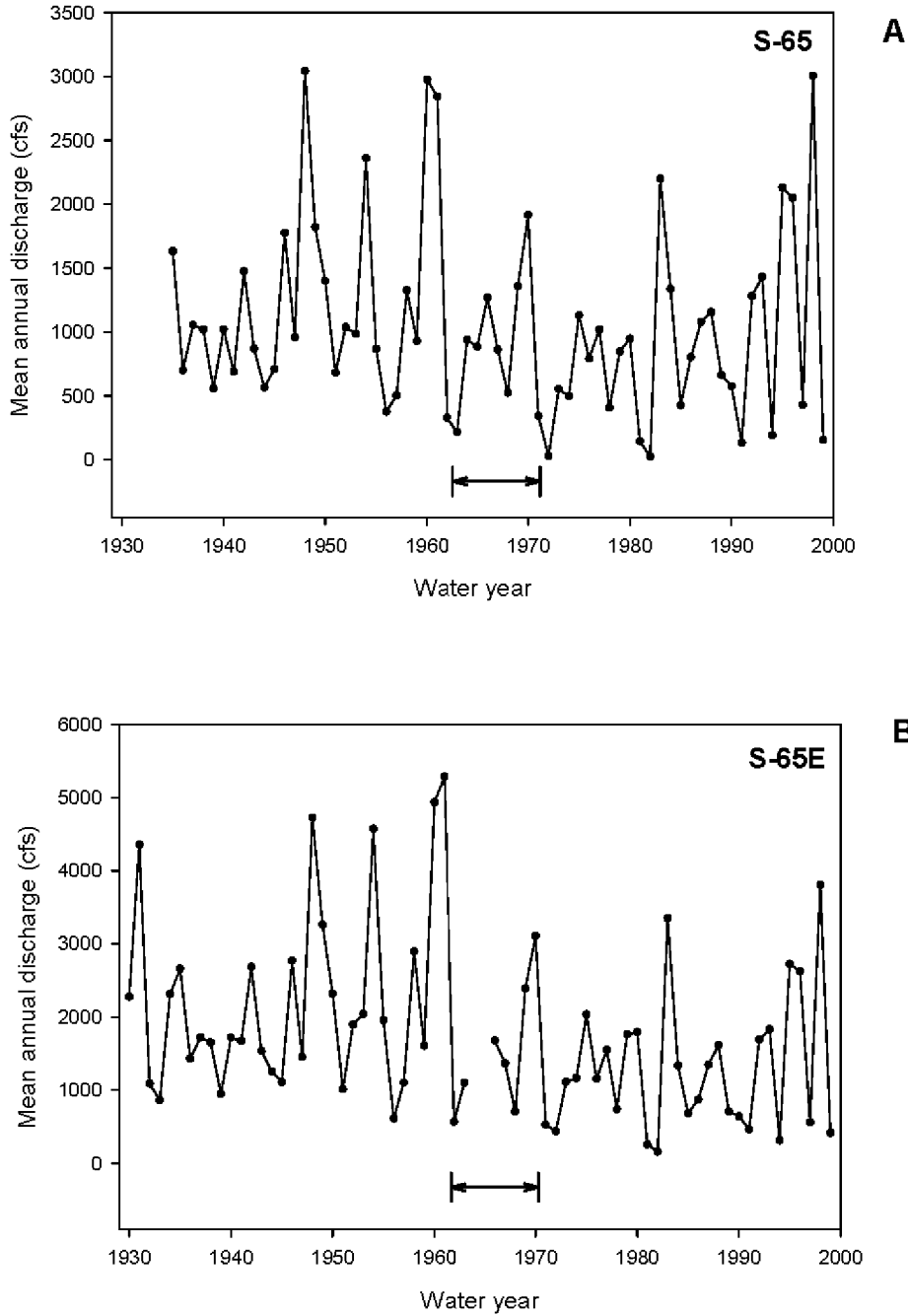


Figure 2-13. Mean annual daily discharge at S-65 (A) and S-65E (B). Double-headed arrows indicate the time interval when channelization occurred.

Baseline Conditions. Baseline conditions were derived from daily discharge at S-65, S-65C, and S-65E from 1971 to 1998 and daily discharge at PC33 on Micco Bluff Run, a remnant river channel in Pool C. S-65 is located at the outlet of the Upper Kissimmee Basin and contributes approximately 60% of the flows through the channelized Kissimmee River. S-65C is located near the middle of the area to be restored. The S-65E structure is located at the outlet of the Kissimmee River basin, approximately seven miles downstream of the restoration project limits. Data collected from November 1997 to May 1999 at PC33 are representative of baseline conditions in sections of river channel that will be affected by the first phase of restoration.

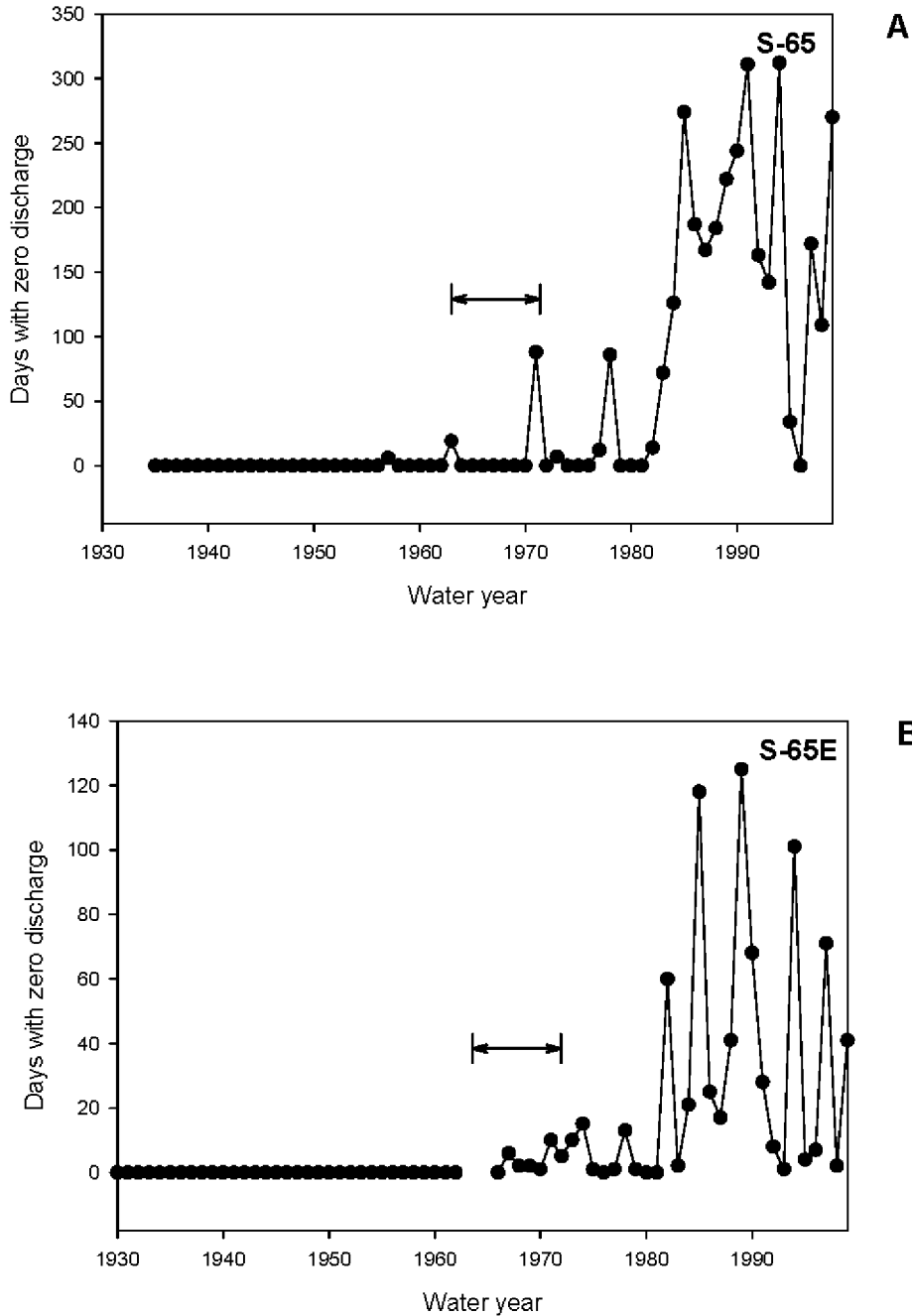


Figure 2-14. Number of days each water year that mean daily discharge was 0 cfs at S-65 (A) and S-65E (B). Double-headed arrows indicate the time interval when channelization occurred.

At S-65, S-65C, and S-65E, the highest flows occurred from January through April and in August and September, while low flows occurred in June, November, and December (Figure 2-16A). During wet season months from June through October, flows increased along the channelized river due to lower basin tributary inflows. During the dry season, flows were primarily a function of headwater discharges with little difference between upstream and downstream locations.

Discharges at the S-65 structures represent flows in the C-38 canal and are different from flow conditions in remnant river channels. Monthly mean discharges at PC33 lacked a seasonal pattern. Discharges were zero

CHAPTER 2 HYDROLOGY

75% of the time from November 1997 to May 1999. Daily river flows (PC33) were less than 5% of C-38 discharge 83% of the period when PC33 flows were >0 ft³/s.

Table 2-3. For the metric number of days per water year with discharge = 0, the number of water years of observations (N), the range, mean (Ybar) and median values for reference and baseline periods at three sites.

Site	N	Reference Period			Baseline Period			
		Range	Ybar(SE)	Median	N	Range	Ybar(SE)	Median
S-65	28	0–6	0.21(0.21)	0	28	0–312	111(20.60)	97.5
PC33*					1	346		
S-65E	33	0	0(0.01)	0	28	1–125	28.07(7.01)	11.5

* PC33 only had data for WY 1999.

Interannual variation of monthly mean flows (Figure 2-16B), as described by the coefficient of variation (standard deviation/mean), was high (relative to the historic system) during most months. S-65 had the highest variability, which occurred during months with high frequencies of zero flow (June, July, October, November, and December). Baseline intraannual and interannual distributions of monthly mean flows resulted from the current operation schedule at S-65, which is designed to lower stages in the headwater lakes between February and June in preparation for wet season rainfall. Lakes are allowed to fill to their maximum flood control elevation from June to November through February. Flood control operations have produced a seasonal shift of high and low flows and extended periods of no flow.

Mean Channel Velocity

Reference Conditions. Reference conditions were derived from the USGS historic stream gauging data at Kissimmee River below Lake Kissimmee (USGS site 2269000) and Kissimmee River near Cornwell/Bassinger (USGS site 2272500). A total of 342 measurements were collected between 1931 and 1959 (309 below Lake Kissimmee and 33 near Cornwell/Bassinger). Of these measurements, 179 were rated fair to excellent by the USGS and were used to derive mean velocities in the main river channel, which ranged between 0.8 to 1.8 ft/s (0.2 to 0.6 m/s) during 93% of these sampling events (Figure 2-17). Main channel discharges associated with velocities between 0.8 to 1.8 ft/s (0.2 to 0.6 m/s) ranged from approximately 100 to 2100 ft³/s (3 to 59 m³/s), with flows exceeding 500 ft³/s (15 m³/s) during 88% of the sampling events.

Baseline Conditions. Baseline conditions were derived from daily discharge at site PC33 on Micco Bluff Run, a remnant river channel in Pool C. Data from this site are representative of baseline conditions (November 1997–May 1999) within remnant river channels that will be affected by the first phase of restoration. Daily discharge at PC33 ranged from 0 to 1170 ft³/s (33 m³/s) but flows greater than 100 ft³/s (2.8 m³/s) occurred only 5% of the time. Mean channel velocities were calculated by dividing discharge by the cross sectional area of the river channel and ranged from 0.0 to 1.61 ft/s (0.49 m/s). However, because remnant river channels rarely conveyed discharge, mean channel velocities were less than 0.8 ft/s (0.2 m/s) 99% of the baseline period (Figure 2-17).

Stage Recession Rates

Reference Conditions. Reference conditions were derived from daily stage data at Fort Kissimmee (Figure 4) and Fort Basinger (Figure 5) from 1942 to 1959. Based on these data, peak stages typically occurred in September or October and slowly receded until May or June. Slow stage recession rates provided connectivity between the river and floodplain that contributed to habitat diversity and functionality, and allowed for transfer of available food resources between the river and floodplain.

Thirty-day recession rates were calculated by the difference between maximum and minimum stages for each recession event divided by the total number of days water levels receded, and multiplied by 30 days (Table 2-4, Table 2-5). Small increases in stage were ignored during prolonged recession events. However, a stage increase >1.5 ft (45 cm) was considered a new recession event.

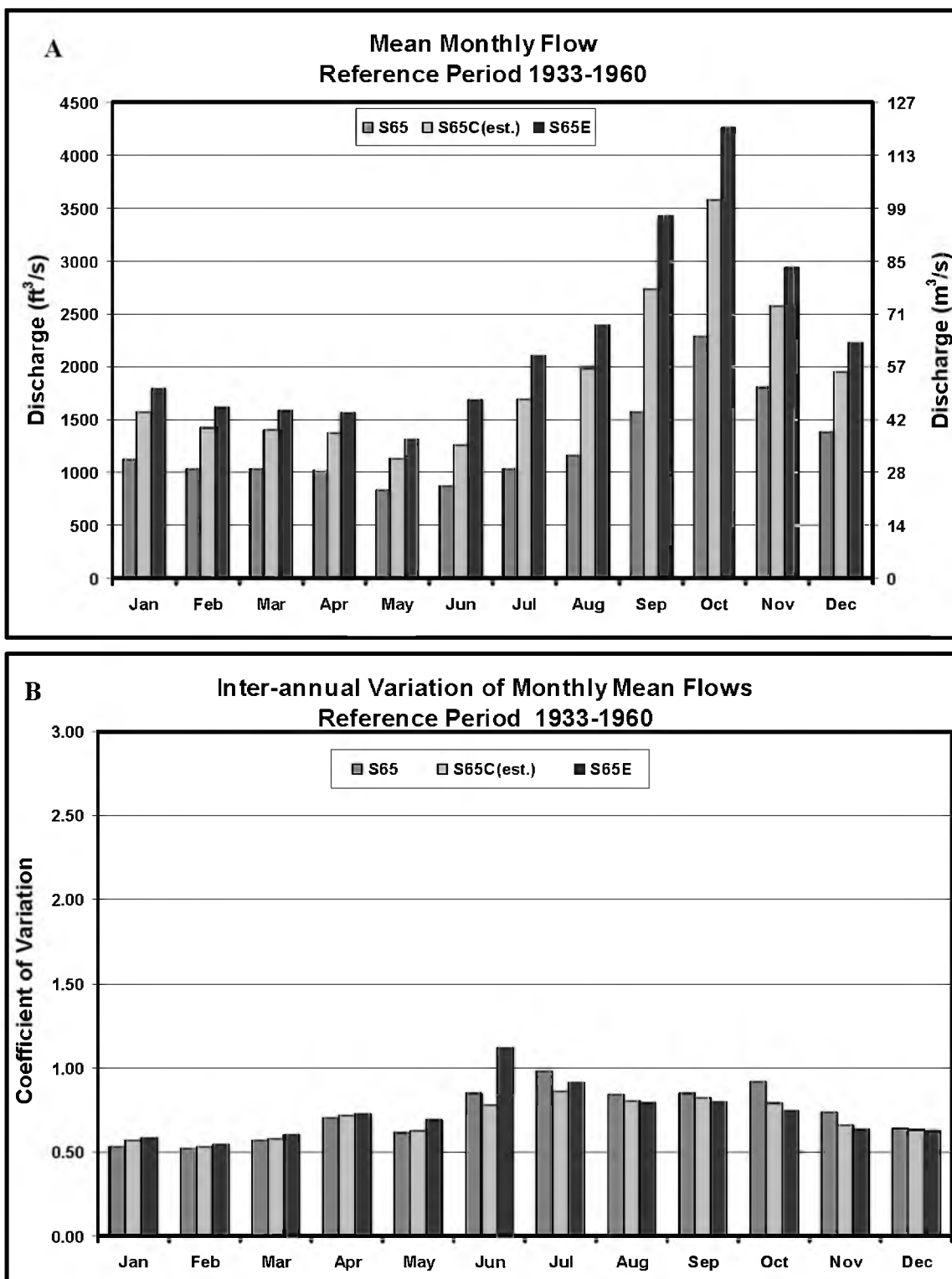


Figure 2-15. A. Mean monthly flow and B. coefficient of variation of mean monthly flow for S-65, estimated S-65C, and S-65E for the reference period (1933–1960).

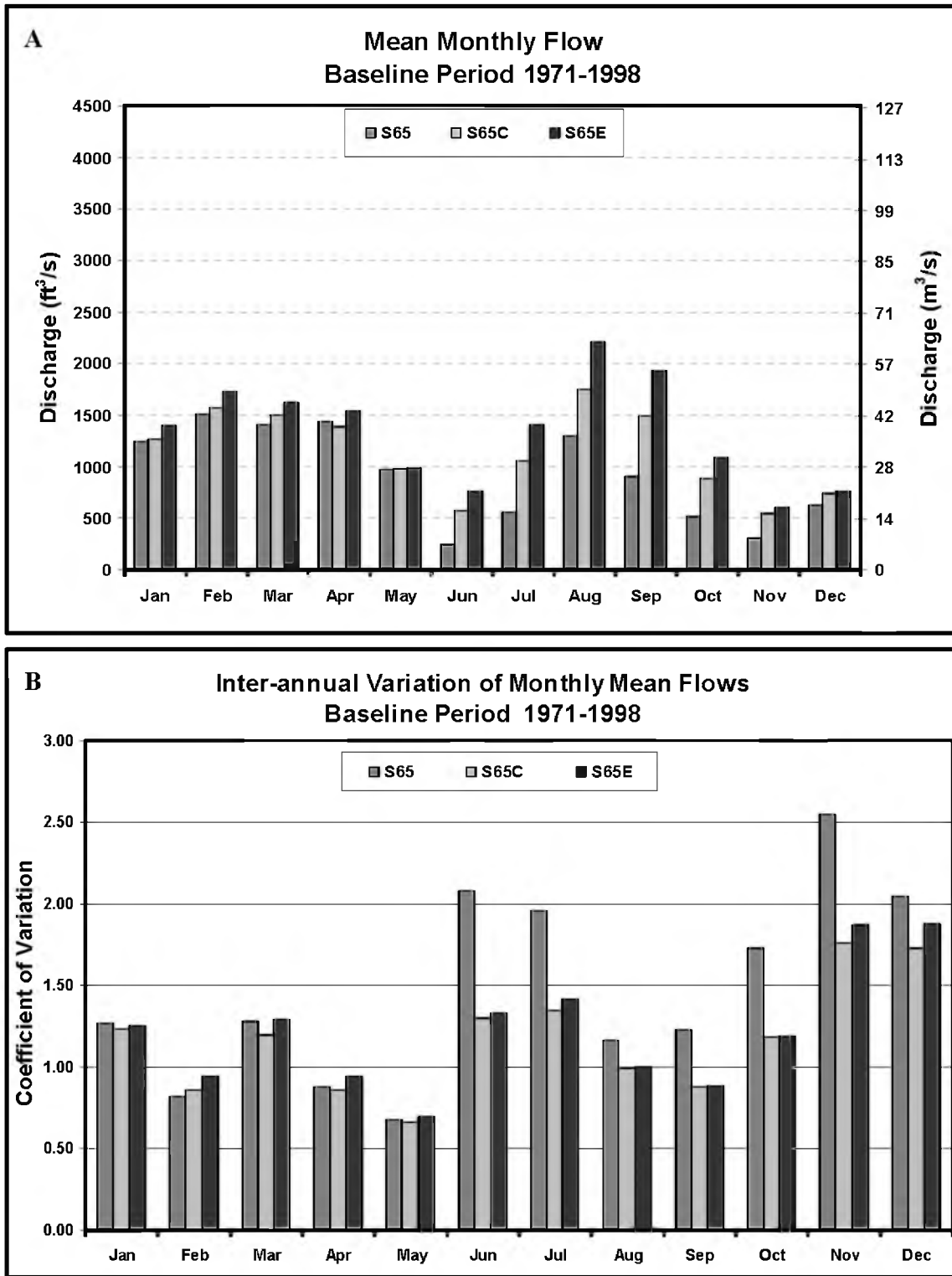


Figure 2-16. A. Mean monthly flow and B. coefficient of variation of mean monthly flow for S-65, S-65C, and S-65E for the baseline period (1971–1998).

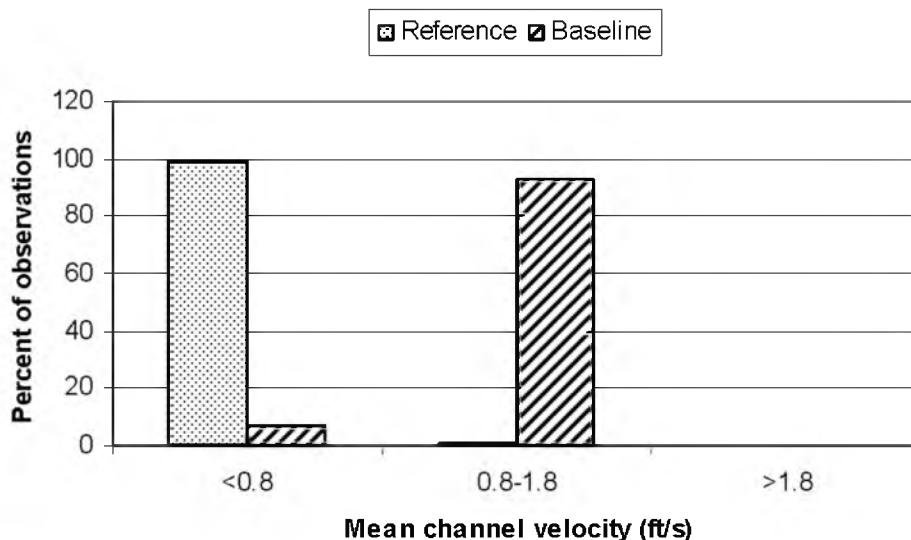


Figure 2-17. Percent of observations of mean channel velocity that were <0.8 ft/s, 0.8–1.8 ft/s, and >1.8 ft/s during the reference and baseline periods.

Table 2-4. Historic stage recession rates at Fort Kissimmee. Recession events exceeding 1 ft/30d are in bold.

Year	Start Date	End Date	Start Stage (ft)	End Stage (ft)	Change in Stage (ft)	Duration (days)	Rate (ft/day)	Rate (ft/30days)	# of Events per Year
1942-43	3-Sep-42	12-May-43	45.7	40.9	4.8	251	0.02	0.58	1
1943-44	11-Oct-43	5-Jun-44	45.2	40.9	4.3	238	0.02	0.55	1
1944-45	26-Oct-44	20-Jun-45	45.5	41.1	4.4	237	0.02	0.55	1
1945-46	18-Sep-45	13-May-46	50.1	43.3	6.8	237	0.03	0.87	1
1946-47	22-Sep-46	12-Feb-47	46.3	43.9	2.4	143	0.02	0.5	1
1947-48	23-Sep-47	1-Jul-48	49.8	43.9	6	282	0.02	0.63	1
1948-49	4-Oct-48	31-May-49	49.7	41.9	7.9	239	0.03	0.99	1
1949-50	1-Oct-49	28-Aug-50	48.1	40.7	7.4	331	0.02	0.67	1
1950-51	31-Oct-50	30-Mar-51	44.4	42.8	1.5	150	0.01	0.31	
	22-Apr-51	27-Jun-51	44.8	41.8	3.1	66	0.05	1.39	2
1951-52	20-Nov-51	30-Jun-52	45.2	43.3	2	223	0.01	0.26	1
1952-53	23-Oct-52	3-Jun-53	47	43.6	3.4	223	0.02	0.46	1
1953-54	No Data	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
1954-55	1-Oct-54	19-Jun-55	45.4	40.6	4.9	261	0.02	0.56	1
1955-56	13-Sep-55	27-May-56	44.1	38.6	5.5	257	0.02	0.64	1
1956-57	17-Oct-56	20-Feb-57	47.3	43.5	3.8	126	0.03	0.9	1
1957-58	5-Oct-57	22-Dec-57	46.5	44.8	1.7	78	0.02	0.66	1
1958-59	28-Jan-58	22-Jan-59	46.4	42.1	4.4	359	0.01	0.36	1

The duration of recession events at Fort Kissimmee (Table 2-4) ranged from 66 to 359 days and averaged 218 days. Stage recession rates ranged from 0.26 to 1.39 ft (8 to 42 cm) per 30 days. Only one of the 17 recession events exceeded 1.0 ft (30 cm) per 30 days. In April 1951, a dry season rainfall event caused stages to rise briefly before receding to a seasonal low in June. This recession event lasted 66 days, with water levels receding at a rate of 1.39 ft (42 cm) per 30 days.

At Fort Basinger, 22 recession events were identified (Table 2-5). These events lasted from 16 days to 355 days and averaged 173 days. Stages recession rates ranged from 0.27 to 1.93 ft (8 to 59 cm) per 30 days. For seven recession events, the recession rates exceeded 1.0 ft (30 cm) per 30 days and were

CHAPTER 2 HYDROLOGY

associated with unusual weather conditions. Three events (April 1944, 1951 and October 1957) resulted from aberrant dry season rainfall, which caused stages to rise briefly before receding to a seasonal low in June. During the recession event of 1948–1949, stage decreased by 8.9 ft (271 cm) and followed two extremely wet years resulting from hurricanes in the Kissimmee basin. In 1955–1956, two of three recession events had short durations (< 20 days) and occurred early in the wet season prior to the normal seasonal stage recession period from September to May. The October 1956 to February 1957 event lasted 121 days and occurred during a severe drought, which was followed by rainfall that caused stages to increase until October 1957.

Table 2-5. Historic stage recession rates at Fort Basinger. Recession events exceeding 1 ft/30d are in bold.

Year	Start Date	End Date	Start Stage (ft)	End Stage (ft)	Change in Stage (ft)	Duration (days)	Rate (ft/day)	Rate (ft/30days)	# of Events per Year
1942-43	3-Oct-42	21-May-43	31.4	26	5.4	230	0.02	0.71	1
1943-44	5-Oct-43	29-Mar-44	32.2	27.4	4.8	176	0.03	0.82	2
	19-Apr-44	6-Jun-44	29.2	26.2	3.1	48	0.06	1.93	
1944-45	5-Nov-44	21-Jun-45	30.7	25.8	4.9	228	0.02	0.64	1
1945-46	22-Sep-45	14-May-46	34.6	28	6.6	234	0.03	0.85	1
1946-47	17-Sep-46	11-Feb-47	31.2	28.8	2.3	147	0.02	0.48	1
1947-48	24-Sep-47	3-Jul-48	34.9	29.2	5.7	283	0.02	0.6	1
1948-49	6-Oct-48	1-Jun-49	35.5	26.6	8.9	238	0.04	1.12	1
1949-50	5-Oct-49	4-Jun-50	33.2	27	6.2	242	0.03	0.77	1
1950-51	26-Oct-50	6-Apr-51	31.6	27.5	4.1	162	0.03	0.76	2
	24-Apr-51	27-Jun-51	30.7	27.8	2.9	64	0.05	1.37	
1951-52	3-Oct-51	25-Mar-52	32.8	29.2	3.6	174	0.02	0.62	1
1952-53	28-Oct-52	4-Jun-53	32.7	29.4	3.3	219	0.02	0.46	1
1953-54	13-Oct-53	25-May-54	36.1	29.5	6.6	224	0.03	0.88	1
1954-55	20-Jun-54	10-Jun-55	32	25.9	6.1	355	0.02	0.52	1
	4-Jul-55	20-Jul-55	29.5	27.4	2.1	16	0.13	—	
1955-56	11-Aug-55	30-Aug-55	29.4	27.4	2	19	0.11	—	3
	19-Sep-55	29-May-56	28.9	24	4.9	253	0.02	0.58	
1956-57	21-Oct-56	19-Feb-57	33.2	28.1	5.2	121	0.04	1.28	1
1957-58	7-Oct-57	22-Dec-57	32.5	29.6	2.9	76	0.04	1.13	2
	3-Feb-58	20-Jun-58	31.6	30.4	1.2	137	0.01	0.27	
1958-59	20-Jul-58	25-Dec-58	30.8	26.8	4	158	0.03	0.76	1

Baseline Conditions. Baseline conditions were derived from daily average headwater stage at S-65C and S-65D from 1971 to 1998. During the baseline period, stages in Pools C and D were a function of operational schedules for water control structures S-65C and S-65D. Stages typically fluctuated within 0.5 ft (15 cm) of control elevations (Figure 2-6). The lack of water level fluctuations produced no stage recession events during the baseline period.

Stage Hydrographs

The intent of the stage hydrograph criterion was to recreate floodplain inundation frequencies that would result in pre-channelization hydroperiods on the floodplain. Pre-channelization stage data were unavailable for floodplain sites. However, river channel stage data were available and the differences in frequency distributions between the reference and baseline periods were described above for Fort Kissimmee (Figure 2-7), Fort Basinger (Figure 2-8), and S-65E (Figure 2-9). These comparisons showed that changes occurred between the reference and baseline periods in the range of stages and number of days that water levels occurred at a given stage. Six metrics were evaluated that could be used to characterize stage hydrographs for a water year (Table 2-1). The first four metrics describe the stages for a water year: (1) maximum stage during a water year, (2) minimum stage during a water year, (3) average stage during a water year, and (4) median stage during a water year. The fifth metric was the change in stage during a water year, which was the difference between the maximum and minimum stage. The sixth metric

CHAPTER 2 HYDROLOGY

considered stage relative to floodplain elevation as an indication of the actual inundation of the floodplain: number of days with stage above the average ground elevation. These were compared to mean floodplain elevation to determine when the floodplain was inundated. This comparison underestimated the actual floodplain inundation because it uses an average rather than a minimum floodplain elevation. All of the metrics were evaluated for the reference and baseline periods using stage data from Fort Kissimmee, Fort Basinger, and S-65E (Table 2-6).

Table 2-6. Characteristics of metrics used to describe the stage hydrograph criterion at Fort Kissimmee, Fort Basinger, and S-65E.

Site	Period	N	Range	Avg (SE)	CV	Median
Maximum stage						
Fort Kissimmee ¹	Reference	20	43.72–50.12	46.87 (0.45)	0.04	46.39
	Baseline	15	41.02–46.76	44.80 (0.46)	0.04	45.27
Fort Basinger ²	Reference	27	30.66–37.34	32.83 (0.31)	0.05	32.39
	Baseline	1	27.28	27.28		27.28
S-65E ³	Reference	32	19.40–19.31	26.00 (0.38)	0.08	26.13
	Baseline	28	21.17–22.23	21.46 (0.05)	0.01	21.36
Average stage						
Fort Kissimmee	Reference	20	41.06–46.90	44.18 (0.36)	0.04	44.35
	Baseline	15	39.39–46.62	41.47 (0.36)	0.02	41.33
Fort Basinger	Reference	27	26.60–32.10	29.67 (0.26)	0.04	29.87
	Baseline	1	26.94	26.94		26.94
S-65E	Reference	32	16.40–26.19	22.30 (0.38)	0.10	22.57
	Baseline	28	20.86–21.19	21.07 (0.01)	0.00	21.08
Median stage						
Fort Kissimmee	Reference	20	41.06–46.95	44.30 (0.33)	0.03	44.25
	Baseline	15	39.87–42.72	41.40 (0.20)	0.02	41.32
Fort Basinger	Reference	27	26.33–32.25	29.85 (0.25)	0.04	30.05
	Baseline	1	26.97	26.97		26.97
S-65E	Reference	32	16.32–26.20	22.40 (0.40)	0.10	22.94
	Baseline	28	20.96–21.16	21.09 (0.01)	0.00	21.09
Change in stage						
Fort Kissimmee	Reference	20	2.59–9.02	4.96 (0.39)	0.35	4.60
	Baseline	15	2.98–8.29	5.89 (0.40)	0.26	6.16
Fort Basinger	Reference	27	2.10–12.74	5.76 (0.45)	0.41	5.52
	Baseline	1	1.25	1.25		1.25
S-65E	Reference	32	2.77–11.22	6.82 (0.38)	0.32	6.76
	Baseline	28	0.18–1.49	0.82 (0.06)	0.41	0.81
Inundation						
Fort Kissimmee	Reference	20	17–366	252 (23.64)	0.42	268
	Baseline	15	0–173	57 (15.07)	1.02	27
Fort Basinger	Reference	27	29–366	270 (17.81)	0.34	299
	Baseline	1	0	0		0
S-65E	Reference	32	0–366	248 (19.64)	0.45	274
	Baseline	28	89–366	288 (13.40)	0.25	298

¹ For Fort Kissimmee, the reference period was WY 1943–1962 and the baseline period was WY 1985–1999.

² For Fort Basinger, the reference period was WY 1933–1959 and the baseline period was WY 1999.

³ For S-65E, the reference period was WY 1931–1962 and the baseline period was WY 1972–1999.

Box plots were used to screen the six metrics as potential indicators of change in stage characteristics, by comparing the pre-channelization reference period for each site with the channelized baseline period (Figure 2-18). The range of values for maximum, minimum, mean, and median stage was strongly influenced by location of the monitoring site because of changes in ground elevation along the river (i.e., ground elevation decreases downstream). For Fort Kissimmee, there was no clear difference between the reference and baseline period the maximum stage because of overlapping interquartile ranges (25th–75th percentiles) represented by the boxes. For minimum, maximum, and median stages, the interquartile ranges did not overlap between the reference and baseline periods at Fort Kissimmee. Box plots were not constructed for Fort Basinger during the baseline period because the single water year of data was insufficient to assess the variability among water years. Pre-channelization reference and channelized baseline values at S-65E were similar.

Change in stage during a water year and inundation (number of days that river channel stage exceeded average ground elevation) appeared independent of ground elevation effects because the interquartile ranges (boxes) of the reference periods broadly overlapped regardless of the location along the river channel. The 25th percentile for change in stage was at least 3.75 feet at all three sites for the reference period (Figure 2-18), suggesting that a reasonable expectation would be a fluctuation in stage of at least 3.75 feet in most years. For inundation, the 25th percentile was at least 180 d so a reasonable expectation might be for river channel stage to exceed the average ground elevation by at least 180 d in most years. Before channelization began in 1962, the water years that the inundation metric had values less than 180 d were usually associated with drought periods (1955–1957, 1961–1963, Abtew et al. 2004) at Fort Kissimmee (Figure 2-19), Fort Basinger (Figure 2-20) and S-65E (Figure 2-21).

Baseline for Phase I

For the expanded hydrologic monitoring network for Phase I, the baseline period began on August 26, 1996, with activation of the first of the new sites (PC21), and continued through January 12, 1999. Most sites were established in late summer–early fall of 1998, which allowed less than a full year of data to be collected before Phase I backfilling began. The climatic conditions during this period were unremarkable, except for an El Niño event that lasted from November 1, 1997 through March 31, 1998. Rainfall for the upper Kissimmee Basin was 16.53 inches above average for this period and 21.38 inches above average for the lower basin (Huebner 2000). This El Niño event occurred during WY1998, and the annual rainfall for that year was 36.59 inches in the upper basin and 38.81 for the lower basin (Figure 2-4A). Both upper and lower basin values were below the long term average for both the baseline and reference periods. No hurricanes or tropical storms passed over the basin during this time period (Appendix 2-3A and 2-4A).

The movement of water through the Pool C reach of the C-38 canal was regulated by the S-65B structure at the upstream end of the pool, and by S-65C at the outflow. These structures were operated to maintain the stage in Pool C at 34 ft. For most of the baseline period, stages in the C-38 canal fluctuated within a 0.5 foot range. The tailwater stage at S-65B indicated the stage at the upstream end of the C-38 canal in Pool C and varied between 33.8 and 34.4 ft for most of the period (Figure 2-22). The S-65C headwater stage indicated that the stage at the downstream end of Pool C varied between 33.4 ft and 34 ft. These differences reflect the relatively flat water surface. Using 8.5 miles as the length of Pool C (Abtew 1992), the slope of the water surface in Pool C during the Phase I baseline period was frequently 5×10^{-6} and never exceeded 2.3×10^{-5} . These values are much lower than the range of slopes for the natural channel bed of 5.7×10^{-5} to 9×10^{-5} reported by Warne et al. (2000).

In remnant river channels, stages also approximated 34 ft (Figure 2-22) because these channels were directly connected to the C-38 canal. On the floodplain, position from upstream to downstream along Pool C had relatively little influence on stage. However, stage varied with location across the width of the floodplain because of changes in ground elevation. Sites located closer to the edge of the floodplain, such as PC51 and PC55, tended to have higher and more variable stages. This probably was the result of rainfall, especially the heavy rainfall associated with the November 1997–March 1998 El Niño event. Because of the relatively flat water surface in Pool C, sites located on the floodplain in the northern half of the pool had stages that tended to be below ground level (Figure 2-23). The number of days that water exceeded ground level tended to increase downstream until PC12, which was inundated throughout the baseline period.

CHAPTER 2 HYDROLOGY

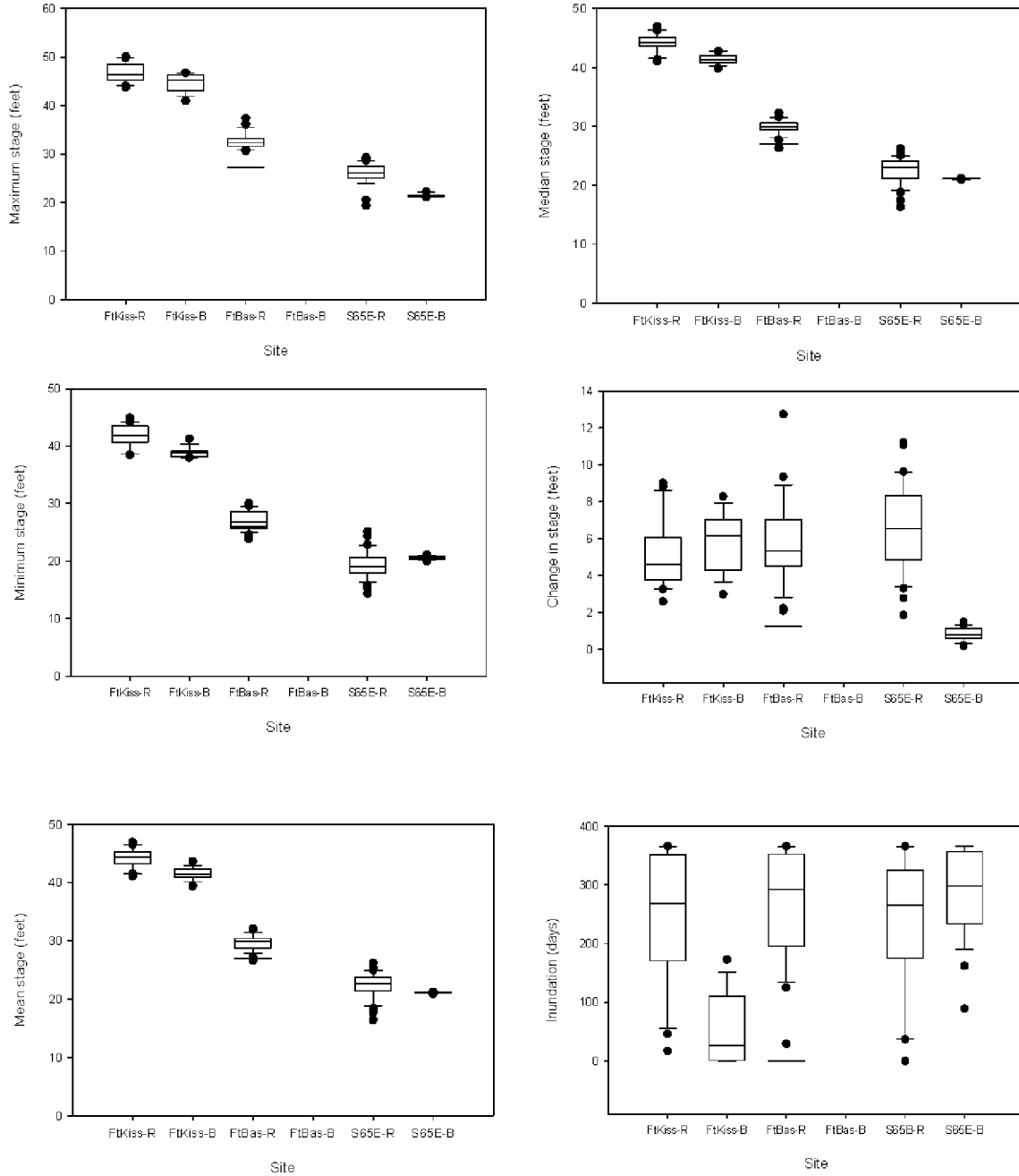


Figure 2-18. Box plots for six metrics describing stage by years for different sites. Sites were Fort Kissimmee during the reference period (FtKiss-R) and baseline (FtKiss-B) periods, Fort Basinger during reference (FtBas-R) and baseline (FtBas-B) periods, and S-65E during reference (S65E-R) and baseline (S65E-B) periods. A box plot was not constructed for Fort Basinger during the baseline period because the single water year of data during the baseline period was not sufficient. In the box plots, the horizontal line is the median, the ends of the box represent the 25th and 75th percentiles and the error bars represent the 10th and 90th percentiles. Filled circles are values <10th or >90th percentile.

Mean daily discharges at S-65, PC33, S-65C, and S-65E were parallel during the baseline period for Phase I (Figure 2-24). Discharge at PC33 was much lower than the other sites because PC33 measures discharge only through the remnant river channel, while the canal sites measure all of the water except for

small volumes passing through auxiliary structures in the tieback levee. The similarity of flow among the canal sites indicated the importance of the outflow from Lake Kissimmee at S-65 in determining discharge through the system. While PC33 was located in a remnant channel, discharges as high as 800 cfs were measured at that site during the baseline period. Most of these high values occurred during the El Niño period (November 1997–March 1998) when the lower basin in particular was receiving greatly elevated rainfall. These flows may have been heavily influenced by floodplain runoff or inflows from Oak Creek, a tributary to Micco Bluff Run just upstream of PC33.

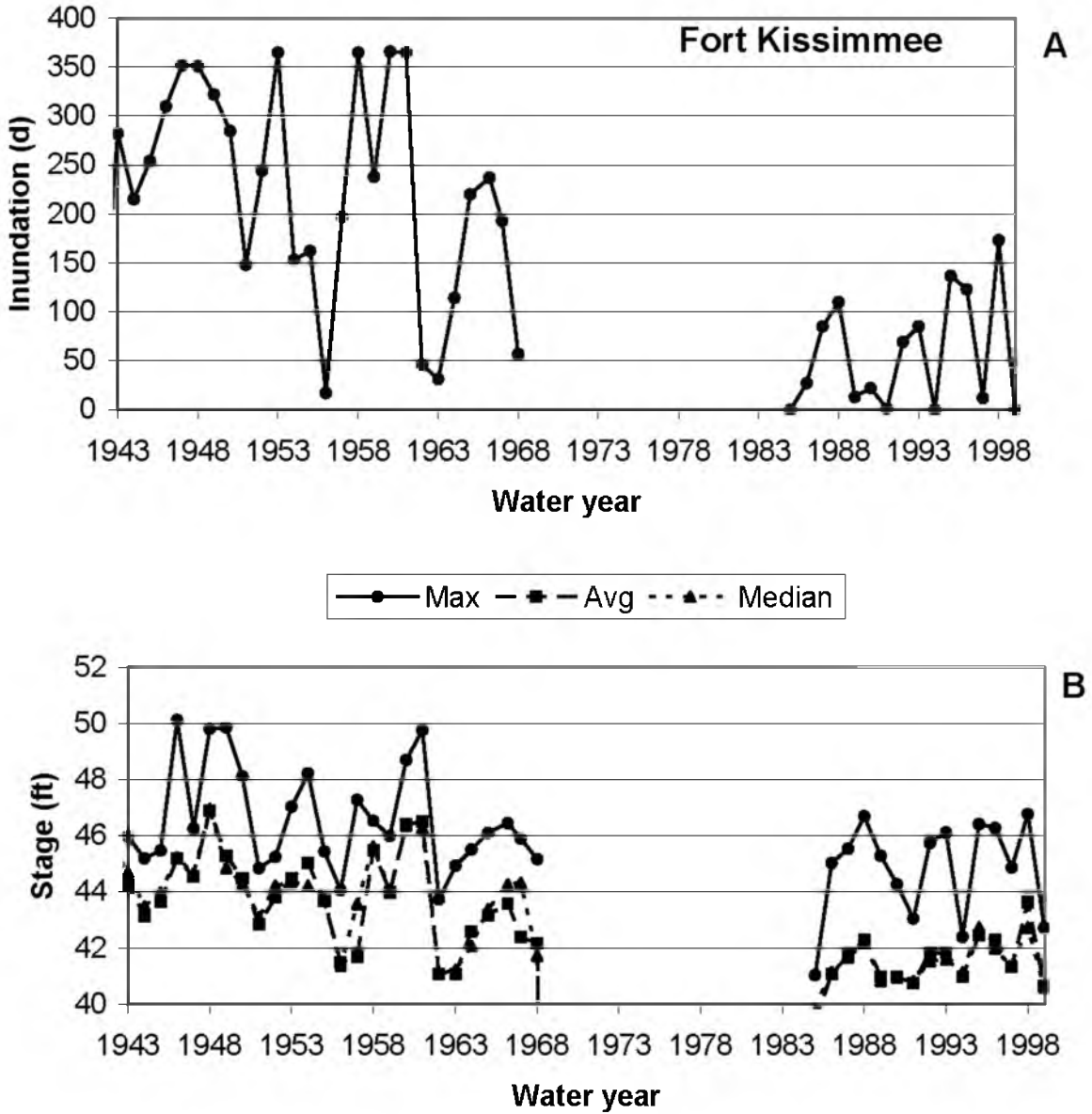


Figure 2-19. A. Number of days that the floodplain was inundated by stages exceeding the mean floodplain elevation of 43 feet (Obeysekera and Loftin 1990) and B. the maximum, average, and median stage for a water year at Fort Kissimmee.

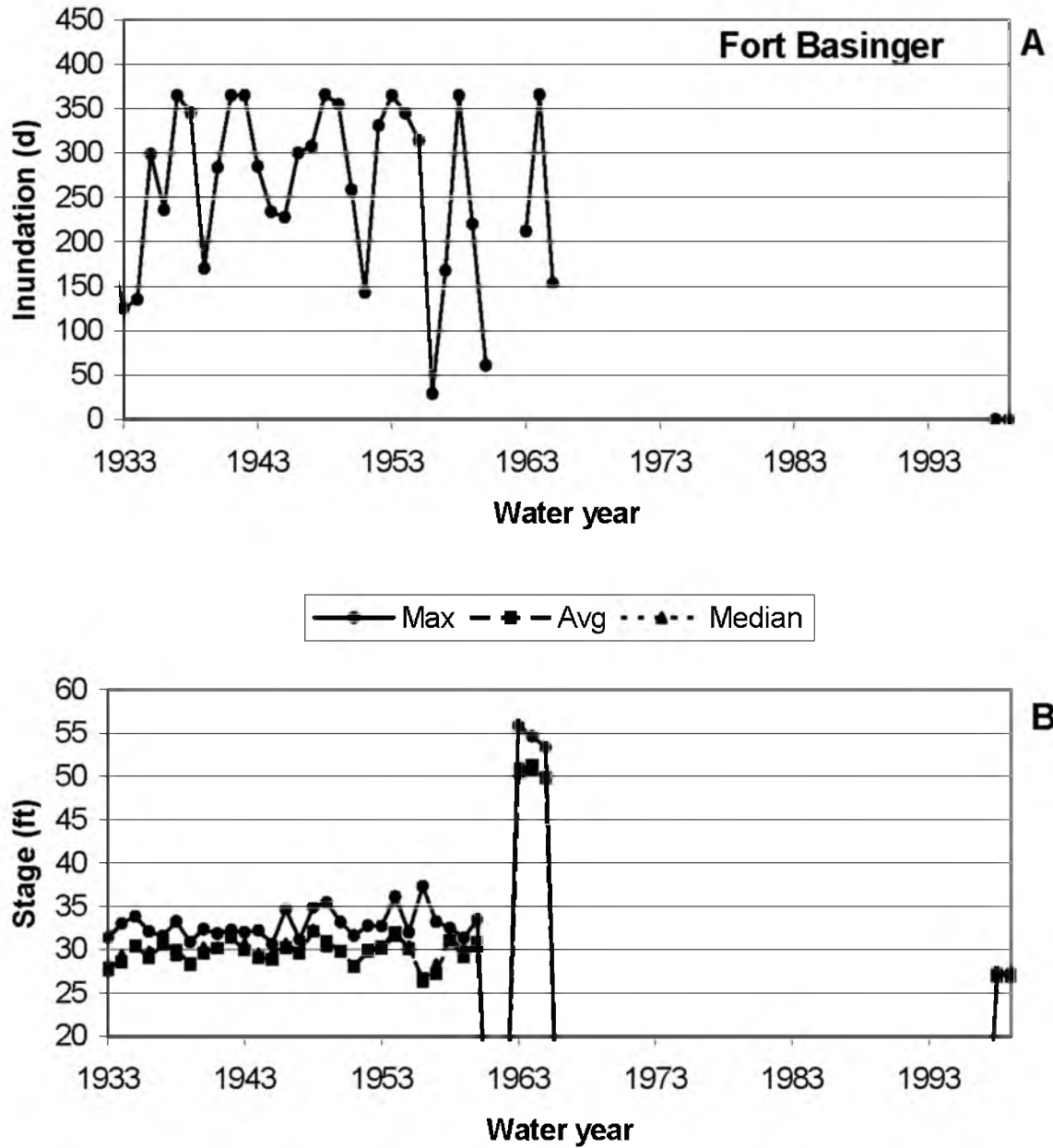


Figure 2-20. A. Number of days that the floodplain was inundated by stages exceeding the mean floodplain elevation of 28.5 feet (Obeysekera and Loftin 1990) and B. the maximum, average, and median stage for a water year at Fort Basinger.

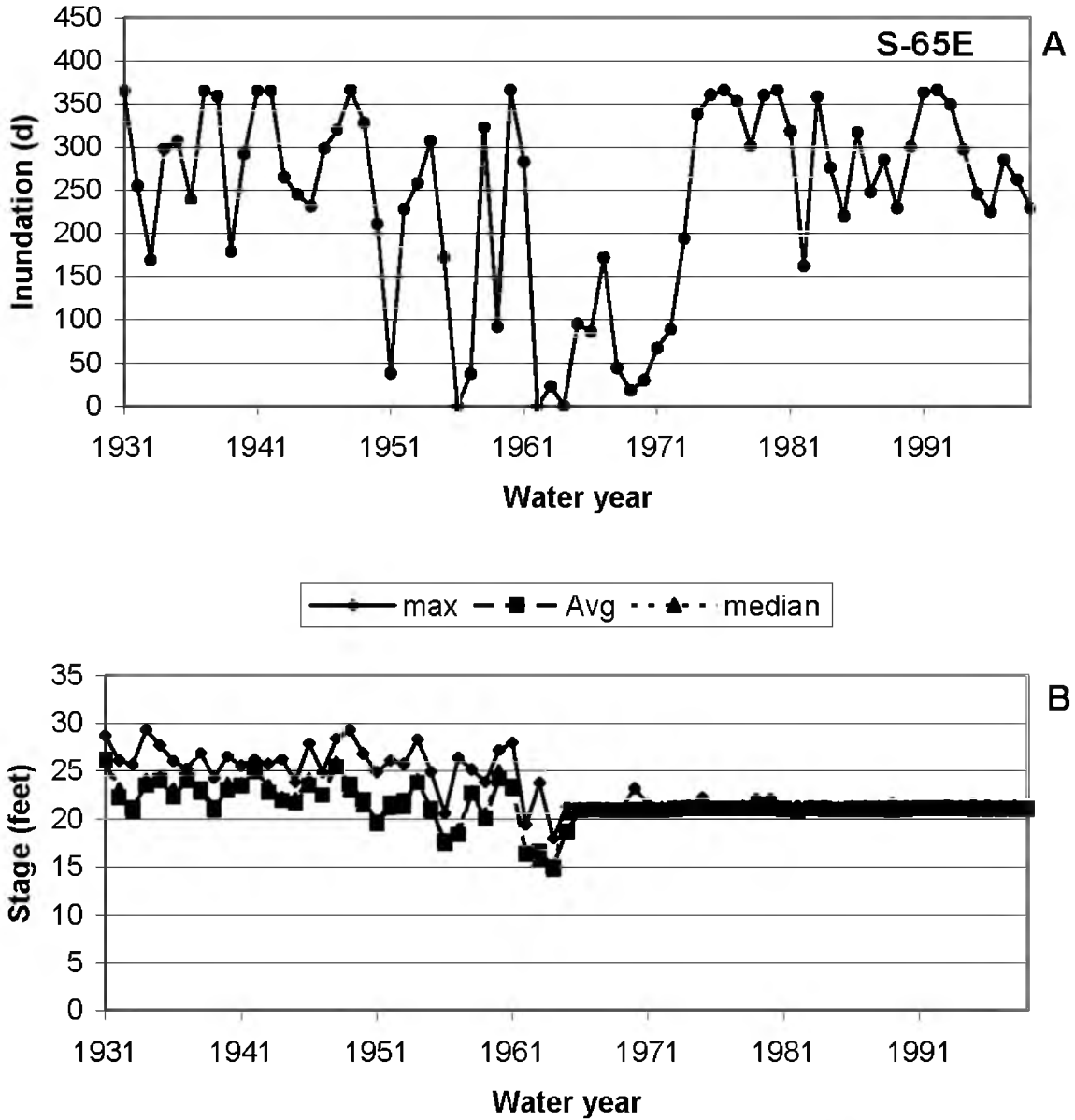


Figure 2-21. A. Number of days that the floodplain was inundated by stages exceeding the mean floodplain elevation of 21 feet (Obeysekera and Loftin 1990) and B. the maximum, average, and median stage for a water year at S-65E.

CHAPTER 2 HYDROLOGY

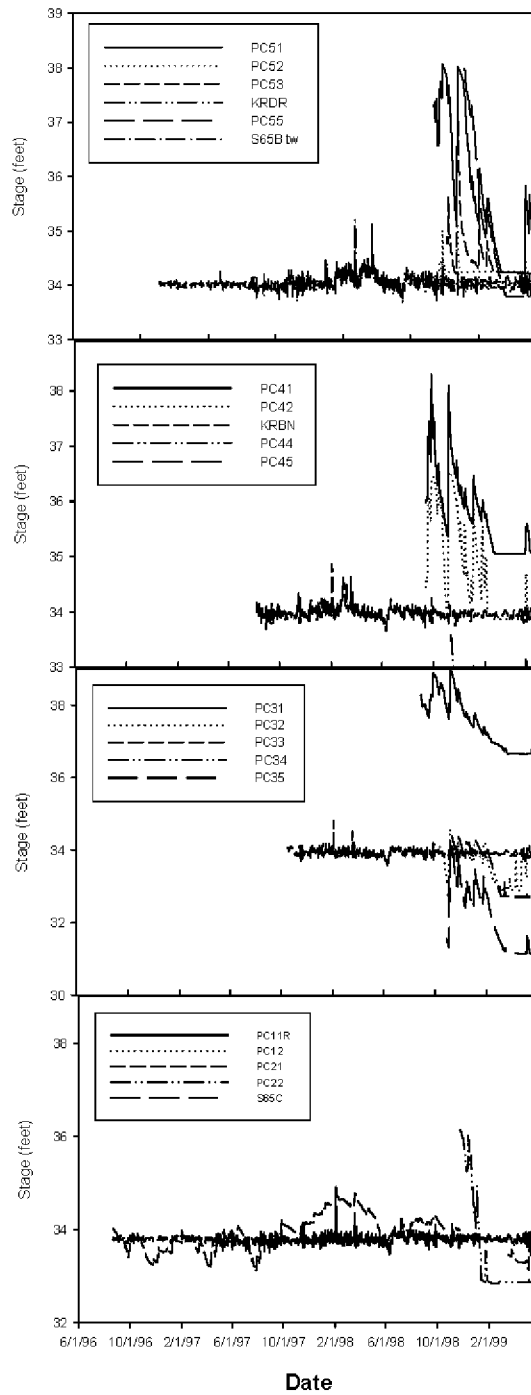


Figure 2-22. Mean daily stage data from the Phase I baseline monitoring network. Data presentation was truncated at the end of the baseline period on May 31, 1999. All stations were located on the floodplain except PC11R, PC33, KRBN, and KRDR, which were located in remnant river channels, and the tailwater of S-65B and the headwater of S-65C, which were located in the C-38 canal.

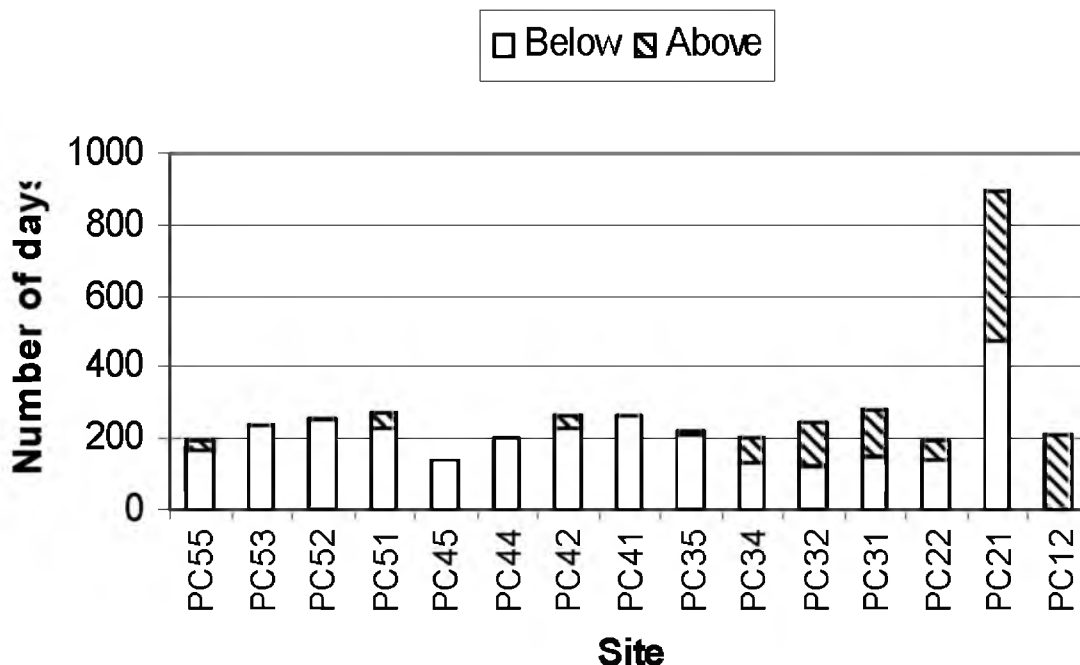


Figure 2-23. Number of days that stage was above or below ground level for each floodplain site during the baseline period (August 22, 1996–May 31, 1999).

DISCUSSION

Long-term changes

Long Term Data Issues

The ability to make inferences about changes in a long-term data series depend on the availability of data, continuity of the time series, compatibility of the data over time, and representation of the periods of time of interest. These issues are discussed in order below.

Availability. Retrospective analyses are constrained by the existence of data collected in the past, usually for some other purpose. Hydrologic monitoring stations along the Kissimmee River were established originally by the U. S. Geological Survey and later assumed by the South Florida Water Management District. None of the pre-channelization stations occur within the area of Phase I of the restoration project and only the Fort Basinger site occurs within the restoration project domain. However, the similarities between the upstream S-65 and downstream S-656E sites should bracket the flows into and out of the project area. All the available data came from river channel sites and not from the floodplain, making it difficult to characterize floodplain hydroperiods. Fairly long data sets are available for the pre-channelization period at each site.

Compatibility. The data used for the long-term comparisons should be appropriate for this type of analysis. Both the U. S. Geological Survey and the South Florida Water Management District followed similar protocols for collecting stage and flow data. Both agencies use the same standard for calibrating stage monitoring equipment to within 0.02 feet (Rantz and others 1982). Changes observed in this study were much greater than the error that might be associated with calibration. Instrumentation has been upgraded as new technology has become available. For stage measurement, these changes have mainly involved instrumentation for recording and transmitting data and not the actual stage measurement. Another compatibility issue involves stations that were discontinued and then reactivated, such as Fort Kissimmee and Fort Basinger. When Fort Kissimmee was reactivated, it was on the same site. The Fort Basinger site was discontinued after the river channel at its location was destroyed by construction of the C-38 canal. When the site was reactivated, it was located in a nearby remnant channel within 1000 ft of the original location.

CHAPTER 2 HYDROLOGY

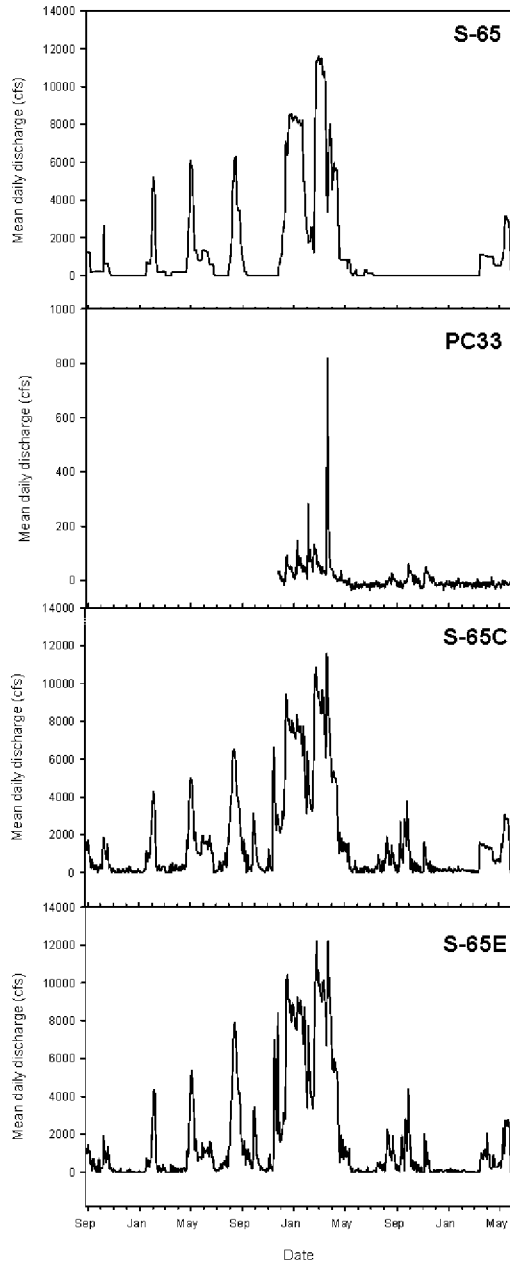


Figure 2-24. Mean daily discharge during the baseline period (August 26, 1996–May 31, 1999) at S-65, PC33, S-65C, and S-65E. Discharge measurements at S-65, S-65C, and S-65E were made at the structure on the C-38 canal and represent the water moving through the system. PC33 was located in a remnant river channel, and discharge measurements at this site are only for the remnant river channel and did not include the floodplain or the C-38 canal. The x-axis begins with September 1996 and continues through May 1999.

Continuity. Issues involving continuity include missing data because of equipment problems or discontinued stations. Fairly complete records of stage and discharge were available for S-65 and S-656E. Fort Kissimmee and Fort Basinger both had long gaps because the stations were discontinued. Fort Kissimmee was reactivated only after a fluctuating stage regulation schedule was implemented for Pool B; the baseline period at this station was atypical of the baseline period from 1972–1985 at this site and any other site. Fort Basinger was reactivated only just before the beginning of Phase I of construction, so the baseline period consisted of only one water year.

Representation. The ability to characterize hydrologic conditions during the pre-channelization reference and channelized baseline periods depends on having a time series of data that is representative of those time periods. The period of record should be long enough to capture natural variability. Fairly long periods of record were available for S-65 and S-65E and for the pre-channelization reference period for Fort Kissimmee and Fort Basinger. However, if monitoring had begun one year earlier at S-65E or six years earlier at S-65, a flow event of magnitude that has never been measured at S-65 and only once at S-65E (in the late 1960s) would have been captured. This event involved two tropical storms that passed over the basin during August 7–14, 1928 and dumped 16.21 inches of rainfall in the St. Cloud area. This intense rainfall produced a stage of 29 feet and an estimated peak flow of 20,000 cfs at the Highway 70 bridge across the Kissimmee River, just upstream of the present location of S-65E (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1969).

Confounding Factors

The hydrologic conceptual model identified climate as an important driver that could change over time and be confounded with channelization. Mean annual rainfall to both the upper and lower Kissimmee Basins decreased by approximately 10% between the reference and baseline periods (Obeysekera and Loftin 1990). Consequently, severe droughts in the Kissimmee Basin appear to have occurred less frequently during the reference period than the baseline period. Abteu et al. (2004) identified three severe drought events (1932, 1955–1957, 1961–1963) during the reference period and seven severe events (1971–1972, 1973–1974, 1980–1982, 1985, 1988–1989, 1990) during the baseline period. Other climatic changes involve El Niño and La Niña events that can affect the seasonality of rainfall over the Kissimmee Basin (Huebner 2000, Schmidt et al. 2001).

Another potential confounding factor involves changes in land use in the watershed, which can alter rainfall–runoff relationships. Following channelization, a large portion of the lower basin was converted from unimproved pastures to improved pastures with a roughly three-fold increase in drainage density network (Obeysekera and Loftin 1990). Additionally, the human population of the counties that contribute to the basin has continued to grow. This increase in population size is likely to be accompanied by changes in land use, which could ultimately affect hydrologic characteristics. These relationships between land use changes and hydrology have not been quantified.

Changes in operation of the water control structures may also be a confounding factor. The regulation schedules for operating the water control structures have changed several times during the baseline period (Appendix 2-1A). There were also short-term deviations to regulation schedules for some of the upper basin lakes to allow drawdowns for various lake management activities. Probably the most critical change to operating rules, already discussed, involved the implementation of a fluctuating stage regulation schedule for Pool B. Knowledge of this change was critical for interpreting stage data at Fort Kissimmee during the baseline period.

Impacts of channelization

This study identified several changes in hydrology that resulted from channelization and flow regulation. These changes include a narrowed range of stage fluctuation; more erratic discharge patterns, especially increasing the number of days with no flow; and shifts in the seasonality of flow. Channelization and excavation of the C-38 canal caused flow to be carried by the canal instead of by the natural river channel. Other studies determined that the lack of flow in remnant channels caused a proliferation of aquatic plants in the remnant channels (Bousquin 2005) and contributed to an accumulation of organic deposits in the river channel (Anderson et al. 2005). Loss of flow also reduced rates of reaeration, resulting in near constant hypoxic conditions (Colangelo and Jones 2005). These changes in flow greatly altered habitat characteristics and affected community structure for many plants (Bousquin 2005), invertebrates (Koebel et al. 2005), and fish (Glenn 2005). Floodplain inundation patterns were

altered, and the effects vary along the length of a pool. At the downstream end of a pool, the floodplain is inundated nearly continuously, while at the upstream end, the floodplain is almost permanently dry. The effect of permanent inundation at the downstream end of the pool on wetland plant and animal communities is not well understood.

Developing Hydrologic Restoration Expectations

Evaluation of the hydrologic criteria

An early section of this chapter described the development of the five hydrologic criteria for the Kissimmee River Restoration Project (Loftin et al. 1990b, U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991). These are treated as six criteria in this section by separating the seasonal variability component from the continuous flow criterion. Metrics were evaluated for each criterion except stage-discharge relationships. This criterion was the only one that could not be related to one of the characteristics of the natural flow regime. While the criterion is described as stage-discharge relationship, the emphasis is on having bankfull discharge in the range of 1400–2000 cfs. These values are based on changes in the shape of a plot of mean channel velocity against discharge (Figure 7.7 in Huber et al. 1976) at different locations along the river (Warne et al. 2000). The lower end of the range (1400 cfs) applies to the upper reaches of the Kissimmee River and the upper end (2000 cfs) applies to the S-65E location. For the remaining five criteria, at least one metric was identified that showed a difference between the reference and baseline periods, suggesting that it was affected by channelization and may respond to restoration.

Developing Restoration Expectations

Five expectations are proposed for evaluating the restoration of hydrology:

- (1) The number of days that discharge equals 0 cfs in a water year will be zero for restored channels of the Kissimmee River (Anderson and Chamberlain 2005a).
- (2) Intra-annual monthly mean flows will reflect historic seasonal patterns and have inter-annual variability (coefficient of variation) <1.0 (Chamberlain and Anderson 2005).
- (3) River channel stage will exceed the average ground elevation for 180 d per water year and stages will fluctuate by 3.75 feet (Anderson and Chamberlain 2005b).
- (4) An annual prolonged recession event will be reestablished with an average duration \geq 173 days and with peak stages in the wet season receding to a low stage in the dry season at a rate not to exceed 1.0 ft (30 cm) per 30 days (Chamberlain 2005a).
- (5) Mean velocities within the main river channel will range from 0.8 to 1.8 ft/s (0.2 to 0.6 m/s) for a minimum of 85% of the year (Chamberlain 2005b).

One of the requirements for developing restoration expectations is to identify external constraints, which may necessitate adjusting the expected values. Most of the hydrologic expectations have the potential to be affected by regulation schedules and operational rules. Climatic patterns are another constraint. An extreme shift in rainfall conditions such as a severe drought may make it difficult to achieve expected hydrologic conditions.

Another requirement for developing expectations is to specify a mechanism that links the restoration project to the anticipated changes. Each hydrologic expectation will be achieved through similar mechanisms. The steps in the mechanism involve backfilling the C-38 canal, carving new channels to reconnect the remnant river channels, removing the S-65B and S-65C water control structures, and implementing the Kissimmee River Headwaters Revitalization stage regulation schedule for S-65.

A final requirement for developing an expectation is to specify a trajectory for achieving the expectation.

Hydrology should respond almost instantly to the restoration project, and most expectations should start to show responses after backfilling of the canal and reconnection of the river channels. Seeing the full measure of the expected response may not be possible until the headwaters stage regulation schedule is implemented.

Restoration of Hydrology

When the construction phases of the restoration project are completed, the Kissimmee River will still be a managed system. Reestablishing pre-channelization hydrology to the river will be constrained by limitations of the physical system (canals and water control structures) and the rules for operating these structures. Modeling completed for the feasibility report (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991, 1996) resulted in a regulation schedule for S-65 called the headwaters revitalization schedule that should result in a more natural seasonal distribution of flows, with less frequent periods of no flow, and stage frequencies that are more comparable to the pre-channelization river (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1996). Also, climatic factors can constrain the restoration of hydrology. Changing patterns in rainfall may make it more difficult to achieve expectations based on the pre-channelization condition. It may be useful or even necessary to link some hydrologic expectations to climatic conditions. Future studies should include examining rainfall – discharge relationships.

The restoration of ecological integrity in the Kissimmee River is tied to reestablishing pre-channelization hydrology. However, pre-channelization hydrology was variable and there is not *one hydrology* that can be recreated. Different attributes of the river-floodplain ecosystem depend on flow events of varying magnitude, durations, and frequencies (Whiting 2002). Continuous flow may be required to maintain dissolved oxygen concentrations, but the higher discharges required for channel maintenance may be needed less often than once a year. Flows of different magnitude and frequency are necessary to maintain integrity on the floodplain.

Restoration of hydrology may be much more complicated for the Kissimmee River than for some other river restoration projects. For example, a number of recent restoration projects have involved the removal of a dam so that flow regulation is no longer an issue. An extreme case is the destruction of dams in the Euphrates and Tigris Rivers to restore flow to the river delta wetlands. Restoration of hydrology in the Kissimmee River will have a strong management component that will require adaptive thinking.

CHAPTER 2 HYDROLOGY

LITERATURE CITED

- Abtew, W. 1992. An atlas of the lower Kissimmee River and Lake Istokpoga surface water management basins. Technical Memorandum. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Abtew, W., R. S. Huebner, and S. Sunderland. 2004. Part I: Hydrologic analysis of the 2000-2001 drought in south Florida. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Anderson, D. H., and J. R. Chamberlain. 2005a. Continuous river channel flow. *In* D. H. Anderson, S. G. Bousquin, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Defining success: expectations for restoration of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Expectation 1. Technical Publication ERA #433.
- Anderson, D. H., and J. R. Chamberlain. 2005b. Stage Hydrograph Characteristics. *In* D. H. Anderson, S. G. Bousquin, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Defining success: expectations for restoration of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Expectation 3. Technical Publication ERA #433.
- Anderson, D. H., D. Frei, and W. P. Davis. 2005. River channel geomorphology of the channelized Kissimmee River, Florida. Chapter 3 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. A. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Ansar, M., and A. Alexis. 2003. Atlas of flow computations at District hydraulic structures. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Arthur D. Little, Inc. 1973. Report on channel modifications. Volume I and II. Submitted to the Council on Environmental Quality. U. S. Government printing Office, Washington, D. C., USA.
- Benke, A. C. 1990. A perspective on America's vanishing streams. *Journal of the North American Benthological Society* 9:77-88.
- Bousquin, S. G. 2005. Littoral vegetation in the channelized Kissimmee River. Chapter 7 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. A. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Brookes, A. 1988. Channelized rivers perspectives for environmental management. John Wiley and Sons, New York, New York, USA.
- Brussock, P. P., A. V. Brown, and J. C. Dixon. 1985. Channel form and stream ecosystem models. *Water Resources Bulletin* 21:859-866.
- Casselberry, H. 1984. South Florida steamboat era. Pages 27-29 *in* E. A. Mueller, and B. A. Purdy, editors. The steamboat era in Florida. University of Florida Press, Gainesville, Florida, USA.
- Chamberlain, J. R. 2005a. Stage recession rates. *In* D. H. Anderson, S. G. Bousquin, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Defining success: expectations for restoration of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Expectation 4. Technical Publication ERA #433.
- Chamberlain, J. R. 2005b. River channel velocities. *In* D. H. Anderson, S. G. Bousquin, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Defining success: expectations for restoration of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Expectation 5. Technical Publication ERA #433.
- Chamberlain, J. R., and D. H. Anderson. 2005. Seasonality of flow. *In* D. H. Anderson, S. G. Bousquin, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Defining success: expectations for restoration of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Expectation 2. Technical Publication ERA #433.

CHAPTER 2 HYDROLOGY

- Colangelo, D. J., and B. L. Jones. 2005. Dissolved oxygen in the channelized Kissimmee River and seven reference streams. Chapter 4 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. A. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Dahm, C. N., K. W. Cummins, H. M. Valett, and R. L. Coleman. 1995. An ecosystem view of the restoration of the Kissimmee River. *Restoration Ecology* 3:225-238.
- Dierberg, F. E., and V. P. Williams. 1989. Lake management techniques in Florida, USA: costs and water quality effects. *Environmental Management* 13:729-742.
- Division of Water Survey and Research. 1952. Surface Waters of Florida Basin Area 10 Lake Okeechobee Tributaries. Water Survey and Research Paper Number 7. Division of Water Survey and Research, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- Dynesius, M. and C. Nilsson. 1994. Fragmentation and flow regulation of river systems in the northern third of the world. *Science* 266:753-762.
- Frissell, C. A., W. J. Lis, C. E. Warren, and M. D. Hurley. 1986. A hierarchical framework for stream habitat classification: viewing streams in a watershed context. *Environmental Management* 10:199-214.
- Glenn, J. L. 2005. Status of fish assemblages of the Kissimmee River prior to restoration. Chapter 13 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Guardo, M. 1992. An atlas of the upper Kissimmee surface water management basins. Technical Memorandum. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Harper, R. M. 1927. Natural resources of southern Florida. Eighteenth annual report. Florida Geological Survey, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- Harris, S. C., T. H. Martin, and K. W. Cummins. 1995. A model for aquatic invertebrate response to Kissimmee River restoration. *Restoration Ecology* 3:181-194.
- Huebner, R. S. 2000. Hydrologic impacts of the 1997-98 El Niño and La Niña on Central and Southern Florida. Technical Publication EMA No. 384. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Huber, W. C., J. P. Heaney, P. B. Bedient, and J. P. Bowden. 1976. Final Report Environmental Resources Management Studies of the Kissimmee River Basin. Report ENV-05-76-2. Prepared for the Central and Southern Flood Control District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- John, F. A., and R. A. Turnbull. 1990. Restoration of waterfowl habitat in the Kissimmee River valley. Pages 57-65 *in* M. K. Loftin, L. A. Toth, and J. T. B. Obeysekera, editors. Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Karr, J. R. 1991. Biological integrity: a long-neglected aspect of water resources management. *Ecological Applications* 1:66-84.
- Koebel, J. W., D. H. Anderson, and L. M. Rojas. 2005. Aquatic invertebrate community structure and functional characteristics in the Kissimmee River Floodplain ecosystem: baseline and reference conditions and expectations for restoration. Chapter 11 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Loftin, M. K., L. A. Toth, and J. T. B. Obeysekera. 1990a. Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.

CHAPTER 2 HYDROLOGY

- Loftin, M. K., L. A. Toth, and J. T. B. Obeysekera. 1990b. Kissimmee River Restoration Alternative Plan Evaluation and Preliminary Design Report. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Miller, S. J. 1990. Kissimmee River fisheries: a historical perspective. Pages 31-42 *in* M. K. Loftin, L. A. Toth, and J. T. B. Obeysekera, editors. Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Miller, S. J., J. Wood, and L. Perrin 1990. Vegetation community responses to restoration. Pages 97-110 *in* M. K. Loftin, L. A. Toth, and J. T. B. Obeysekera, editors. Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Montgomery, D. R. 1999. Process domains and the river continuum. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* 35:397-410.
- Neumann, C. J., B. R. Jarvinen, C. J. McAdie, and G. R. Hammer. 1999. Tropical cyclones of the north Atlantic, 1871-1998. National Climatology Series 6-2. National Climatic Data Center, Asheville, North Carolina, USA.
- Obeysekera, J., and K. Loftin. 1990. Hydrology of the Kissimmee River Basin - influence of man-made and natural changes. Pages 211-222 *in* M. K. Loftin, L. A. Toth, and J. T. B. Obeysekera, editors. Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Otero, J. M. 1995. Computation of flow through water control structures. Technical Publication 95-03. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Parker, G. G., G. E. Ferguson, and S. K. Love. 1955. Water resources of southeastern Florida. U. S. Geological Survey Water Supply Paper 1255. U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., USA.
- Petts, G. E. 1984. Impounded rivers perspectives for ecological management. John Wiley and Sons, New York, New York, USA.
- Phelps, G. G. 2002. Source water identification and chemical typing for nitrogen at the Kissimmee River, Pool C, Florida - Preliminary Assessment. Open File Report 02-48. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Poff, N. L., J. D. Allan, M. B. Bain, J. R. Karr, K. L. Prestegard, B. D. Richter, R. E. Sparks, and J. C. Stromberg. 1997. The natural flow regime. *Bioscience* 47:769-784.
- Rantz, S. E., and others. 1982. Measurement and computation of streamflow: Volume 1. Measurement of stage and discharge. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2175. U. S. Geological Survey, United States Government printing Office, Washington D. C., USA.
- Schmidt, N., E. K. Lipp, J. B. Rose, and M. E. Luther. 2001. ENSO influences on seasonal rainfall and river discharge in Florida. *Journal of Climate* 14:615-628.
- Shen, H. W. 1996. Engineering studies based ecological criteria. Pages 177-185 *in* P. C. Schulze, editor. Engineering within ecological constraints. National Academy Press, Washington, D. C., USA.
- Shen, H. W., G. Tabios, and J. A. Harder. 1994. Kissimmee River restoration study. *Journal of Water Resources Planning and Management* 120:330-349.
- Tharme, R. E. 2003. A global perspective on environmental flow assessment: emerging trends in the development and application of environmental flow methodologies for rivers. *River Research and Applications* 19:397-441.
- Toland, B. R. 1990. Effects of Kissimmee River Pool B Restoration Demonstration Project on Ciconiiformes and Anseriformes. Pages 83-91 *in* M. K. Loftin, L. A. Toth, and J. T. B. Obeysekera, editors. Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.

CHAPTER 2 HYDROLOGY

- Toth, L. A. 1990a. Impacts of channelization on the Kissimmee River ecosystem. Pages 47-56 *in* M. K. Loftin, L. A. Toth, and J. T. B. Obeysekera, editors. Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Toth, L. A. 1990b. An ecosystem approach to Kissimmee River restoration. Pages 125-133 *in* M. K. Loftin, L. A. Toth, and J. T. B. Obeysekera, editors. Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Toth, L. A. 1991. Environmental responses to the Kissimmee River demonstration project. Technical Publication No. 91-02. South Florida Water Management District. West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Toth, L. A. 1995. Principles and guidelines for restoration of river/floodplain ecosystems - Kissimmee River, Florida. Pages 49-73 *in* J. Cairns, editor. Rehabilitating damaged ecosystems. Second edition. Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, Florida, USA.
- Toth, L. A., D. A. Arrington, M. A. Brady, and D. A. Muszick. 1995. Conceptual evaluation of factors potentially affecting restoration of habitat structure within the channelized Kissimmee River ecosystem. *Restoration Ecology* 3:160-180.
- Trexler, J. C. 1995. Restoration of the Kissimmee River: a conceptual model of past and present fish communities and its consequences for evaluating restoration success. *Restoration Ecology* 3:195-210.
- Trush, W. J., S. M. McBain, and L. B. Leopold. 2000. Attributes of an alluvial river and their relation to water policy and management. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Science* 97:11858-11863.
- U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. 1969. Central and Southern Florida flood project for flood control and other purposes. Part II Kissimmee River and related areas, Section 2 - General Design Memorandum. U. S. Army Corps of Engineers, Jacksonville, Florida, USA. Supplement 5.
- U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. 1991. Final integrated feasibility report and environmental impact statement environmental restoration Kissimmee River, Florida. U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. Jacksonville, Florida, USA.
- U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. 1996. Kissimmee River Headwaters Revitalization Project: integrated project modification report and supplement to the Final Environmental Impact Statement. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Jacksonville, Florida, USA.
- Warne, A. G., L. A. Toth, and W. A. White. 2000. Drainage-basin-scale geomorphic analysis to determine reference conditions for ecological restoration - Kissimmee River, Florida. *Geological Society of America Bulletin* 112:884-899.
- Weller, M. W. 1995. Use of two waterbird guilds as evaluation tools for the Kissimmee River restoration. *Restoration Ecology* 3:211-224.
- White, W. A. 1970. The geomorphology of the Florida peninsula. Bulletin 41. State of Florida Department of Natural Resources Bureau of Geology, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- Whiting, P. J. 2002. Streamflow necessary for environmental maintenance. *Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences* 30:181-206.
- Williams, J. M., and I. W. Duedall. 2002. Florida hurricanes and tropical storms 1871-2001. University Press of Florida, Gainesville, Florida, USA.
- Winter, T. C. 2001. The concept of hydrologic landscapes. *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* 37:335-349.
- Wullschleger, J. G., S. J. Miller, and L. J. Davis. 1990a. An evaluation of the effects of the restoration Demonstration Project on Kissimmee River fishes. Pages 67-81 *in* M. K. Loftin, L. A. Toth, and J. T. B. Obeysekera, editors. Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Wullschleger, J. G., S. J. Miller, and L. J. Davis. 1990b. A survey of fish communities in Kissimmee River oxbows scheduled for Phase II restoration. Pages 143-148 *in* M. K. Loftin, L. A. Toth, and J. T. B.

CHAPTER 2 HYDROLOGY

Obeysekera, editors. Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.



CHAPTER 3

RIVER CHANNEL GEOMORPHOLOGY OF THE CHANNELIZED KISSIMMEE RIVER, FLORIDA

David H. Anderson¹, Don Frei^{1,2}, and William Patrick Davis^{1,3}

¹ *Kissimmee Division, Watershed Management Department, South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, FL 33406*

² *Current affiliation: National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration*

³ *Current affiliation: Water Quality Monitoring Division, Environmental Resource Assessment Department, South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, FL 33406*

ABSTRACT: We established a baseline for evaluating river channel geomorphic responses in the first reach of the Kissimmee River scheduled for restoration (Impact area) and in an upstream Control area. Examination of aerial photography from 1994 revealed that none of the 53 meanders in the Control area or the 82 meanders in the Impact area had active point bars and that relict point bars were overgrown with vegetation. We also characterized channel geomorphology from depth measurements and core samples collected on transects across remnant river channels in Control and Impact areas. Remnant river channels, which lacked flow since channelization, had accumulated organic deposits on the natural channel bed substrate. These substrate-overlying deposits ranged from 1 to 98 cm in thickness and were composed primarily of organic matter. Cross-sectional profiles constructed from the depth to the channel bed substrate, which was predominately sand, appeared to retain the shape of the historic river channel. In the Impact area, substrate-overlying organic deposits reduced the average channel depth by 8%, increased the width/depth ratio by 13%, and reduced channel cross-sectional area by 8%. In the Impact area, mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits averaged 14 cm, percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits averaged 3%, and thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg averaged 21 cm. The Control area contained more deposition above the substrate layer, with a 57% increase for mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits and an 81% increase in the thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg over the Impact area. Relative to reference values for an area with partially restored flow, values for the Impact area represent a two-fold increase in mean thickness of deposits overlying the natural channel bed substrate, a 95% reduction in the percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits, and a two-fold increase in the thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg.

INTRODUCTION

The structure and function of stream ecosystems are closely coupled to the morphology of the river channel, and morphology is strongly influenced by climate, basin physiography, and geology (Brussock et al. 1985, Knighton 1988). In the Kissimmee River basin, these factors include highly seasonal rainfall

CHAPTER 3 GEOMORPHOLOGY

(average of 124 cm/yr), a narrow basin of low relief (channel slopes of 0.00006–0.00009 m/m), and a geology composed predominately of unconsolidated fine and medium grained sands (Warne et al. 2000). The river channel that developed in this setting was shaped by the interaction of discharge and unconsolidated sediments, which gave rise to a meandering and sometimes anastomosing river channel, with typical features such as point bars on the inside of meander bends. Historical analyses indicate that the Kissimmee River had high rates of channel migration, cutoff, and avulsion, which were related to high frequency (return interval <1 yr) of bankfull discharge (Warne et al. 2000). Other characteristics relevant to the geomorphology of the river are summarized in Table 3-1.

Table 3-1. Geomorphic characteristics of the Kissimmee River system based on Warne et al. (2000).

Characteristics	Values
Basin Area	7766km ² (3000 miles ²)
Basin Length	152 km (95 miles)
Maximum basin width	62 km (39 miles)
Basin relief	94 m (309 ft)
Relief ratio ¹	0.6 m/km
Stream order (main channel) ²	4 th and 5 th
Bank-full channel width	15 to 35 m (50 to 115 ft)
Bank-full channel depth at thalweg	15 to 35 m (50 to 115 ft)
Meander wavelength	125 m (410 ft), range 90 to 400 m (295 to 1300 ft)
Sinuosity ³	1.67 to 2.1
Channel slope ⁴	
in the north	0.09 m/km (0.0009 m/m)
in the south	0.057 m/km (0.00057 m/m)
Entrenchment ratio ⁵	>20
Width to depth ratio ⁶	7 to 9
Drainage density ⁷	0.73 to 1.60 km/km ² (1.17 to 2.58 mile/mile ²)
Floodplain width	1.5 to 3 km (0.9 to 1.8 mile)
Meander width ratio ⁸	10 to 28
Bankfull discharge	
upper reaches	40 m ³ /s (1400 cfs)
lower reaches	57 m ³ /s (2000 cfs)
Mean annual discharge - lower reach	62 m ³ /s (2166 ft ³ /s)

¹ Ratio between basin relief and length of basin at its longest axis.

² Strahler (1957).

³ Ratio of stream length per unit valley length.

⁴ Koebel (1995).

⁵ Width of the flood prone area (floodplain area inundated at twice the bankfull stage) to bankfull surface width.

⁶ Bankfull channel width versus bankfull channel depth.

⁷ Stream length per unit area of watershed.

⁸ Ratio of meander wavelengths to overall width of flood prone area.

Channelization of the Kissimmee River through the excavation of the C-38 canal parallel to the length of the river valley, resulted in the destruction of river channel where the canal intersects the meandering channel, and diversion of flow from channel remnants to the deeper and wider canal (Figure 3-1). As the canal became the primary conduit for moving water, remnant channels no longer received the flow of water (Anderson and Chamberlain 2005) that creates the dynamic relationship between river velocities and sediment size, deposition, and transport, which characterizes a functioning system capable of transporting sediments (Leopold 1994). Anecdotal observations of the channelized river suggest that the absence of

flow has allowed floating aquatic and littoral vegetation beds to encroach on mid-channel areas and contribute to a layer of organic deposition on the channel bottom (Vannote 1973, Milleson et al. 1980, Perrin et al. 1982). Also, herbicidal control of freely-floating aquatic vegetation has influenced the rate of organic deposition (Grimshaw 2002). The change in the composition of the channel bed contributed to depressed concentrations of dissolved oxygen, which decreased habitat quality for river fish communities (Perrin et al. 1982, Toth 1993). Toth (1991, 1993) determined that the substrate-overlying deposits, which were >1 m thick in some locations, contained organic matter and marl and filled in the channel and decreased its cross-sectional area. Reestablishment of flow, especially bankfull discharge, is likely to reverse these impacts of channelization. The Kissimmee River Demonstration Project provides some evidence that such a reversal is possible. When weirs were placed across the C-38 canal to divert water through three remnant river channels, these channels received flows $\geq 26 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$, which approached bankfull discharge, for 233–307 d of a three and one-half year period. This increase in flow reduced the thickness and extent of substrate-overlying organic deposits and exposed the natural sand substrate (Toth 1991, 1993).

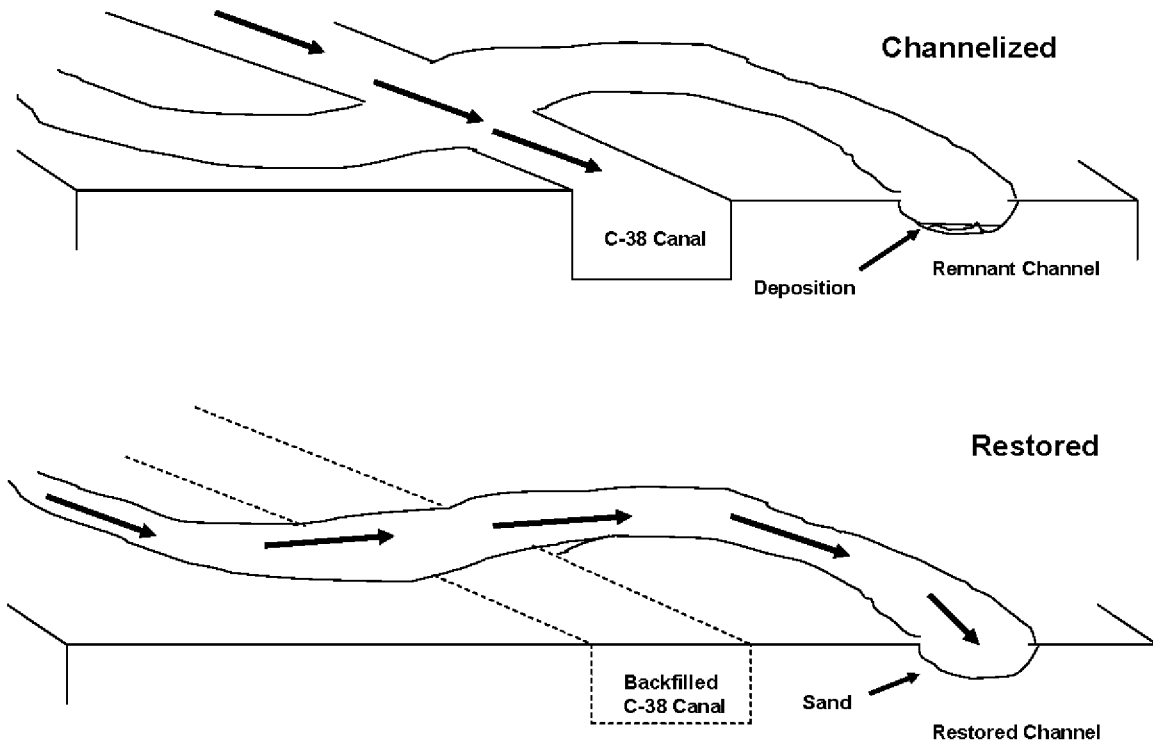


Figure 3-1. Schematic representation of a cross section through the Kissimmee River and its floodplain illustrating changes in geomorphology between the channelized system (top) and the restored system (bottom). Arrows indicate the direction of water flow through the C-38 canal in the channelized system and through the reconnected river channel in the restored system.

Objectives

This chapter characterizes aspects of fluvial geomorphology within the Kissimmee River that have been altered by channelization, and thus establishes a baseline for evaluating responses to restoration. Restoration will involve backfilling the canal, reconnecting remnant river channels, and reestablishing flows that approximate pre-channelization frequency and magnitude through the reconstructed system. To reconnect remnant river channels, new channels will be carved through the floodplain (new or recarved channels) and across the backfilled canal (connector channels). We focused baseline geomorphic studies on aspects of channel structure that were impacted by the virtual elimination of flow, especially the loss of

bankfull discharge, which is essential for the transportation and deposition of sediments. While new channels and connector channels do not exhibit the effects of channelization, they were included in this chapter because data that characterizes their condition at the time of construction provides a baseline for evaluating their adjustments to flow following the restoration project. The specific objectives of this study included quantifying:

- (1) The presence of point bars.
- (2) Channel morphology.
- (3) Characteristics of channel bed deposits.
- (4) Riparian soils and vegetation.
- (5) Reference conditions that could be used to develop restoration expectations.

METHODS

Study Sites

The Kissimmee River is located in south-central Florida and is channelized along its entire length by the C-38 canal, which is 9 m-deep and 30–100 m-wide. Where the canal intersects the meandering river channel, the larger canal obliterates the natural channel. The resulting remnants of the natural river channel remain connected to the canal and hold water but carry essentially no flow. During channelization, a series of water control structures were installed that divided the canal into a series of pools. Our study involved the longest remnant river runs in Pool A and Pool C and a short run in Pool B (Map Appendix 1A). We designated runs in Pool A as the Control area because they are upstream of the restoration project, and restoration activities (i.e., canal backfilling) should not reestablish flow to these runs. We designated runs in Pool C and one run (UBX) in Pool B as the Impact area because these runs will be reconnected during Phase I of the restoration project and will then carry flow.

Backfilling began in June 1999 and ended in February 2001. During this period, three new channels (Fulford, Strayer, and Loftin) were carved across the floodplain, and four connector channels (Loftin-Micco Bluff connector, Oxbow 13-Micco Bluff connector, Strayer-Fulford connector, and Montsdeoca-Fulford connector) were carved across the backfilled canal in the Impact area. The dimensions of these new and connector channels were determined by criteria specified in the construction plans for the restoration project (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1998). New channels were designed to match the characteristics of natural channels and were adjusted for channel pattern (i.e., curved or straight). Straight and slightly curving channels were carved with a bottom width of 64 feet (19.5 m) and sides with a 2:1 slope (2 horizontal feet for every vertical foot). Transitional channels were carved with a bottom width of 42 feet (12.8 m), a 2:1 slope on the exterior side of the curve, and a 4:1 slope on the interior side. Curved channels were given a bottom width of 30 feet (9.1 m), a side slope of 2:1 on the exterior of the curve, and a side slope of 7:1 on the interior of the curve. The width of connector channels was constructed to match the bottom width of the channels it joined on either side of the backfilled canal. The northern side of the connector channel had a 16:1 slope, and the southern side had a 4:1 slope.

Point Bar Presence and Absence

We examined aerial photographs of the channelized river with ArcView (Environmental Systems Research Institute) to determine if point bars were present on meander bends. These photographs (1:6000 scale) were taken at an altitude of 914 m between February 26, and March 15, 1994, when the river stage was 33.75–33.82 ft NGVD (10.29–10.32 m NGVD). The area examined covered meanders from all remnant river runs in Pool A, Pool C, and UBX run in Pool B.

Core Sampling

We characterized river channel sediments and riparian soils with core samples collected between November 1997 and February 1999 for remnant river channels, and in 2000 for new river channels and connector channels. Core samples were collected in remnant river channels on fixed transects that were established in 1988 (Montsdeoca, MacArthur, UBX) and in 1997 (Micco Bluff, Oxbow 13, Ice Cream

Slough, Rattlesnake Hammock, and Persimmon Mound). Twenty-one transects were located along three remnant river channels in the Control area, and 86 were located along five remnant channels in the Impact area (Appendix 3-1A). In the Control area, six transects were established in Ice Cream Slough Run (Map Appendix 1A), five in Rattlesnake Hammock Run (Map Appendix 1A) and ten transects in Persimmon Mound Run (Map Appendix 3A). In the Impact area, five transects were located in UBX Run (Map Appendix 5A), 18 in Montsdeoca Run (Map Appendix 8A), 11 in Oxbow 13 Run (Map Appendix 8A), 28 in Micco Bluff Run (Map Appendix 7A), and 24 in MacArthur Run (Map Appendix 7A). Eight transects at the lower end of MacArthur Run will not be affected by restoration until Phase II/III, and another eight transects were destroyed during Phase I construction (Appendix 3-1A). The Impact area also contained 17 transects located on three new channels and five transects located in four connector channels. These same transects were also used for river channel vegetation studies (Bousquin 2005).

Transects were located to include both straight and curved sections of river channel. We classified transects by channel pattern (i.e., straight or curved sections of channel) based primarily on the shape of the channel in plan view (Appendix 3-1A, Map Appendices 1A, 3A, 4A, 5A, 7A, and 8A). We also used the shape of the channel profile (see Digital Appendix on attached CD) especially the position of the thalweg (i.e., the deepest portion of the channel profile). Transect profiles that tended to be symmetrical with a broad, shallow thalweg (Figure 3-2A) were considered to be from straight sections of channel. Profiles with deep thalwegs that were shifted to one side (Figure 3-2B) were considered curved. For all profiles classified as curved, the thalweg was shifted toward the side of the channel, which corresponded to the outside of the meander bend in plan view. Profiles were also plotted for new channels and connector channels, and these profiles indicated the shape of the channel as constructed. Some transects were located in curved and straight sections of all four channel types except connector channels, which lacked curved sections because of their short length and design.

The location of each transect was permanently marked on both banks of the river with galvanized pipe (3.81 cm diameter) and referenced with differential Global Positioning System. To maintain position during sampling, a cable was stretched between the transect markers and pulled tight with a winch. The marker on the left side of the channel facing downstream was designated the "0" position on the transect. Core samples and channel depth measurements were taken at 1.5 m intervals along each transect from the 0 point.

Submerged core samples were taken waterward of each bank with a coring device (Davis and Steinman 1998) made of polyvinyl chloride (PVC). The core consisted of a 1 m long tube of clear PVC (3.81-cm diameter) attached to a check valve. The valve was kept open during the descent of the core but closed when the core was extracted, creating a vacuum that helped retain the sample. Threaded extensions of PVC pipe were attached to the valve to allow sampling at different depths. These extensions were perforated to allow water above the valve to drain. A t-shaped handle was attached to the top of the core to aid penetration and extraction. The coring device was marked at 10-cm intervals to facilitate depth measurements.

To collect a sample, the core was lowered into the water until it made contact with solid substratum, and this depth to substratum was recorded to the nearest cm using a meter stick and markings on the coring device. Then the core was pushed into the substratum to a depth of 1 m or until resistance prevented further penetration. The core was then extracted and characterized in the field.

Each core sample was divided into substrate-overlying deposits and natural channel bed substrate. We assume that the first appreciable layer (>10 cm thickness) composed of $\geq 50\%$ sand or peat represents the bed of the pre-channelization river channel and that material above this substratum layer represents relatively recent (i.e., post-channelization) deposits on the channel substratum. The substrate layer and the depositional layer overlying it were divided into sublayers based on appearance (e.g., color, texture, consistency). We also assumed that the depth of the channel substratum corresponded to the depth at which the corer encountered resistance (i.e., the depth to substratum).

For each sublayer, we recorded the following physical characteristics: structure, thickness (to the nearest cm) and, composition. Sublayer structure was characterized as uniform, mixed, or laminated. Uniform sublayers contained >95% by volume of one sediment type (e.g., sand). Mixed sublayers contained more than one sediment type, which were not arranged in layers. Laminated sublayers contained narrow (<1 cm thick) bands of secondary sediment types within a primary sediment type. Sediment type of each sublayer was identified based on relative amounts of mineral and organic material (Table 3-2). When a sublayer contained two or three sediment types, the type accounting for the highest proportion of the sample was assigned a 1, the next highest a 2, and the third highest a 3 (e.g., 1 sand, 2 mucky sand). To

simplify the presentation of results, these types were converted to the types described in Table 3-2. Color (hue, value, and chroma) was determined for each sublayer by comparison to Munsell's Soil Color Charts. Hue indicates the color of the light, value indicates the amount of light, and chroma indicates the purity of the dominant wavelength.

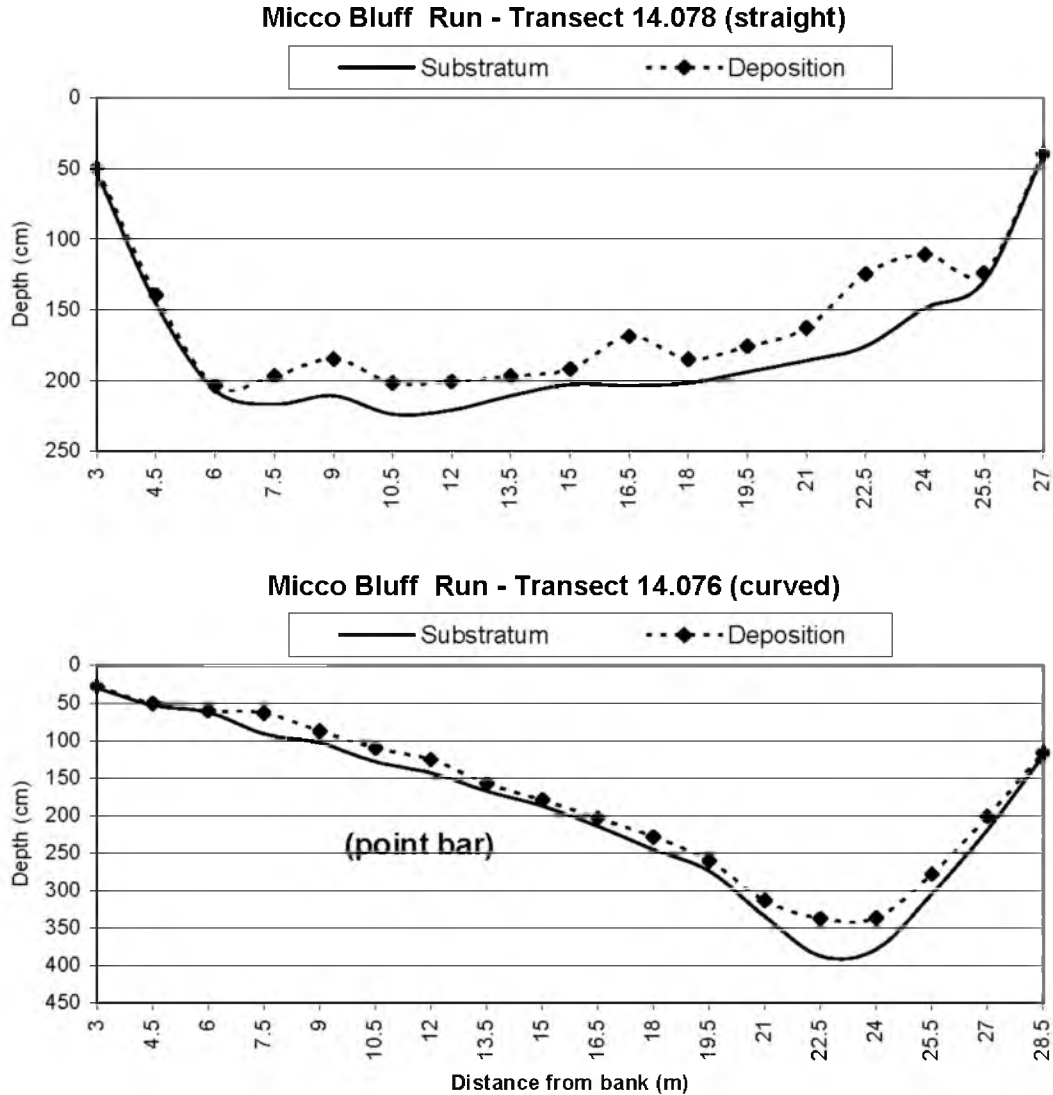


Figure 3-2. Representative channel profiles for transects located in straight (A) and curved (B) sections of channel. These profiles show the surface of the substrate-overlying depositional layer (dashed line) and the surface of the historic channel substrate (solid line). Note that the shallow slope of the bank on the left side of bottom Figure represents a point bar.

Riparian soil core samples were taken at 1.5 m intervals from the water's edge to 4.5 m upland on each bank if the bank was dry and exposed soil was present. Soil cores were taken with a stainless steel coring tube (Oakfield soil sampler, model DB3, diameter = 2.1 cm). Riparian soil cores were collected to a depth of 70-cm, if attainable. For each sublayer in a core, we identified the sediment type (Table 3-2) and the

color using Munsell's Soil Color Charts. We documented riparian vegetation at all transects by recording the most common vegetation species occurring within 0.5 m of either side of the riparian core samples.

Chemical Analysis

Additional physical and chemical analyses were undertaken to help ascertain the origin of the marl sediment type. Eighty-two core samples were collected for the major soil types: sand, marl, muck detritus, and muck. An additional ten samples were collected from material excavated during channelization and deposited as spoil mounds along the canal bank. These core samples were collected at sites known to contain specific soil types. Soil samples were analyzed by the University of Florida's Soil and Water Science Department. Particle size distribution and texture were performed on sand and marl samples. Percent organic carbon was measured for all samples, and percent total carbon was measured for samples of marl, muck, and muck detritus. Calcium carbonate was measured for sand, marl, and spoil samples. Mineralogy of spoil and marl samples was examined with x-ray powder diffraction.

Channel Morphology

We used the depth to substratum to develop a cross-sectional profile of the river channel at each transect (see Digital Appendix on attached CD). Depth to substratum was standardized to the operational stage (elevation) of the pool (34 ft NGVD in Pool C, 40 ft NGVD in Pool B, and 46 ft NGVD in Pool A) so that differences in water level among sample dates did not influence measurements of cross-sectional area. We also estimated a depth to organic deposits on the natural river bed substrate by subtracting the thickness of substrate-overlying organic deposits from the corrected depth to substrate and plotting the resulting depth on the channel cross-section. For each profile of a remnant channel, we estimated the cross-sectional area of the channel with and without deposition on the substrate layer using AutoCAD Land Development software.

We characterized the shape of channel cross-sections with the width/depth ratio (w/d) for transects of fixed length described by Olson-Rutz and Marlow (1992) where w is the transect length and d is the average depth. We estimated w/d_{sub} by dividing the transect length (width in Appendix 3-1A) by the average of the corrected depth to substratum measurements for that transect. We also estimated w/d_{dep} using the average of the depth to the substrate-overlying deposits measurements for the baseline period.

Quantification of Substrate-Overlying Deposits

We characterized the substrate-overlying deposits on each transect with three metrics. Mean thickness (cm) of substrate-overlying deposits for each transect, including littoral macrophyte beds was calculated as the average thickness of substrate-overlying deposits for all cores from a transect. We expect values of this metric in restored reaches to decrease. However, substrate-overlying deposits are not expected to disappear entirely because of the influence of littoral macrophyte beds. We defined percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits as the percent of samples on a transect without such deposits. This metric reflects the areal coverage of substrate-overlying deposits and indicates the availability of habitat suitable for channel dwelling organisms, such as benthic invertebrates, which require or prefer a sand substratum free of substantial organic deposits. We determined the thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg (cm) as the thickness of these deposits in the core taken at the deepest point on a transect. The thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg should be free of the influence of littoral macrophyte beds and should show a strong initial response to flow.

Reference Conditions

Reference conditions representing point bar formation and substrate-overlying deposits in the pre-channelization river channel were identified. Differences between the reference condition and the baseline condition should indicate the impacts of channelization. Quantified impacts of channelization can be used to guide the development of expectations for the restored system.

The reference condition for the formation of point bars on meander bends in the Kissimmee River was based on aerial photographs of the pre-channelization river (Frei et al. 2005). These photographs were taken during extreme low water levels (38.64 NGVD at Fort Kissimmee) in June 1956 and covered the area

of Pool C. Point bars were recognized in these photographs by color, shape, and location on meander bends. Meander bends were distinguished from minor curvature of the channel by an arc angle of 70° (Rosgen 1996).

The reference condition for organic deposition in the river channel was based on data collected by Toth (1991, 1993) in three remnant river channels to which flow had been reestablished during the Kissimmee River Demonstration Project. These data included measurements of the thickness of substrate-overlying organic deposits using core samples collected at 1.5 m intervals on 25 transects across three remnant river channels. We only used data for 24 transects because one transect (Upper Run Transect 1) did not receive appreciable flow during the Demonstration Project. While these transects were sampled for several years after reestablishing flow, we limited our analyses to data from 1988, which was three years after flow was reestablished and the final year of data collection. These samples should resemble the pre-channelization river channel. We used the raw data (L. A. Toth, unpublished data) to calculate mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits, percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits, and thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg for each transect (Appendix 3-2A). Because we expected much less deposition in the reference condition, we predicted that reference conditions for mean thickness and thalweg thickness would be less than the baseline values and that the reference condition for percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits would be higher than the baseline condition for remnant channels.

Statistical Analyses

We used ANOVA to test for differences in the average values for mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits, percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits, and thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg among the four types of channel (Control, Impact, new, and connector). This analysis involved a nested ANOVA design with three factors: AREA (four channel types), RUN(AREA) (runs nested within channel types), and PATTERN (curved or straight channels). Runs were treated as a nested factor within channel type because runs were not independent of channel type (i.e., each run did not occur in each channel type). This design should distinguish between the effects of channel type and river run. Channel pattern was included as an independent factor because it was a potential source of variation. Effect sizes were estimated as variance components using formulas from Quinn and Keough (2002); variance components are approximate because of unequal sample sizes.

Use of ANOVA assumes that the observations are independent and that the groups are normally distributed with homogenous variances (Underwood 1997). Because observations are values for transects rather than individual cores from a transect, we suggest that the observations (i.e., transects) are independent. We used box plots to evaluate the assumptions of normality and homogeneity of variances prior to performing the ANOVA (Quinn and Keough 2002), and data were transformed as necessary to satisfy the assumptions of ANOVA. We also verified that the assumptions were not violated during the ANOVA with a graphical analysis of residuals after the ANOVA (Quinn and Keough 2002). If the effect of AREA (channel type) was significant ($p < 0.01$), we identified channel types that were different by making all pair-wise comparisons with Tukey's HSD, which kept the experiment-wise error rate at 0.05. Statistical analyses were performed in SYSTAT version 7 (SYSTAT Software, Inc., Chicago, Illinois).

We used a statistical power analysis to estimate the magnitude of change that could be determined for mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits, percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits, and thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg using the method for a t-test described in Zar (1984). For this analysis, we held α , the probability of making a type I error (rejecting the null hypothesis when it is true), at 0.05, and allowed β , the probability of making a type II error (accepting the null hypothesis when it is false), to be 0.25, 0.1, and 0.05. Also, we assumed that the variance for the Impact area for the baseline period would be representative of the pooled variance (S_p^2). Finally, we solved for the minimum detectable difference (δ) at sample sizes (n) ranging from 1 to 50 with the following equation:

$$\delta = \sqrt{(2S_p^2/n)} * (t_{\alpha(1),v} + t_{\beta(1),v})$$

where $t_{\alpha(1),v}$ was the critical value for a one-tailed t-test with α set at 0.05 and v degrees of freedom, and $t_{\beta(1),v}$ was the critical value for a one-tailed t-test substituting β for α with v degrees of freedom.

RESULTS

Point Bar Formation

Aerial photographs from 1994 showed that remnant channels in the Impact area contained 82 meanders and that those in the Control area contained 53 meanders. None of these meanders exhibited signs of active point bar formation (i.e., exposed sand). All relic point bars were colonized by plants, and most were densely vegetated.

Table 3-2. Sediment types and composition from river bottom samples.

Detritus ¹ :	Organic debris composed entirely of recognizable plant material such as leaves and stems.
Marl:	Fine silty, clay-like deposit.
Muck:	Fine organic material irrespective of mineral matter content.
Muck Detritus:	Mix muck and detritus. Detritus is 10-90% of sample volume.
Mucky Peat ¹ :	Muck mixed in a layer of peat. Peat is 50-90% of sample volume.
Mucky Sand:	Muck mixed in a layer of sand. Sand is 51-90% of sample volume.
Peat:	Consolidated coarse organic sediments.
Sand:	Granular, inorganic sediments.
Sandy muck:	Sand mixed in a layer of muck. Muck is 51-90% of sample volume.
Sandy Peat ¹ :	Sand mixed in a layer of peat. Peat is 50-90% of sample volume.
Sandy Marl ² :	Sand mixed in a layer of marl. Marl is 50-90% of sample volume.
Marly Sand ² :	Marl mixed in a layer if sand, sand is 50-90% of sample volume.

¹Class used in the original classification but not observed in core samples and dropped from the revised classification.

²Class was added in the revised composition classes.

Channel Characteristics

Cross-sectional profiles of transects in remnant channels were well-defined (see Digital Appendix on attached CD), and we concluded that profiles of the substrate layer retained the shape of the channel prior to channelization.

Remnant channels in the Impact area ranged in width from 12 to 62 m (Appendix 3-1A) with an average of 35 m (Table 3-3), while those in the Control area ranged from 31 to 47 m with an average width of 38 m. New channels tended to be wider than remnant channels, with an average width of 45 m, but the range of width (38–59 m) overlapped the upper range for remnant channels. Connector channels were widest, with a range of 54 to 88 m and an average of 70 m. The greater width of new and connector channels reflects design criteria for the slope of the sides, especially in connector channels.

Width/depth ratios using depth to substrate (w/d_{sub}) ranged from 10 to 46 for remnant channels in the Control and Impacts areas and in the new channels. Mean values for these three channel types were similar, ranging from 22 to 25 (Table 3-3). The similarity of new channels to remnants of the natural channel reflects their design. Connector runs were designed to be wider, which resulted in larger values for w/d_{sub} . Values of w/d_{sub} for connector runs ranged from 22 to 70 and averaged 47 which was almost twice the average for the remnant channels. Because the substrate-overlying deposits were thin relative to channel width, the presence of deposition caused w/d_{dep} to be slightly larger than w/d_{sub} (Table 3-3). The difference between w/d_{dep} and w/d_{sub} were greater in the remnant channels, where there was more deposition, than in the new and connector channels. Width/depth ratios were slightly larger in straight channel sections than curved ones (Figure 3-3), reflecting a tendency toward greater mean depths in curved sections.

CHAPTER 3 GEOMORPHOLOGY

Most remnant channels in the Impact area were larger in cross-sectional area, based on corrected depth to substratum, than those in the Control area (Figure 3-4). Cross-sectional area averaged 64 m² in the Control area and 35 m² in the Impact area, which is approximately half of the average for the Control area (Table 3-4). Throughout the Control and Impact areas, curved channels in most runs had slightly larger areas than straight sections, but these differences were usually within 1 SE (Figure 3-4). The presence of deposition reduced cross-sectional area by an average of 14% in the Control area and 8% in the Impact area (Table 3-4). In most Impact area runs, deposition reduced the cross-sectional area of the channel by similar amounts in straight and curved channels (Figure 3-4). In UBX run and all Control area runs, deposition reduced channel cross-sectional area 5–11% more in straight channels than curved ones, and UBX run had the largest difference with 3 transects in straight channels having three-times the reduction for 2 transects in curved channels.

Table 3-3. Mean (SE) values for channel width (m), depth to substratum (Z_{sub} , cm), width/depth ratio using the depth to substrate (w/d_{sub}), depth to substrate-overlying deposit (Z_{dep} , cm), and width/depth ratio using the depth to the substrate-overlying depositional layer (w/d_{dep}).

Area	Run	n	Width	Z_{sub}	w/d_{sub}	Z_{dep}	w/d_{dep}
Control	Ice Cream Slough Run	6	34 (1.01)	149	24 (2.84)	121	31 (4.41)
	Rattlesnake Hammock Run	5	37 (1.39)	144	28 (3.86)	121	33 (4.60)
	Persimmon Mound Run	10	41 (1.46)	176	25 (2.10)	157	28 (2.63)
	Control Total	21	38 (1.05)	160	25 (1.52)	138	30 (2.02)
Impact	UBX Run	5	39 (0.64)	186	22 (2.95)	174	24 (3.90)
	Montsdeoca Run	18	30 (1.58)	122	27 (2.43)	112	30 (2.82)
	Oxbow13 Run	11	40 (2.34)	156	26 (1.30)	131	31 (1.90)
	Micco Bluff Run	28	35 (1.64)	172	22 (1.28)	158	23 (1.42)
	MacArthur Run	24	36 (1.07)	208	19 (1.52)	197	20 (1.67)
	Impact Total	86	35 (0.82)	170	22 (0.86)	157	25 (1.02)
New	Fulford Run	3	49 (3.23)	120	42 (4.26)	120	42 (4.29)
	Strayer Run	6	40 (1.16)	232	17 (0.33)	225	18 (0.35)
	Oxbow13 (recarved)	3	50 (4.68)	179	32 (6.30)	178	32 (6.50)
	Loftin Run	5	45 (1.12)	227	20 (1.37)	225	20 (1.37)
	New Total	17	45 (1.37)	202	25 (2.62)	198	25 (2.60)
Connector	Montsdeoca-Fulford	1	88	125	70	124	71
	Strayer-Fulford	1	54	242	22	241	22
	Oxbow13-Micco	1	69	117	59	112	61
	Loftin-Micco	2	71 (17.00)	164	43 (7.31)	158	44 (7.88)
	Connector Total	5	70 (7.61)	163	47 (8.45)	159	49 (8.69)

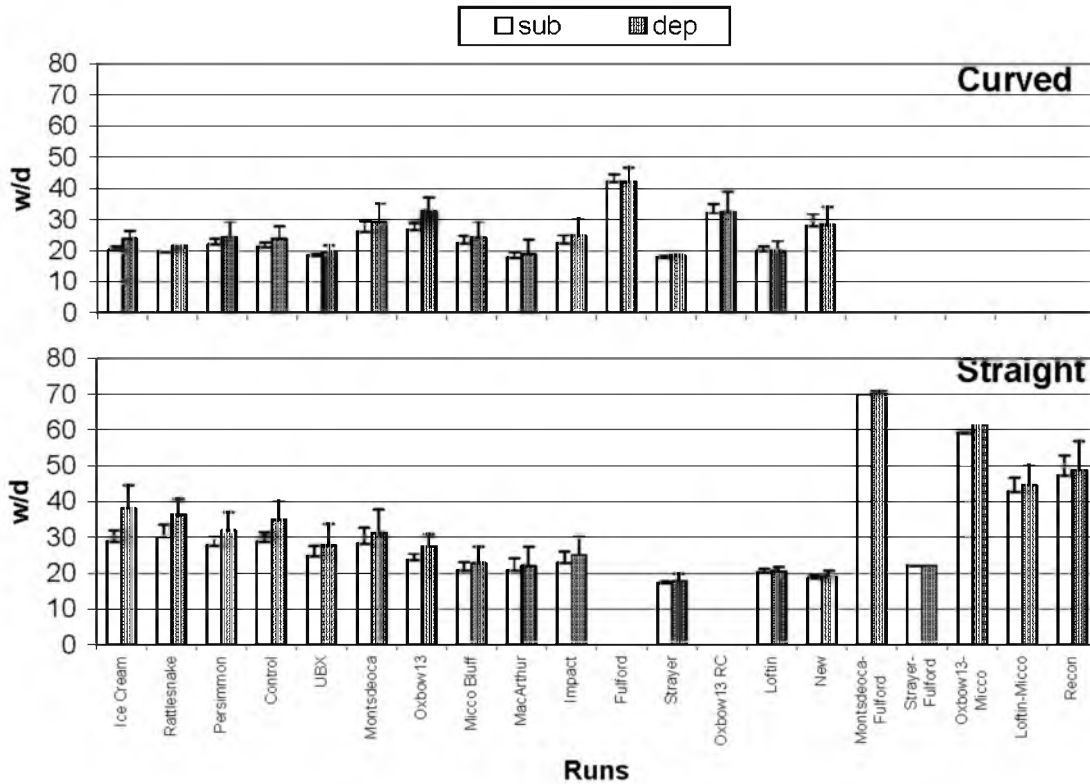


Figure 3-3. Mean width–depth ratio (+1SE) by river runs for transects in curved and straight sections of channel. Width–depth ratios were calculated using the depth to the natural sand substratum (sub) and to the deposits overlying the substratum (dep). River runs are arranged from upstream to downstream within the groupings of Control, Impact, and Recurved.

Sediment Composition

Channel sediments were characterized by collecting 7-56 samples per transect for a total of >3,000 samples. We defined 12 sediment types, but three (detritus, sandy peat, and mucky peat) were not observed in core samples (Table 3-2). The remaining nine sediment types occurred in the natural channel bed substratum, and all but two types (marly sand and peat) occurred in the substrate-overlying deposits (Figure 3-5). Almost 90% of the substrate-overlying sublayers were characterized as muck (herein defined as fine particles from highly decomposed plant fragments, irrespective of mineral matter content) or muck detritus (fine muck and plant fragments). Muck as used in this study included both material commonly recognized as muck and more flocculent material. Another 11% were marl (calcite mud). The substrate was more diverse with mucky sand and sand accounting for 76% of the sublayers.

The interpretation of the composition of these sediment types is supported by physical and chemical measurements. Munsell soil colors reflect the relative amounts of organic and inorganic material in sediment layers. Muck and muck detritus, which were mostly organic, typically had dark brown colors (e.g., 10yr 3/1 and 10yr 3/2). Sand was typically white (2.5yr 8/1), and marl was gray (e.g., 10yr 5/1). Intermediate categories reflected the mixing of inorganic and organic material. Mucky sand, which is predominately sand, was gray (e.g., 10yr 6/1), while sandy muck, which is mostly organic, was brown (e.g., 10yr 3/2).

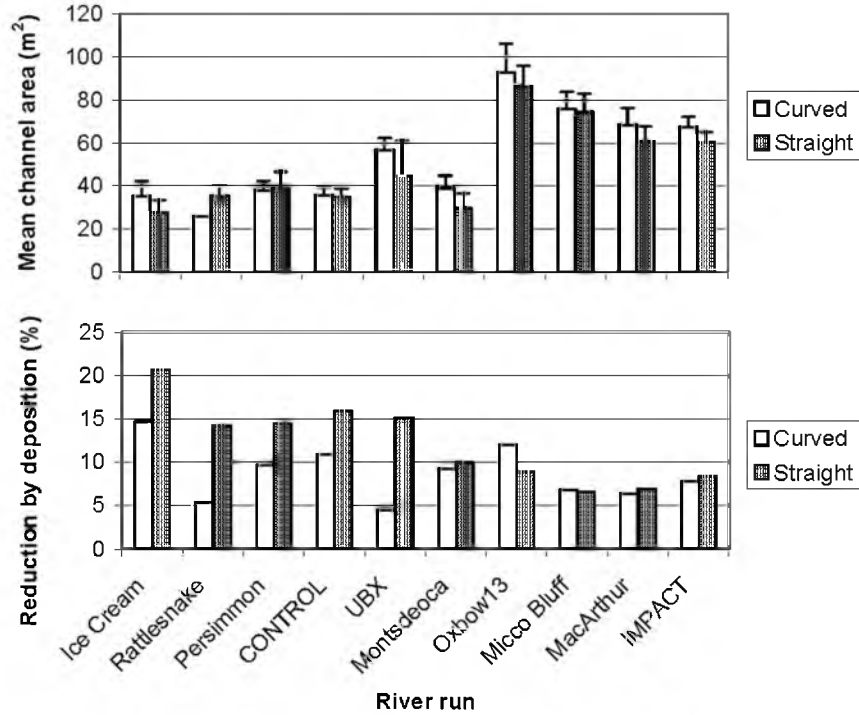


Figure 3-4. Mean (SE) cross-sectional area based on the depth to substratum and percent reduction by deposition on top of the substrate for curved and straight sections of remnant channels in the Control and Impact areas.

Table 3-4. Mean (SE) cross-sectional area (m²) of channel above the river substrate-overlying deposits and above the river channel bed substratum. Reduction is the percent reduction of the channel area by the substrate-overlying depositional layer.

Area	Run	Deposition on top of substrate	Substrate	Reduction
Control	Ice Cream Slough Run	26 (3.72)	31 (4.39)	18 (2.06)
	Rattlesnake Hammock Run	29 (4.57)	33 (4.55)	12 (3.20)
	Persimmon Mound Run	34 (4.22)	38 (4.36)	12 (1.63)
	Control Total	31 (2.52)	35 (2.62)	14 (1.29)
Impact	UBX Run	47 (10.05)	49 (9.58)	11 (6.78)
	Montsdeoca Run	32 (4.33)	35 (4.43)	10 (1.45)
	Oxbow13 Run	81 (8.09)	90 (8.89)	11 (1.40)
	Micco Bluff Run	70 (5.67)	75 (5.79)	7 (0.62)
	MacArthur Run	61 (5.32)	65 (5.48)	7 (1.07)
	Impact Total	60 (3.26)	64 (3.42)	8 (0.64)

Sand and marl samples contained particles with different size distributions. Sand samples were composed of sand-sized particles (0.05–2.0 mm), while marl samples contained nearly equal quantities of clay and silt-sized particles (<0.05 mm) and averaged <10% sand (Figure 3-6A). Sand samples contained mostly fine-sized sand particles with some medium-sized particles (Figure 3-6B), while the sand fraction of marl was more evenly divided between very fine, fine, and medium-sized sand particles. The total carbon content (as a percentage) of marl was less than half that of muck detritus but only slightly less than that of

muck (Table 3-5). Approximately half the carbon in marl was calcium carbonate, and the other half was organic. The percentage of calcium carbonate in marl was more than twice that in spoil, which was >10 times the content of sand (Table 3-5). X-ray diffraction showed that all marl and spoil samples contained small quantities of quartz and varying amounts of calcite, but marl contained more calcite than spoil did. Marl samples also contained larger amounts of the carbonates aragonite and dolomite and the clays smectite and kaolin.

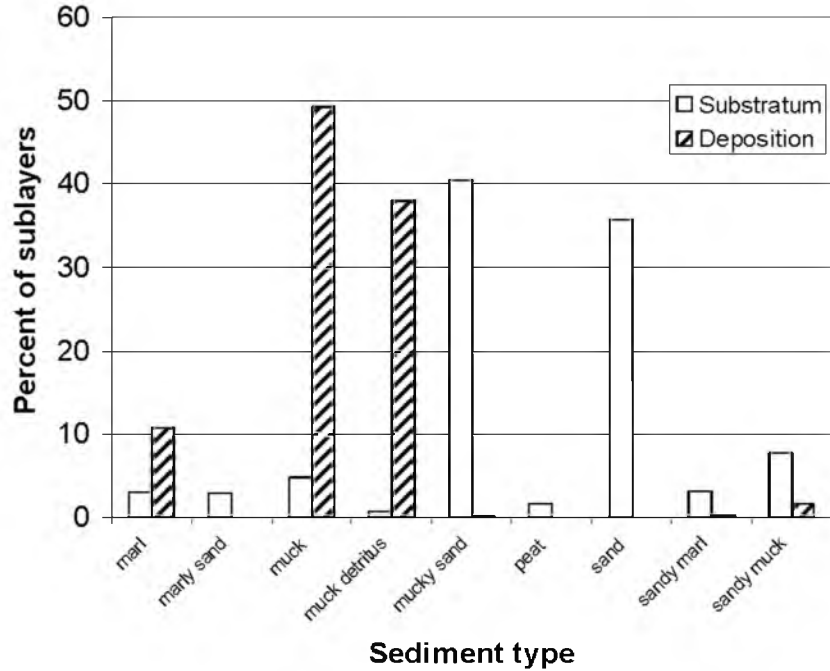


Figure 3-5. Percent of identified sublayers belonging to different sediment types. Sediment types are defined in Table 3-2. Sediment types were identified for 4487 sublayers in the above-substrate depositional layer and for 3351 sublayers in substratum layer.

Substrate-Overlying Deposits

Nearly all core samples from remnant river channels and most of those from new and connector channels contained substrate-overlying deposits. Substrate-overlying deposits were present in 99% of the samples collected in remnant river channels of the Control area and in 97% of those from the Impact area. In new river channels, 80% of the core samples contained a depositional layer above the substrate unit, and in connector runs, 77% did. While most core samples from new and connector river channels contained a depositional layer above the substrate unit, these layers were thinner than those found in remnant channels.

Mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits was the only one of three metrics used to quantify organic deposits in the river channel that was calculated as an average for each transect. We evaluated how representative the average value was for each transect by calculating precision of the mean (standard error expressed as a percentage of the mean), so that higher values indicate less precise estimates. In remnant channels, precision was frequently less than 20%, which suggests that the mean layer thickness was a good estimate of the mean for the transect. Only 11 transects had precision >30%; none of these transects were in the Control area, and only five were in the Impact area (fewer than 4% of the Impact area transects) (Figure 3-7). Mean thickness tended to be less precise in new channels, where five transects (29% of the new channel transects) had precision >30%, and in the connector channels, where two transects (40% of the connector channel transects) had precision >30%.

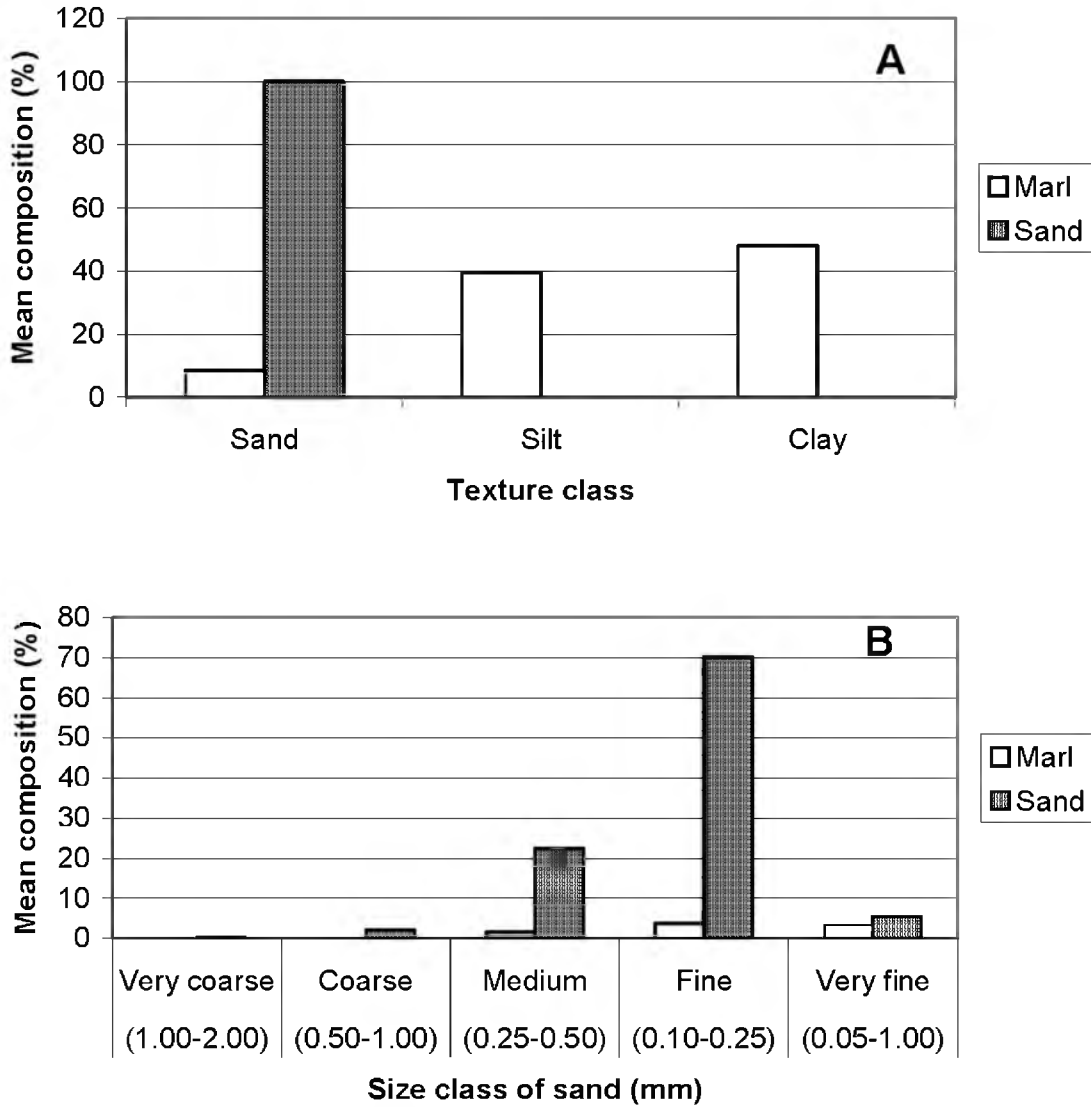


Figure 3-6. Mean composition of different texture classes (A) and different size classes of sand for ten samples of marl sublayers and 21 samples of sand sublayers.

Table 3-5. Mean (SE) percentage of total carbon, calcium carbonate, and organic carbon in different sediment classes.

	Muck/Detritus	Marl	Muck	Sand	Spoil
N	21	10	20	4	10
Total carbon	20.5 (1.5)	6.6 (0.2)	8.5 (0.7)	-----	-----
CaCO ₃	-----	23* (2.1)	-----	0.6 (0.2)	10(2.4)
Organic carbon	-----	3.8 (0.3)	-----	-----	-----

* CaCO₃ is 12% carbon, so 3% of C in marl is in the form of CaCO₃.

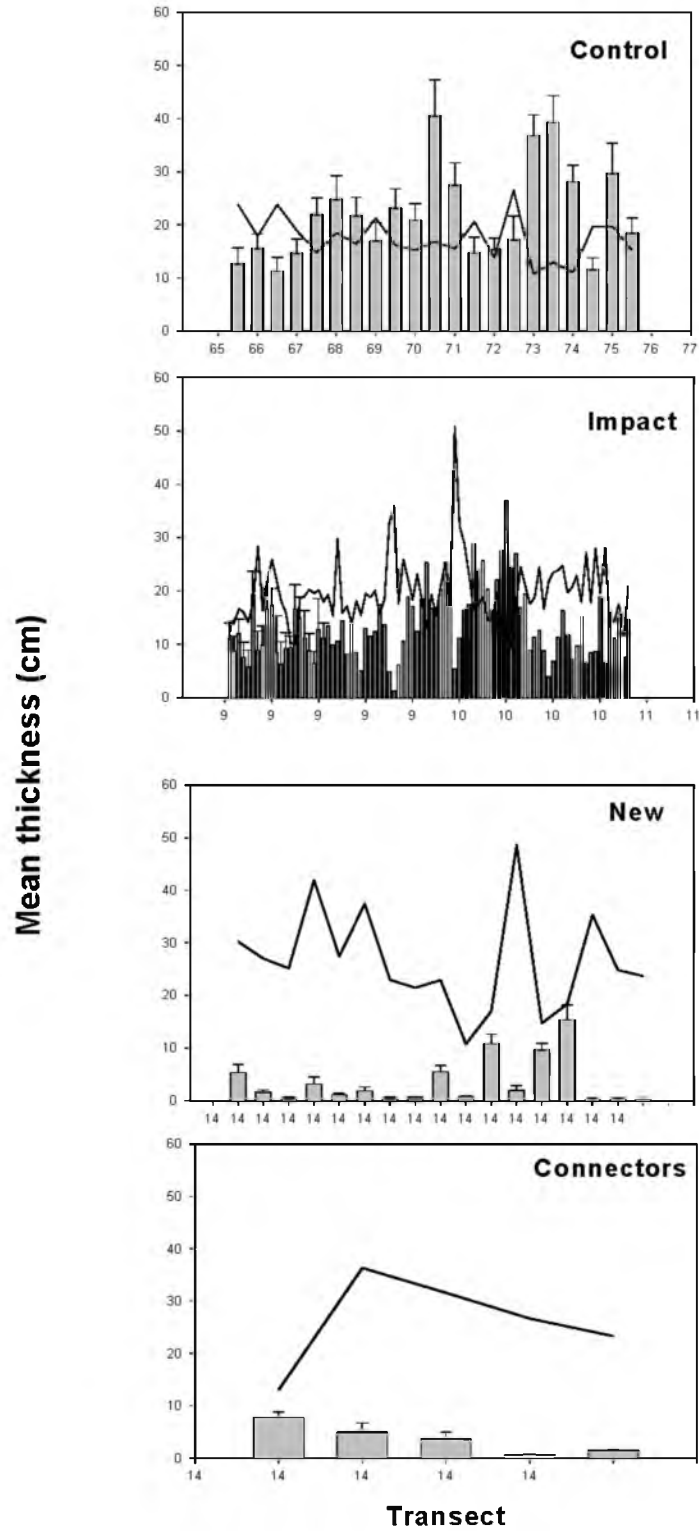


Figure 3-7. Mean thickness (SE) of substrate-overlying deposits (bars) and sampling precision (line) for each transect in the control, impact, new and connector channel types. Sampling precision was the standard error divided by the mean.

Mean thickness of the substrate-overlying deposits averaged 22 cm for 21 transects in the Control area and 14 cm for 86 transects in the Impact area (Table 3-6). Mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits averaged only 4 cm in both new and connector channels. Box plots for mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits tended to be symmetrical about the median, which suggested normality, and the overlapping ranges of the whiskers suggested homogeneity of variances among the channel types (Figure 3-8A). Mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits was significantly different among channel types (AREA) and runs nested within channel type (RUN(AREA)), but it was not different among channel patterns (Table 3-7). The nested model explained 62% of the variance in mean thickness. The variance component for RUN(AREA) was 2.4 times that for AREA (Table 3-7), which shows that RUN(AREA) accounted for a much larger fraction of the variance in mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits. Tukey's HSD showed that mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits differed between the Control and Impact areas and that remnant channels differed from both new and connector channels (Figure 3-9).

In remnant river channels, a small percentage of samples on a transect lacked substrate-overlying deposits. In the Control area, percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits averaged 1%, and in the Impact area it averaged 3% (Table 3-6). Remnant channels averaged a lower percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits than new and connector channels, which averaged 19% and 25%, respectively. For samples without substrate-overlying deposits, box plots were much less symmetrical than mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits, which suggests some departure from normality. Remnant channels and new and connector runs had different ranges, suggesting that variances were not homogeneous (Figure 3-8B). We transformed the percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits by taking the arc sin of the square root of the percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits after converting percentages to proportions (Quinn and Keough 2002). Using the transformed data, percentage of samples without substrate-overlying deposits was significantly different for AREA and RUN(AREA), but not channel pattern (Table 3-7). The variance component for RUN(AREA) was three times that for AREA, which suggests that differences between runs are greater than the differences between channel types. Tukey's HSD showed that remnant channels in the Control and Impact areas were significantly different (Tukey's HSD, $p < 0.01$) from new channels and connector runs (Figure 3-9).

Thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg in remnant channels averaged 38 cm for transects in the Control area and 21 cm in the Impact area (Table 3-6). Thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg was much less in new channels, which averaged 6 cm, and in connector runs, which averaged 2 cm. For thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg, box plots were symmetrical except in the new river channels, but the range of values generally overlapped, suggesting homogeneity of variances (Figure 3-8C). We transformed substrate-overlying deposits thickness at the thalweg by taking the natural logarithm ($X + 1$). Transformed values for substrate-overlying deposits thickness at the thalweg were significantly different for AREA and RUN(AREA) but not for channel pattern (Table 3-7). The variance component for RUN(AREA) was two times that for AREA, which suggests that differences among runs were greater than differences among channel types. Tukey's HSD showed that the thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg in remnant channels from the Control and Impact area were significantly different (Tukey's HSD, $p < 0.01$) from each other, and from new channels and connector runs (Figure 3-9).

Reference conditions

In pre-channelization aerial photographs, point bars occurred on the insides of 329 of 330 river meanders with an arc angle $> 70^\circ$. The largest point bars occurred on curves downstream of long straight river runs.

Baseline values for the three metrics used to characterize the substrate-overlying deposits were quite different from those of the reference condition (Figure 3-9). The reference condition for mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits was 5 cm, which was much less than values for remnant river channels and between the values for new and connector channels. Percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits averaged 55% in the reference condition, which was much higher than the values for remnant river channels, new channels, and connector runs. Thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg was 9 cm in the reference condition, which was less than half the value for the Impact area and less than a third of the value for the Control area. Thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg at the reference area was about twice the values for the new channels and connector runs.

CHAPTER 3 GEOMORPHOLOGY

Table 3-6. Mean (SE) values for mean thickness (cm) of substrate-overlying deposits, percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits (%), and thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg thickness (cm).

Area	Run	n	Thickness	Percent	Thalweg
Control	Ice Cream Slough Run	6	27 (4.34)	0 (0)	44 (9.02)
	Rattlesnake Hammock Run	5	23 (4.94)	1 (0.95)	33 (13.74)
	Persimmon Mound Run	10	18 (1.48)	1 (0.71)	38 (6.98)
	Control Total	21	22 (1.93)	1 (0.40)	38 (5.11)
Impact	UBX Run	5	13 (1.65)	0 (0)	6 (1.20)
	Montsdeoca Run	18	11 (1.03)	1 (1.19)	13 (2.92)
	Oxbow13 Run	11	24 (1.77)	2 (0.99)	47 (7.82)
	Micco Bluff Run	28	14 (1.15)	7 (1.59)	25 (3.18)
	MacArthur Run	24	11 (0.74)	0 (0.25)	15 (3.49)
	Impact Total	86	14 (0.71)	3 (0.65)	21 (2.17)
New	Fulford Run	3	0 (0.04)	56 (4.47)	0 (0.00)
	Strayer Run	6	7 (2.29)	4 (1.39)	14 (4.96)
	Oxbow13 (recarved)	3	1 (0.43)	28 (11.77)	0 (0.17)
	Loftin Run	5	2 (0.86)	10 (4.80)	4 (1.76)
	New total	17	4 (1.07)	19(5.32)	6 (2.26)
Connector	Montsdeoca-Fulford Connector	1	2	28	0
	Strayer-Fulford Connector	1	1	41	4
	Oxbow13-Micco Connector	1	4	33	1
	Loftin-Micco Connector	2	6 (1.46)	11 (0.36)	2 (0.50)
	Connector total	5	4 (1.27)	25 (6.01)	2 (0.68)

Table 3-7. Coefficient of determination (R^2), F statistics, variance components (S^2), and mean square error for nested ANOVAs on mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits (Thickness), percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits (Percent), and thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg (Thalweg). Nested ANOVA included three factors: channel type (AREA), runs nested within area RUN(AREA), and channel pattern (PATTERN). Values in parentheses are the percentage of the total variance explained by the variance component.

Metric	AREA			RUN(AREA)		PATTERN		MSE
	R^2	F ¹	S ²	F ¹	S ²	F ¹	S ²	
Thickness	0.62	5.7*	27.7 (22)	7.5**	65.8 (53)	0.3	0 (0)	30.3 (24)
ArcPercent	0.65	5.3*	0.02 (22)	9.5**	0.05 (58)	0.8	0 (0)	0.02 (20)
Lthalweg	0.54	23.4*	0.5 (20)	5.4**	1.1 (46)	1.6	0.08 (3)	0.8 (31)
df		3		9		1		115

¹ Significant differences are indicated by * (p <0.05) and ** (p <0.01).

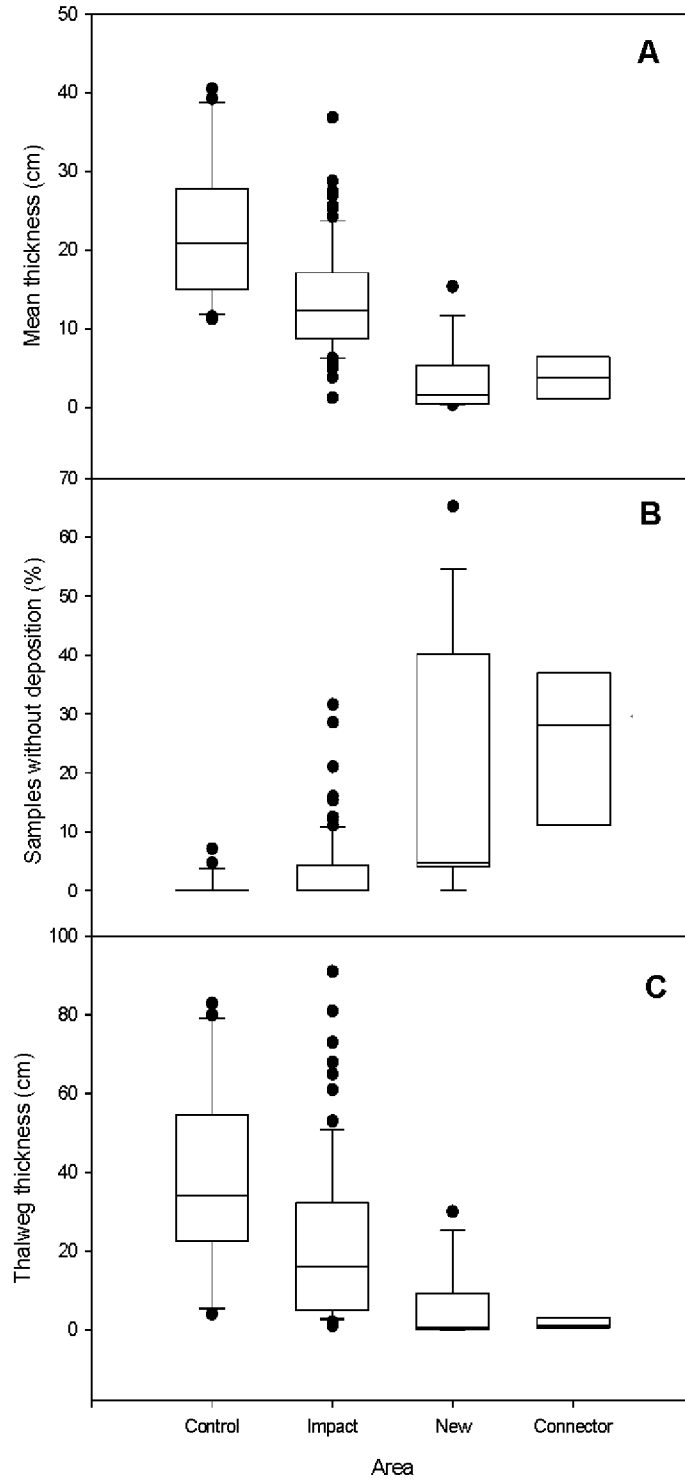


Figure 3-8. Box plots of mean thickness (A), percent of samples without deposition (B) and thalweg thickness (C) for each channel type. Horizontal lines represent the median values, the ends of the boxes represent the 25th and 75th percentiles, and the error bars indicate the 10th and 90th percentiles. Circles indicate values outside the 10th and 90th percentiles.

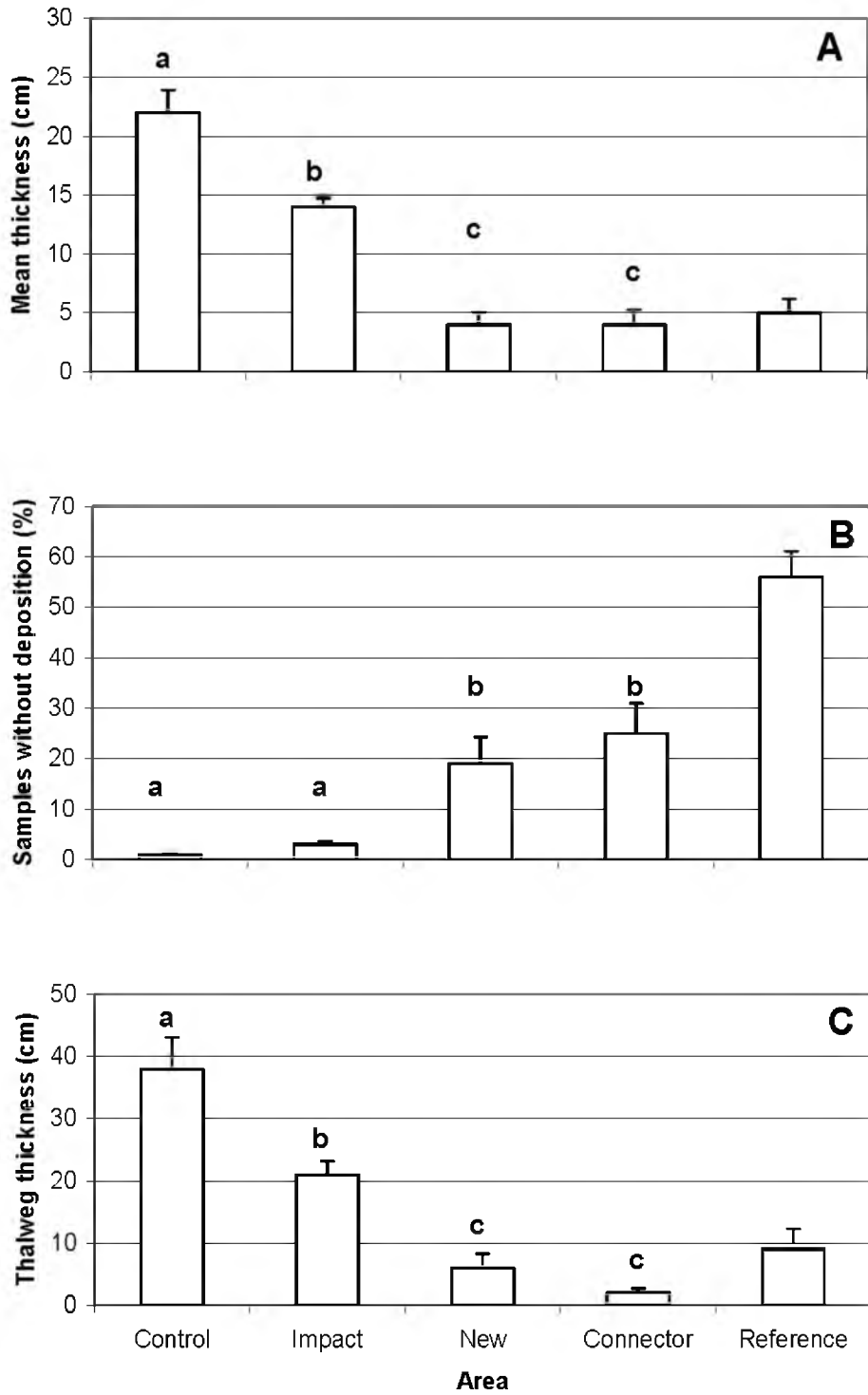


Figure 3-9. Mean (+SE) values for mean thickness of substrate-overlying layer on a transect (A), percentage of samples without a substrate-overlying layer on a transect (B), and thickness of the substrate-overlying layer at the thalweg of each transect (C) for control, impact, new and connector channel types. Reference is for the Demonstration Project data. Different letters identify which baseline channel types were significantly different (Tukey's HSD, $p < 0.01$).

Prospective Power Analysis

Estimates of the minimum detectable difference showed similar relationships to sample size and β for mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits, percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits, and thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg (Figure 3-10). For all three metrics, the minimum detectable difference decreased with increasing sample size, especially for sample sizes <10 . Minimum detectable difference increased with increasing values of β until $n = 10$, and then β had little effect on the minimum detectable difference.

We compared the minimum detectable difference from the power analysis with the changes that would need to occur in order for the baseline values in the Impact area to attain the reference values. For this comparison, we used the minimum detectable difference for each metric when $n = 80$, $\alpha = 0.05$, and $\beta = 0.1$. To attain the reference value of 5 cm, the baseline value for mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits of 14 cm would have to decrease by 9 cm, which is larger than the minimum detectable difference of 3 cm. To attain the reference value of 56%, the baseline value for percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits of 3% would have to increase by 53%, which is larger than the minimum detectable difference of 6%. To attain the reference value of 9 cm, the baseline value for thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg of 21 cm would have to decrease by 12 cm, which is larger than the minimum detectable difference of 9 cm. For all three metrics, the minimum detectable difference is smaller than the expected change based on the difference between the baseline value for the Impact area and the reference value, so the current sampling design should be adequate to detect these changes in the Impact area if they occur.

Riparian Characteristics

Riparian soil core samples from Control and Impact areas were similar in composition (Figure 3-11). In the Control area, sand-muck combinations comprised 31.7% of the cores, followed by muck (28%), sand (21%), mucky sand (11.7%), and sandy muck (10.8%). In the Impact area, sand-muck combinations comprised 22.94% of the layers, followed by sand (25%), muck (17.42%), mucky sand (15.77%) sandy muck (11.90%) and peat (7.10%).

Color analyses of riparian soils in both Control and Impact areas indicated large amounts of organic material. A black color (10yr 2/1) was the most prevalent and accounted for 17% of the layers in the Control area and 7% in the Impact area. The next largest percentage was dark gray (10yr 3/1), which was present in 13% of the layers in the Control area and 11% in the Impact area (Table 3-8).

Approximately 100 plant species were identified at riparian soil core sample locations. Only 16 species were present in more than 5% of sample locations in each remnant river run (Table 3-9), and nine of those were present in both the Control and Impact area. *Vitis spp* (wild grape) was found in the highest percentage in the Impact area followed by *Myrica cerifera* (Wax myrtle) and *Paspalum notatum* (Bahia grass). In the Control area, *Panicum hemitomon* (maidencane) was the most common species found, but *Baccharis halimifolia* (salt bush) and *Paspalum notatum* were common in Rattlesnake Hammock, and *Urena lobata* (Caesar weed) was abundant in Ice Cream Slough.

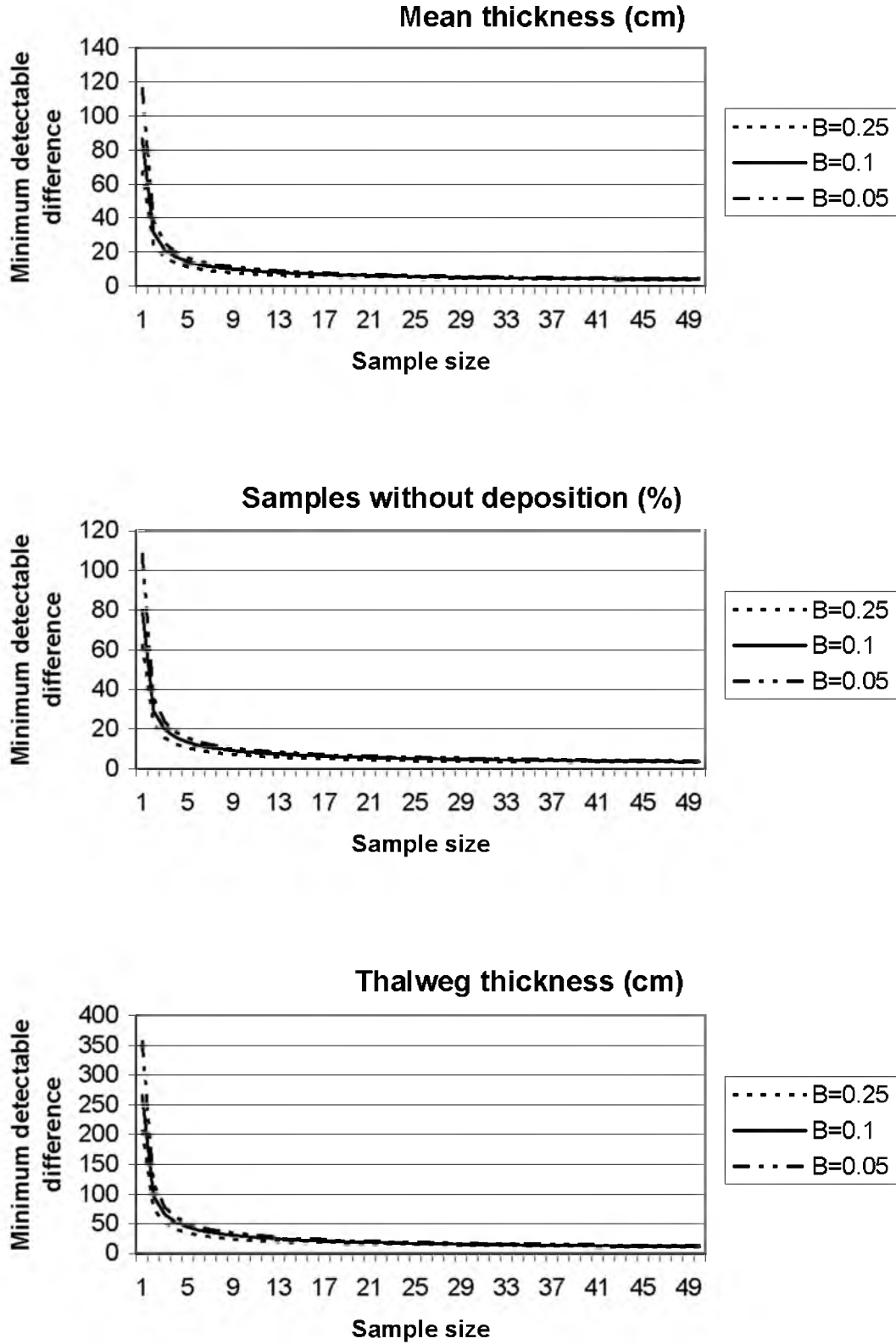


Figure 3-10. Minimum detectable difference versus sample size from a power analysis on mean thickness of the substrate-overlying layer (A), percent of samples without substrate overlying deposits (B), and thalweg substrate-overlying layer thickness (C), when $\alpha = 0.05$ and for three levels of β .

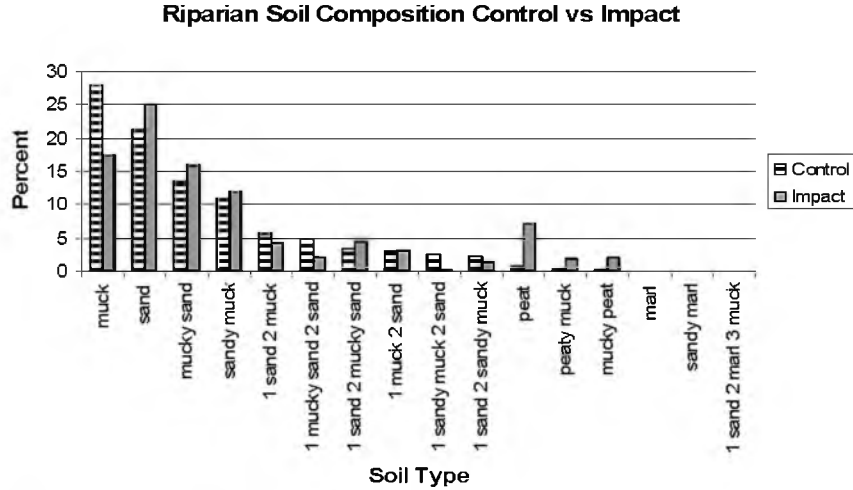


Figure 3-11. Riparian soil composition, Control vs. Impact. Percentages are based on total number of core samples taken from the Control and Impact area.

Table 3-8. Percent of sampled layers belonging to Munsell soil colors (hue, value, chroma) for riparian soils in all core samples in the Control and Impact areas. Others category includes all soil colors represented by fewer than 1% of all samples.

Color	Munsell Color	Percent	
		Control	Impact
Black	GL1 2.5/N	4	
Dark Brown	7.5yr 3/3		2
Dark Brown	7.5yr 3/2		3
Very Dark Gray	7.5yr 3/1		4
Black	7.5yr 2.5/1		2
Reddish Gray	2.5y 5/1	1	
Dark Reddish Gray	2.5y 3/1		1
Reddish Black	2.5y 2.5/1		1
White/Very Dark Gray*	10yr 8/1, 10yr 3/1*	3	
White	10yr 8/1	1	4
Light Gray/Very Dark Gray*	10yr 7/2, 10yr 3/1*		2
Light Gray	10yr 7/2	3	4
Light Gray/Dark Gray*	10yr 7/1, 10yr 4/1*	1	
Light Gray/Very Dark Gray*	10yr 7/1, 10yr 3/1*	4	2
Light gray	10yr 7/1	2	2
Gray	10yr 6/1		3
Gray	10yr 5/1		2
Dark Gray	10yr 4/1	2	5
Very Dark Grayish Brown	10yr 3/2	5	2
Very Dark Brown/Gray*	10yr 3/1, 10yr 6/1*	2	1
Very Dark Brown/ Grayish Brown*	10yr 3/1, 10yr 5/2*	1	
Very Dark Gray	10yr 3/1	13	11
Very Dark Brown	10yr 2/2		2
Black/Light Brownish Gray*	10yr 2/1, 10yr 6/2*	1	
Black	10yr 2/1	17	7
	Others	38	40

* Layered soil containing two colors.

CHAPTER 3 GEOMORPHOLOGY

Table 3-9. Percentage of samples with different riparian vegetation species present for each run of the Impact and Control areas. Only vegetation species present in more than 5% of the samples from any river run are shown.

Species	Impact			Control			
	MacArthur	Micco	Oxbow 13	Montsdeoca	Persimmon	Rattlesnake	Ice Cream
<i>Acer rubrum</i>	2.93	6.5	0	0			
<i>Ambrosia artemisifolia</i>					1.58	6.67	5.21
<i>Baccharis halimifolia</i>					4.42	14.67	1.04
<i>Eupatorium capillifolium</i>	0.49	1.42	5.98	0.24	2.21	6	4.17
<i>Hydrocotyle umbellata</i>					1.26	8	3.13
<i>Ludwigia peruviana</i>					6.62	0	6.77
<i>Myrica cerifera</i>	21.52	13.01	5.98	8.19	9.46	3.33	2.6
<i>Panicum hemitomom</i>	4.16	4.27	5.13	2.89	8.52	12.67	17.19
<i>Paspalum notatum</i>	0	11.99	10.26	8.91	4.1	12	3.13
<i>Pteridophyta spp.</i>	6.6	5.08	0	0.24			
<i>Rubus cuneifolius</i>	2.69	0.61	7.69	4.82	9.46	6.67	0
<i>Sambucus canadensis</i>	1.22	2.64	6.84	5.06	4.42	1.33	8.33
<i>Schinus terebinthifolios</i>	0.49	6.91	5.13	10.6	0	1.33	6.25
<i>Sida acuta</i>					0.63	4.67	8.33
<i>Urena lobata</i>	5.38	6.5	7.69	5.54	3.47	0.67	10.94
<i>Vitis spp.</i>	17.11	6.71	23.08	10.12	5.68	0	2.6

DISCUSSION

Impacts of Channelization

Our study quantified the impacts of channelization on the geomorphology of the Kissimmee River. We attribute these impacts primarily to the near elimination of flow through channel remnants by diverting the flow of water from the river channel to the C-38 canal (Figure 3-1). While some flow occurs in remnant channels because of inputs from overland flow or small tributaries (e.g., Oak Creek in Micco Bluff Run, Istokpoga Canal in MacArthur Run), these flow events were probably of low volume and short duration. The resulting stagnation in remnant river channels suspended the natural channel-shaping geomorphic processes of sediment transport and deposition. Thus, it is not surprising that we found little evidence that channelization altered the overall shape of cross-sections of remnants of the natural river channel. While we lack pre-channelization data for comparison, we believe that morphometry based on the channel bed substratum (e.g., Z_{sub} , w/d_{sub} , shape of cross-sectional profile, and cross-sectional area to substratum) reflects the natural channel condition.

Channelization did affect two major aspects of river channel geomorphology: point bar formation and organic deposition within the river channel. Point bars regularly form along the inside of meander bends (Leopold 1994) and were present on all meander bends in pre-channelization aerial photographs of the Kissimmee River (D. Frei, personal observation). We did not observe point bars on any meander bends in post-channelization aerial photographs although remnant bars are evident in cross-sections of curved channels (e.g., Figure 3-2). We suggest that elimination of flow has halted sand transport and deposition required to extend point bars and that lack of flow and stabilized water levels have allowed vegetation to colonize extant point bars. In post-channelization aerial photographs, all meander bends were overgrown with vegetation. Thus, stabilized water levels and vegetation hid remnant point bars.

River channel substratum was altered by deposition of organic matter on the channel bottom. Our ability to interpret the presence of these deposits as an impact of channelization is based on three assumptions: (1) that we could distinguish between organic deposits and channel bed substratum, (2) that the substratum layer represents the pre-channelization channel bottom, and (3) that the substrate-overlying deposits represent relatively recent (post-channelization) deposition. These assumptions seem reasonable based on several pieces of evidence. First, composition of the substrate-overlying deposits differed from that of the substratum based on color and appearance so that the two layers could be distinguished easily. These differences were supported by color analysis of all sublayers and by chemical analyses of select sediment classes, especially marl and sand. Second, the substratum layer was composed primarily of sand

and mucky sand, and we know that sand of the same medium- and fine-sized particles was the primary constituent of river channel sediments prior to channelization (U. S. House of Representatives 1902, Warne et al. 2000). Also, our cross-sectional plots of the substratum layer appear to capture the shape of the historic channel and exhibit little evidence of sloughing of channel banks, and the shape of the cross-sectional profile for curved channels is consistent with the direction of the curve in plan view. Third, fine organic particles composing much of the substrate-overlying depositional layer are unlikely to have accumulated prior to channelization because flows competent to transport these particles (i.e., bankfull discharge) occurred regularly and for long periods of time (Toth et al. 2002). Fourth, changes in flow, which regulates entrainment and deposition of sediments, provide a mechanism to account for the presence of extensive deposits in the upper layer of the river channel bed post-channelization. Finally, this mechanism is consistent with observations during the Demonstration Project, which reestablished flow to several remnant river channels (Toth 1993).

The primary constituents of substrate-overlying deposits were organic muck and muck detritus. These organic sediments most likely were produced by decomposition of aquatic macrophytes that expanded their coverage of remnant river channels in the absence of flow. These macrophytes included: emergent species such as spatterdock (*Nuphar lutea*) and smartweed (*Polygonum densiflorum*); mat-forming species such as Cuban bulrush (*Scirpus cubensis*); and freely floating aquatic vegetation (FFAV) such as water hyacinth (*Eichhornia crassipes*) and water lettuce (*Pistia stratiotes*). As these plants die and begin to decompose they serve as a source of organic deposition. The high proportion of fine muck sediments relative to the coarser muck detritus in the substrate-overlying depositional layer is consistent with rapid breakdown of macrophytes in warm waters (reviewed in Grimshaw 2002). Freely floating aquatic vegetation was likely an important source of organic deposition because it could cover much of the midchannel area and was treated with herbicides beginning in 1983 (Grimshaw 2002). Herbicides have been used to control the cover of freely floating aquatic vegetation, and an average of 791 ha (range of 347 ha to 1578 ha) was treated between 1983 and 1998 (Grimshaw 2002). Initiation of maintenance control in 1988 significantly reduced the size of the area requiring herbicide treatment each year (Grimshaw 2002) and by limiting the amount of organic production probably reduced the amount of organic deposition each year (e.g., Joyce 1985).

Another component of the substrate-overlying deposits was inorganic marl. Chemical analysis showed that this material had the characteristics of marl (high carbonate content with clay minerals). Presence of dolomite suggests a clastic origin for the carbonate. When marl was present, it usually occurred between the substratum layer and the more recently deposited organic layers (see Digital Appendix on attached CD). Thus, it is possible that marl deposition was associated with construction of the C-38 canal. Core borings near S-65 (well OSF-52), S-65A (well PDF-20), and S-65C (well OKF-42) contained shell beds and other potential sources of carbonate material within the top 9 m (Shaw and Trost 1984), which might have been exposed during excavation of the canal. Dredging material from the canal may have suspended marl in the water and transported it into the remnant channel, or it may have become entrained in runoff from spoil mounds on the canal bank, which carried it to the remnant channel. Physical and chemical analyses show that marl from the substrate-overlying deposits differs from sand in the river channel and is more similar to spoil excavated from the canal. Differences in chemical composition may be related to differential weathering of marl deposited on the bank in exposed spoil piles and that deposited in remnant river channels.

New channels and connector channels were carved during Phase I of the restoration project, and their characteristics reflect design criteria and their relatively young age. These channels contain much thinner substrate-overlying deposits than remnant channels, and these thin deposits probably represent deposition transported from remnant channels when flow was restored.

We characterized the effects of post-channelization deposition on channel morphology (depth, width/depth ratio, cross-sectional area) by using the depth to substratum, which we believe represents the natural channel bottom, and the depth to the substrate-overlying deposits. Deposits tended to have relatively small effects on metrics that describe channel shape because the deposits are thin relative to the width and depth of the channel. We created three metrics to characterize directly the channel substratum, and the utility of these new metrics partially reflects how each is calculated. One is an average (mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits), one is a percentage (percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits), and one is a single value from a specific location on each transect (thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg). Because it is an average, mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits has the best sampling characteristics. It provides a precise estimate for a transect

(standard error typically <20% of the mean) because of the high sample size of >20 samples for most transects and because it does not appear to violate the assumptions for ANOVA. We did not evaluate precision for percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits or thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg, because these metrics are not calculated as an average. Also, both metrics required transformation to meet the assumptions for ANOVA. All three had reasonable power to detect changes due to restoration based on the differences between the baseline values for the Impact area and the reference values. Thus, all three should be useful for restoration evaluation.

Substrate-overlying deposits represent an accumulation of organic matter over time, and the quantity of deposition at any point in time depends on the balance between inputs (import from upstream, macrophyte death) and losses (downstream export, microbial activity). We did not attempt to quantify the rate of change during the baseline period, and we sampled each transect only once to establish a baseline for evaluating changes during restoration. This approach implicitly assumes that the quantity of deposition remains fairly constant over the approximately three-year period that we sampled, which immediately preceded the restoration project. This assumption is reasonable because the inputs in any given year were likely to be small (e.g., Joyce 1995) compared to the total amount of deposition. Also, the change in loading with maintenance control for FFAV occurred a decade earlier.

We used ANOVA to investigate spatial variability of the three metrics at three scales: among channel types (AREA), among runs nested within channel types (RUN(AREA)), and among curved and straight channels (PATTERN). This statistical model accounted for at least 50% of the variation in three metrics: mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits, the arc sin of percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits and the natural logarithm of thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg. AREA and RUN(AREA) were significantly different for all three metrics but PATTERN was never significant, and RUN(AREA) always accounted for at least twice as much of the variability as AREA, which suggests that runs are more variable than Impact and Control channel types. Mean values for new and connector channels were never different from each other, but they were different from the remnant channels, which probably reflect the young age of these constructed channels, and the lack of opportunity for macrophyte growth and detritus deposition to occur. Mean values for Control channels differed from those for Impact channels for metrics describing the amount of deposition (mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits, thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg) but not for percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposition. This difference between Control and Impact areas may reflect higher rates of deposition in the Control area, which is consistent with greater vegetation cover in the Control area (Bousquin 2005).

The thickness of substrate-overlying deposits varies in thickness between runs, which may reflect differences in inflows, riparian vegetation, and frequency of aquatic plant (weed) management activity in remnant river channels. Thinner deposits tend to occur in runs that have had at least some flow since channelization (i.e., MacArthur, Micco Bluff, Montsdeoca, and UBX). Also, these runs typically have greater coverage of tall riparian vegetation (shrubs and trees) along both riverbanks than runs with thicker substrate-overlying depositional layers, which are largely flanked by pasture (Table 3-10). Tall riparian trees and shrubs can shade aquatic vegetation and limit its growth. The thickness of substrate-overlying deposits also may be affected by aquatic plant management activities such as the use of herbicides to control vegetation cover, which may limit the amount of deposition.

The accumulation of organic matter in remnant river channels has important consequences for other components of the Kissimmee River ecosystem and thus, for ecological integrity. The near uniform covering of the river channel reduces the substratum diversity available for aquatic invertebrates (Harris et al. 1995) contributing to their low diversity (Koebel et al. 2005). It also reduces the area of appropriate nesting habitat for fish (Trexler 1995). Organic deposition also provides an abundant substrate for microbial respiration, which contributes to depressed concentrations of dissolved oxygen observed in remnant river channels during the baseline period (Colangelo and Jones 2005). We expect oxygen consumption by the substrate-overlying depositional layer to increase with temperature because of increased microbial activity. That increase in microbial activity helps explain the seasonal patterns of dissolved oxygen, although other factors such as seasonal solubility also are important. Oxygen consumption by organic deposits also helps account for the vertical gradient of decreasing oxygen concentration with depth (Perrin et al. 1982, Toth 1993, Colangelo and Jones 2005). Belanger et al. (1994) conservatively estimated oxygen consumption in core samples of benthic sediments for one remnant channel in Pool C (Impact area) and found an average consumption rate of $0.037 \text{ g O}_2 \text{ m}^{-2} \text{ h}^{-1}$ (range of $0.003\text{--}0.094 \text{ g O}_2 \text{ m}^{-2} \text{ h}^{-1}$) for three dates in June–August 1994. It is difficult to interpret the significance of

CHAPTER 3 GEOMORPHOLOGY

this estimate of the oxygen demand by benthic sediments without understanding its spatial and temporal variability or the relative magnitude of other processes (e.g., reaeration) that can influence dissolved oxygen concentrations. Nonetheless, oxygen consumption by organic deposits in the river channel does contribute to low oxygen concentrations in remnant river channels. It therefore indirectly affects redox conditions, which can profoundly influence biogeochemical processes, especially at the sediment water interface. The extent to which this occurs will require further study.

Table 3-10. Inflow and riparian characteristics of remnant river channels in the Control and Impact areas, new channels, and connector runs.

<i>Control Area</i>
Ice Cream Slough: West bank shrubs and pasture, east bank shrubs.
Rattlesnake Hammock: West bank primarily pasture with some shrubs, east bank shrubs. Very low inflows from a culvert that drains Rattlesnake Hammock Marsh.
Persimmon Mound: West bank shrubs, east bank primarily pasture with some shrubs. Some minor tributary inflow.
<i>Impact Area</i>
UBX: Both banks covered primarily with willow and wetland vegetation. Periodically transported low flow (<100 cfs) to a culvert at its south end during some post-channelization years but has not carried flow since 1990.
Montsdeoca: West bank primarily pasture with some shrubs, east bank primarily hardwoods and shrubs. Receives some inflow from drainage canals and a culvert in the S-65B tieback levee.
Oxbow 13: West bank pasture, east bank shrubs. Short run, close to C-38 throughout entire course.
Micco Bluff: Heavily wooded on west bank with mix of shrubs, hardwoods and palmettos. East bank primarily pasture with some hardwoods and shrubs. Receives tributary inflow from Oak Creek and Starvation Slough.
MacArthur: Most heavily wooded run in Pool C. Primarily bounded by shrubs and hardwoods. Receives some inflow from Istokpoga Canal.
<i>Recarved runs</i>
Fulford Run: West bank with Wax myrtle (<i>Myrica cerifera</i>) and Brazilian pepper (<i>Schinus terebinthifolius</i>).
Strayer Run: Mostly ungrazed pasture with dogfennel (<i>Eupatorium</i>).
Obow 13 RC: Mostly grazed Bahia grass (<i>Paspalum notatum</i>) pasture on the west bank and bare spoil of backfilled canal on the east.
Loftin Run: Wax myrtle (<i>Myrica cerifera</i>). Both sides have Primrose willow (<i>Ludwigia peruviana</i>) and some Brazilian pepper (<i>Schinus terebinthifolius</i>) and some Coastal plain willow (<i>Salix caroliniana</i>).
<i>Connectors</i>
Montsdeoca-Fulford Connector: Initially barren spoil on both sides of the channel.
Strayer-Fulford Connector: Initially barren spoil on both sides of the channel.
Oxbow 13 – Micco Connector: Initially barren spoil on both sides of the channel.
Loftin-Micco Connector: Initially barren spoil on both sides of the channel.

Expectations for the Restored River

Expectations for geomorphology in the restored river should focus on attributes that are likely to respond to restoration and have reference conditions. The restoration project is designed to reconnect remnant river channels and to reestablish a hydrologic regime that mimics pre-channelization conditions, which should initiate natural processes of sediment transport and deposition. These processes should create active point bars on most meanders. Also, flow should reduce the quantity of organic deposits on the

channel substratum either by burial or by entrainment and export downstream to the canal. Reestablishing flow should also reduce the input of organic detritus by reducing vegetation cover. An expectation for point bar formation was developed based on aerial photography taken before channelization and states that “Point bars will form on the inside bends of river channel meanders with an arc angle $>70^\circ$ ” (Frei et al. 2005). In the absence of historical data for the Kissimmee River, expectations for organic deposition in the river channel (Anderson et al. 2005) are based on data from the Pool B Demonstration Project such as were presented as the reference in Figure 3-9. This expectation states that “In remnant river channels, mean thickness of substrate-overlying river bed deposits will decrease by $\geq 65\%$, percent of samples without substrate-overlying river bed deposits will increase by $\geq 165\%$, and the thickness of substrate-overlying river bed deposits at the thalweg will decrease by $\geq 70\%$.” There are two caveats for using Demonstration Project data for reference conditions. First, the Demonstration Project did not completely reestablish the pre-channelization hydrologic characteristics to remnant river channels. Second, when the three metrics for substrate-overlying deposits were calculated for several years of reference data, they showed consistent increases (percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits) or decreases (mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits, thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg) for four years, indicating that the reference values may not have reached a new equilibrium with the new flow regime (Anderson et al. 2005). Thus, the reference condition for substrate-overlying deposits is conservative, and using Demonstration Project data as the reference condition may conservatively estimate ecological integrity in the Kissimmee River. The power analysis for mean thickness of substrate-overlying deposits, percent of samples without substrate-overlying deposits, and thickness of substrate-overlying deposits at the thalweg suggests that the existing design is more than adequate to detect changes in all three metrics from the baseline value to the reference values proposed in Figure 3-9.

Future Studies

River channels are dynamic systems, which are constantly undergoing adjustment to changes in inputs of water and sediment, and this was true of the Kissimmee River prior to channelization (Warne et al. 2000). We have proposed two attributes (point bar formation and organic deposition in the river channel) for which specific expectations have been developed to evaluate the restoration of the Kissimmee River. Future studies of river channel geomorphology also should consider changes in channel morphology that might represent continued adjustments to flow, especially if these changes impact other aspects of the river ecosystem. For example, reestablishing flow during the Demonstration Project resulted in one unexpected channel cutoff event in the remnant channel adjacent to weir 3 (Scarlatos et al. 1990). Sedimentation and stability of river channels were two major components outlined in the monitoring programs for the Kissimmee River Restoration Project (U. S. Army Corps of Engineers 1991).

Once flow is reestablished, point bar formation will be much more dynamic than during the baseline period, and additional sampling effort may be required to capture these changes. This effort may include more frequent aerial photography (e.g., yearly), which also might be used to capture changes in vegetation. We used aerial photography only to determine the presence or absence of active point bars. More detailed information about point bar dynamics may require establishing additional transects on a few meander bends that could be sampled with greater frequency (e.g., after major flow events, end of wet season). Such a study would help link geomorphic changes to hydrologic drivers.

Restoring ecological integrity to the Kissimmee River requires reestablishment of natural river functions. Once flow is reestablished, the river channel, especially in recarved sections, is likely to undergo a period of adjustment to the new hydrologic regime, which will be reflected in changes in several different characteristics (e.g., sinuosity, width–depth ratio, entrenchment ratio, meander patterns). While we do not have specific expectations for how these characteristics will change in the restored river, quantifying these changes may help characterize the ecological integrity of the restored Kissimmee River, and may provide insights into other changes observed during the restoration. Special consideration should be given to measuring the stability of new river channels and connector channels, which might be accomplished with visual observations and depth measurements using the permanent transects laid out for this study. Surveys that established elevations for fixed points would enhance the value of these transects.

Our results show that connector runs differ morphologically from remnant river channels, and these differences may influence ecosystem function. Connector runs are about twice as wide as remnant channels (Table 3-3), and assuming that both channel types have the same depth, mean velocity across the channel cross-section in a connector run will have to be about half that of the remnant channel to carry the

CHAPTER 3 GEOMORPHOLOGY

same discharge. In connector runs, the lowest velocities are likely to occur in the shallowest portions of the channel, especially along the northern side. These shallow, low velocity areas may be colonized by macrophytes or by benthic algae and may accumulate small quantities of fine particulate organic matter. Thus, these areas may become hotspots of benthic productivity within the restored river channel, which can serve to attract larger invertebrates (e.g., crayfish and grass shrimp), fish, and wading birds. Ultimately, the influence of connector runs on higher trophic levels will depend on their contribution to the habitat mosaic within the restored river channel. Understanding this contribution to the restoration project will require a longitudinal view of the river, which we have only begun to develop in this baseline geomorphology study.

Future studies should consider how geomorphology is linked to at least four other components of the ecosystem. First, hydrologic changes are expected to drive changes in the geomorphology of the restored river, and the linkage should be clarified. Second, changes in the quantity of organic deposition within the river channel is likely to be influenced by the amount of vegetation within the river channel, which is being measured on the same transects in the river channel vegetation study (Bousquin 2005). Third, reducing the amount of organic deposition within the river channel should reduce sediment oxygen demand, and changes in the quantity of deposition might be linked to changes in water column dissolved oxygen. Direct measurements of benthic respiration may clarify this linkage. Finally, reduction in the thickness and extent of the organic deposition in the river channel should enhance habitat quality for fish and invertebrates, and this linkage might be quantified.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Andrew G. Warne assisted with the original design of this study. Many people, especially R. Harper Carroll IV and Kim Kanter, spent long hours collecting core samples. Rene Hartless produced the graphs of the channel cross-sections. Colleen Chennell measured the channel cross-sectional areas. Bonnie Rose produced the maps. Discussions with Stephen G. Bousquin helped clarify relationships to the channel vegetation study. Jose J. Valdes helped clarify local geology. This chapter was benefited by comments from Arthur C. Benke, Clifford N. Dahm, Louis A. Toth, Joseph W. Koebel Jr. Jose J. Valdes, Martha Nungesser, Gary E. Williams, and David J. Colangelo.

LITERATURE CITED

- Anderson, D. H., and J. R. Chamberlain. 2005. Impacts of channelization on the hydrology of the Kissimmee River, Florida. Chapter 2 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Anderson, D. H., D. Frei, and W. P. Davis 2005. River channel bed deposits. *In* D. H. Anderson, S. G. Bousquin, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Defining success: expectations for restoration of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Expectation 6. Technical Publication ERA #433.
- Belanger, T. W., H. Heck, and C. Kennedy. 1994. Dissolved oxygen field studies in the Kissimmee River system. Final Report for Contract C-3205 to the South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach Florida, USA.
- Bousquin, S. G. 2005. Littoral vegetation in the channelized Kissimmee River. Chapter 7 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Brussock, P. P., A. V. Brown, and J. C. Dixon. 1985. Channel form and stream ecosystem models. *Water Resources Bulletin* 21:859-866.
- Colangelo, D. J., and B. L. Jones. 2005. Dissolved oxygen in the channelized Kissimmee River and seven reference streams. Chapter 4 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Davis, W. P., and A. D. Steinman. 1998. A lightweight, inexpensive benthic core sampler for use in shallow water. *Journal of Freshwater Ecology* 13:475-479.
- Frei, D., W. P. Davis, and D. H. Anderson. 2005. Sand deposition and point bar formation inside river channel bends. River channel substrate characteristics. *In* D. H. Anderson, S. G. Bousquin, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Defining success: expectations for restoration of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Expectation 7. Technical Publication ERA #433.
- Grimshaw, H. J. 2002. Nutrient release and detritus production by herbicide-treated freely floating aquatic vegetation in a large, shallow subtropical lake and river. *Archiv für Hydrobiologie* 153:469-490.
- Harris, S. C., T. H. Martin, and K. W. Cummins. 1995. A model for aquatic invertebrate response to Kissimmee River restoration. *Restoration Ecology* 3:181-194.
- Joyce, J. C. 1985. Benefits of maintenance control of water hyacinth. *Aquatics* 7:11-13.
- Knighton, D. 1998. *Fluvial forms and processes*. Arnold, London, UK.
- Koebel, J. W. 1995. An historical perspective on the Kissimmee River Restoration Project. *Restoration Ecology* 3:149-159.
- Koebel, J. W., D. H. Anderson, and L. M. Rojas. 2005. Aquatic invertebrate community structure and functional characteristics in the Kissimmee River-floodplain ecosystem: baseline and reference conditions and expectations for restoration. Chapter 11 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Leopold, L. B. 1994. *A view of the river*. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts, USA.

CHAPTER 3 GEOMORPHOLOGY

- Milleson, J. F., R. L. Goodrick, and J. A. Van Arman. 1980. Plant communities of the Kissimmee River valley. Technical Publication 80-7. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Olson-Rutz, K. M., and C. B. Marlow. 1992. Analysis and interpretation of stream channel cross-sectional data. *North American Journal of Fisheries Management* 12:55-61.
- Perrin, L. S., M. J. Allen, L. A. Rowse, F. Montalbano, K. J. Foote, and M. W. Olinde. 1982. A report of fish and wildlife studies in the Kissimmee River Basin and recommendations for restoration. Florida Game and Fresh Water Fish Commission, Okeechobee, Florida, USA.
- Quinn, G. P., and M. J. Keough. 2002. Experimental design and data analysis for biologists. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.
- Rosgen, D. 1996. Applied river morphology. *Wildlife Hydrology*. Wildland Hydrology Books Inc., Pagosa Springs, Colorado, USA.
- Scarlatos, P. D., M. K. Loftin, and J. T. B. Obeysekera. 1990. Restoration hydraulics: hydraulic energy gradients along preproject and revitalized river sections. Pages 223-237 *in* M. K. Loftin, L. A. Toth, and J. T. B. Obeysekera, editors. Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Shaw, J. E., and S. M. Trost. 1984. Hydrogeology of the Kissimmee Planning Area, South Florida Water Management District. Technical Publication 84-1. South Florida Water Management District. West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Strahler, A.N. 1957. Quantitative Analysis of Watershed Geomorphology. *Transactions of the American Geophysical Union* 38:913-920.
- Toth, L. A. 1991. Environmental responses to the Kissimmee River demonstration project. Technical Publication 91-02. South Florida Water Management District. West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Toth, L. A. 1993. The ecological basis of the Kissimmee River restoration plan. *Florida Scientist* 56:25-51.
- Toth, L. A., J. W. Koebel, A. G. Warne, and J. Chamberlain. 2002. Implications of reestablishing prolonged flood pulse characteristics for restoration of the Kissimmee River and floodplain ecosystem. Pages 191-221 *in* B. Middleton, editor. Flood pulsing in wetlands: restoring the natural hydrologic balance. John Wiley and Sons, New York, New York, USA.
- Trexler, J. C. 1995. Restoration of the Kissimmee River: a conceptual model of past and present fish communities and its consequences for evaluating restoration success. *Restoration Ecology* 3:195-210.
- Underwood, A. J. 1997. Experiments in ecology. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.
- U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. 1991. Final integrated feasibility report and environmental impact statement, environmental restoration Kissimmee River, Florida. U. S. Army Corps of Engineers, Jacksonville, Florida, USA.
- U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. 1998. Kissimmee River Florida Project Contract 7- Plans for Construction of Reach 1 Backfill and Pool B Local Levee Modifications. D.O. File Numbers 700-37,692 and 700-37,686. Jacksonville District, U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. Jacksonville, Florida, USA.
- U. S. House of Representatives, Committee on Rivers and Harbors. 1902. Examination and survey of Kissimmee River, Florida, etc. Document No. 176, 57th Congress, 1st session.
- Vannote, R. L. 1973. Biological evaluation of Kissimmee River Project. Pages 15-26 - 15-33 *in* Arthur D. Little, Inc. Field evaluation No. 15 Kissimmee River (Central and Southern Florida project). Report on Channel Modifications. Volume II: Field Evaluations. Submitted to the Council on Environmental Quality. U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D. C., USA.
- Warne, A. G., L. A. Toth, and W. A. White. 2000. Drainage-basin-scale geomorphic analysis to determine reference conditions for ecological restoration - Kissimmee River, Florida. *Geological Society of America Bulletin* 112:884-899.

CHAPTER 3 GEOMORPHOLOGY

Zar, J. H. 1984. Biostatistical analysis. Second edition. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey, USA.



CHAPTER 4

DISSOLVED OXYGEN IN THE CHANNELIZED KISSIMMEE RIVER AND SEVEN REFERENCE STREAMS

David J. Colangelo and Bradley L. Jones

*Kissimmee Division, Watershed Management Department, South Florida Water Management District,
West Palm Beach, FL 33406*

ABSTRACT: Dissolved oxygen (DO) is an important component for evaluating success of the Kissimmee River Restoration Project because it is essential to the metabolism of most aquatic organisms and because chronically low DO concentrations have been observed since channelization. Seven remnant river channel stations and two canal (C-38) stations were sampled continuously, monthly, or weekly between March 1996 and June 1999. Remnant river channel DO data were used to establish a baseline for comparison with reference data. These data were used to estimate pre-channelized conditions, and will be compared with post-construction data collected in the future. Reference streams were chosen for their similarities to the pre-channelized Kissimmee River. Water quality stations covered a large geographic area and provided the scale needed for in-depth DO regime studies. Baseline period mean DO concentrations were consistently low at all stations; however, dry season (December–May) concentrations were slightly higher than wet season (June–November) concentrations. Dissolved Oxygen depth profiles exhibited a clinograde pattern at certain times of the year. Mean DO concentrations for the reference streams ranged from 2.4 to 6.0 mg/L during the wet season and from 3.7 to 7.4 mg/L during the dry season. Comparison of reference streams to baseline data suggests that channelization changed DO regimes in the river channel substantially. Reference stream data were used to develop a restoration expectation for changes in DO concentrations in the reconnected river channel after restoration of flow. Based on reference data, post-restoration DO concentrations are expected to increase from <1–2 mg/L to 3–6 mg/L during the wet season and from 2–4 mg/L to 5–7 mg/L during the dry season. Mean daily concentrations are expected to be greater than 2 mg/L more than 90% of the time. DO concentrations within 1 m of the channel bottom are expected to exceed 1 mg/L more than 50% of the time.

INTRODUCTION

Dissolved oxygen (DO) is one of the most frequently used indicators of water quality because it is easy to understand and relatively simple to measure (Belanger et al. 1985). Dissolved oxygen is essential to the metabolism of most aquatic organisms and can influence growth, distribution and structural organization of aquatic communities (Wetzel 2001). Oxygen concentration also affects the solubility and availability of many nutrients and can impact the productivity of aquatic ecosystems (Wetzel 2001).

Channelization of the Kissimmee River transformed the flowing blackwater river into a central drainage canal (C-38) composed of a series of reservoir-like pools. Flows through remnant river channels

were eliminated (Koebel et al. 1999), allowing aquatic vegetation to encroach upon open water areas (Bousquin 2005) and oxygen-depleting organic sediments to accumulate over the river's sandy substrate (Anderson et al. 2005). The nine meter deep canal also drained the adjacent floodplain, thereby reducing the ratio of surface area to volume of water and possibly limiting the ability of the system to be re-aerated through wind and flow-induced mixing (Loftin et al. 1993). Chronically low DO concentrations in the remnant river channel became apparent after channelization and elimination of continuous flow. For these reasons, DO studies were identified as an important component of the Kissimmee River Restoration Evaluation Program.

Restoration of continuous, variable flow through reconnected river channels is expected to flush flocculent organic matter from the river channel bottom and increase DO concentrations by reducing biochemical and sediment oxygen demand and increasing atmospheric aeration. Continuous flow should restrict/preclude mid-channel growth of aquatic macrophytes and reduce the potential for deposition of organic matter over mid-channel substrates.

Baseline conditions were established by measuring DO in the remnant river channel after channelization. Reference conditions were determined by selecting seven nearby rivers and streams as reference sites. Preference was given to sites with plentiful DO data (collected preferably during the same period of record as baseline data). Baseline data were then used to develop a restoration expectation for DO in the Kissimmee River channel.

Objectives

The objectives of this study were to:

- (1) Establish baseline and reference conditions for assessing effects of restored hydrology on DO regimes within the river channel;
- (2) Quantify the impacts of channelization on DO in the river channel by comparing reference and baseline conditions; and
- (3) Link assessments of baseline and reference data with restoration expectations for DO in the river channel.

METHODS

Baseline Conditions

Study Site

Baseline DO conditions were measured within remnant river runs and canal stations within Pool C (impact) and Pool A (control) (Figure 4-1). Monitoring sites were selected to cover a large geographic area. Canal stations near water control structures S-65A and S-65C monitored DO concentrations of water flowing into and out of the area to be restored. Sampled remnant river runs were approximately 20–30 m wide and 2–3 m deep, with little or no flow. Riverbed substrate consisted of flocculent, unconsolidated organic material (Anderson et al. 2005). River channel aquatic vegetation was dominated by *Salvinia minima*, *Scirpus cubensis*, *Ludwigia peruviana* and *Nuphar lutea*. Approximately two thirds of the area between channel banks was vegetated (Bousquin 2005).

Continuous Data

Dissolved oxygen and water temperature were monitored continuously with a YSI 600R multiparameter water quality sonde (YSI Inc., Yellow Springs, Ohio) at three remnant river run stations in the impact and control areas (KRBN, KRDR and KREN; Figure 4-1). Sondes were fixed at a depth of approximately one meter at each station. Each sonde was wired to a Campbell CR10 datalogger (Campbell Scientific, Logan, Utah) and programmed to record data at 15 minute intervals (Figure 4-2). Data were uploaded automatically to the South Florida Water Management District (SFWMD) base station via radio signal every evening. Sonde calibration and maintenance were performed weekly according to YSI calibration procedures. Monitoring began at each station between July and October 1997.

Monthly Data

Dissolved oxygen was sampled monthly at seven remnant river run stations (KREA91, KREA92, KREA93, KREA94, KREA95, KREA97, KREA98) and at two canal stations (S65A and S65C) (Figure 4-1) in the control and impact areas. Samples were taken mid-channel at a depth of 0.5–1.0 m with a multiparameter water quality sonde generally about mid-day. Monitoring began at each station between March 1996 and December 1997.

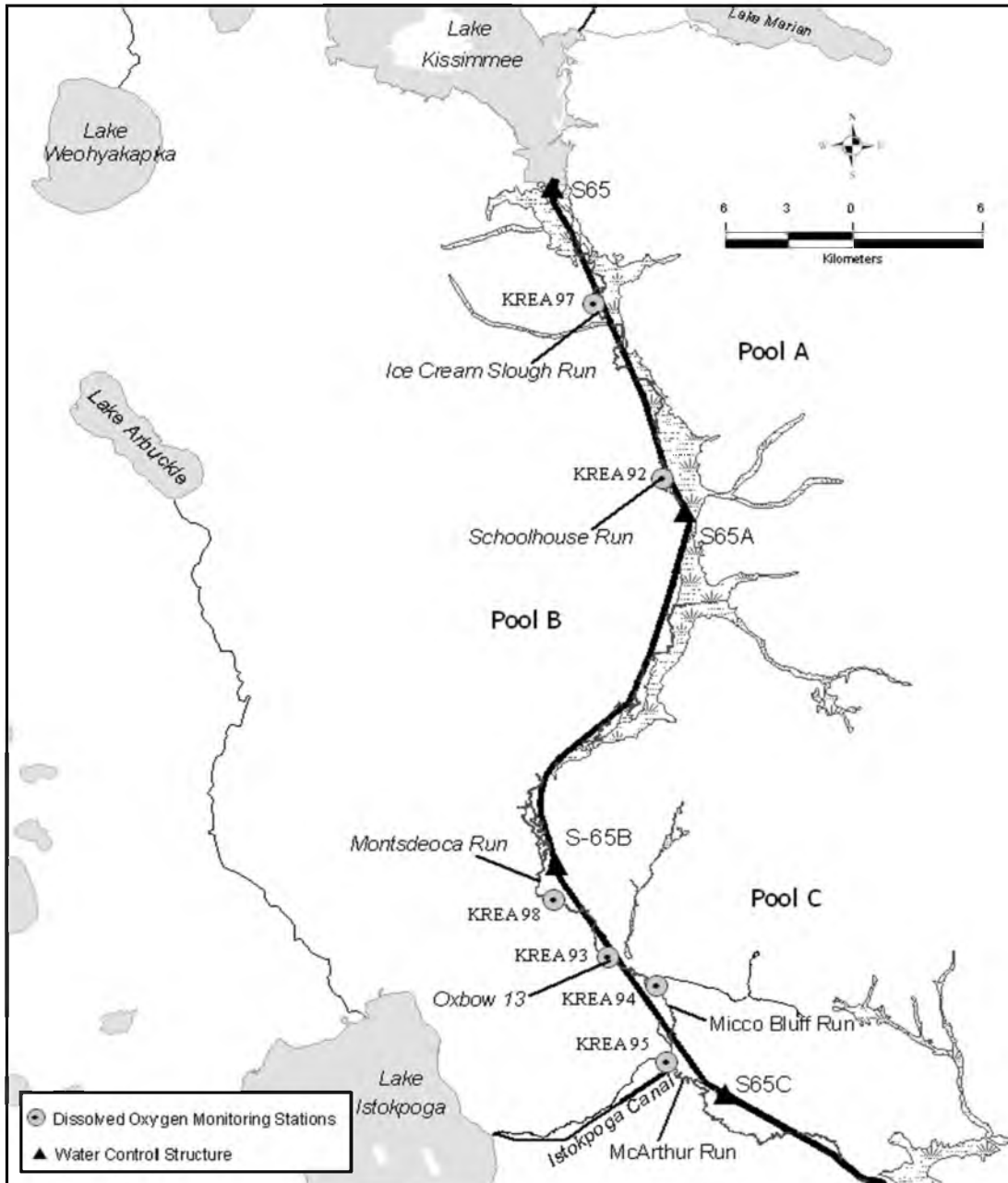


Figure 4-1. Dissolved oxygen monitoring stations along the channelized Kissimmee River.

Weekly Data

Weekly DO profiles were sampled to record changes in DO along a depth gradient as part of baseline data collection for Phase I construction monitoring (Colangelo and Jones 2005). Depth profiles were taken at two stations (K05 and K07) within Micco Bluff Run in Pool C (Figure 4-1) with a YSI 6920 multiparameter water quality sonde (YSI Inc., Yellow Springs, Ohio). Measurements were recorded at 0.5 m, 1.0 m, and every 1.0 m interval to within 0.5 m of the channel bottom. Monitoring began at each station in April 1999.

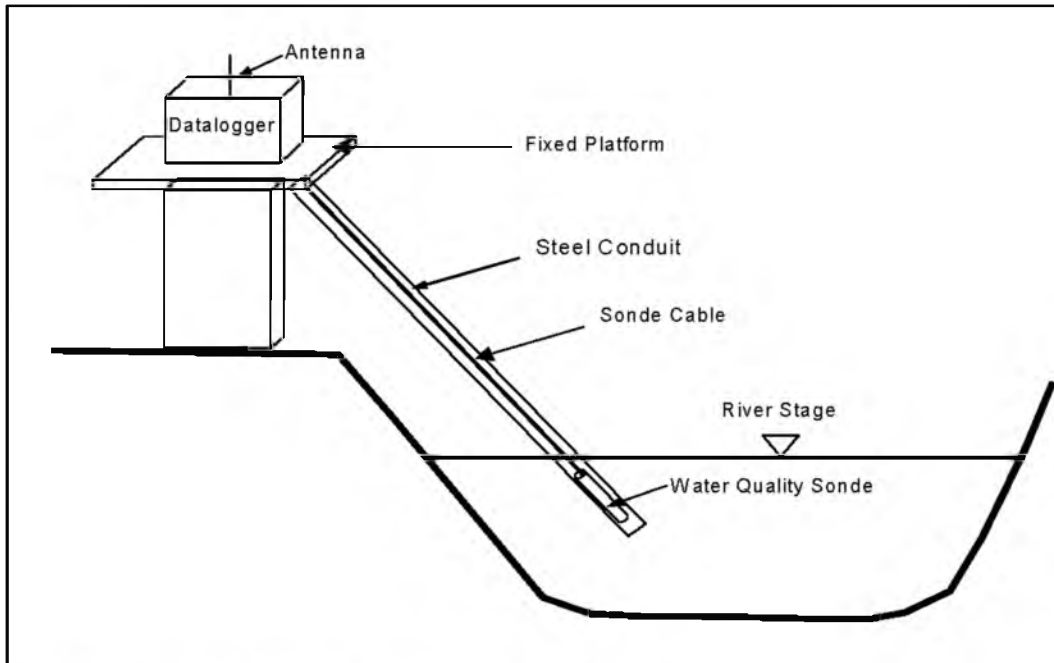


Figure 4-2. Continuous water quality monitoring station design.

Statistics

Sampling for this study was designed according to the before-after-control-impact (BACI) statistical design (Stewart-Oaten et al. 1986), which will be used to evaluate change. Data from all stations underwent quality assurance/quality control (QA/QC) processing prior to inclusion in the baseline data set. An average of 19.8% of data (% of days) collected at stations KRBN (21.6%), KRDR (19.7%) and KREN (18.1%) were eliminated by the QA/QC process. Equipment calibration data were referenced when DO data seemed unusually high, low, or erratic. Diagnostic readings (specific to the YSI DO sensor) recorded during calibration were used to determine whether values should be discarded. Dissolved oxygen values exceeding 100% saturation were discarded if associated Chlorophyll *a* data showed that algae were not present in sufficient quantities to cause supersaturation. Erratic data, such as changes in DO concentration >5 mg/L within 30 minutes with no change in water temperature, were discarded because these patterns are symptomatic of equipment failure.

Seasonal variation in DO was evaluated by comparing wet season and dry season values at each station because oxygen solubility decreases with increased water temperature. Nonparametric statistics were used because DO data were not normally distributed. The Wilcoxon rank-sum test was used to compare two-sample data (wet season vs. dry season and impact vs. control) and the Kruskal-Wallis test was used for multiple comparisons between remnant river channel stations within and among impact and control areas. Post hoc multiple comparisons were made using Dunn's test. Statistics were computed using SAS ver. 8.0 (SAS Institute, Cary, NC). All comparisons were considered significant at the $p < 0.05$ level.

Statistics were computed using mean daily DO values from stations KRBN, KRDR, and KREN (average of 15 minute interval data, 96 values each day), weekly values from stations K07 and K05 and

monthly values from KREA91, KREA92, KREA93, KREA94, KREA95, KREA97, KREA98, S65A and S65C.

Diel DO curves were plotted for stations KRBN, KRDR and KREN using the average of readings recorded at each quarter hour (Eastern Standard Time) during the day (e.g., the 6 am DO reading at station KRBN was averaged for each day during the entire dry season). Curves were plotted for wet and dry season at each station.

Reference Conditions

Because no DO data were collected before channelization, reference conditions were derived from data for seven free-flowing, blackwater, south Florida streams. It was important to find streams where DO had been measured frequently throughout the year because DO concentrations change seasonally due to differences in water temperature and community metabolism. At least 11 samples were collected over a minimum of one year at each stream. Some streams were sampled for more than ten years (Table 4-1).

Table 4-1. Station data at seven reference sites and in the channelized Kissimmee River. Measurements were taken generally at mid-day, mid-channel with a dissolved oxygen probe at 0.5 m depth, at intervals ranging from weekly to bi-monthly.

Water Body	Station ID	County	Period of Record (mm/yy)	Freq. ¹	# Samples
Reference Sites					
Fisheating Creek	FECSR78	Glades	04/73–02/99	W-M	447
Arbuckle Creek	ARBKSR98	Highlands	02/88–02/99	BiM	86
Lake Marian Creek	DLMARNCR	Polk	04/82–09/85	M	37
Tiger Creek	ETIGERCR	Polk	04/82–06/85	M	33
Josephine Creek	JOSNCR17	Highlands	02/88–02/99	M-BiM	85
Boggy Creek	ABOGG	Osceola	08/81–03/99	M	202
Catfish Creek, S. Branch	ROSALIEC	Polk	11/84–09/85	M	11
Kissimmee River					
Ice Cream Slough Run (Pool A)	KREA 97	Polk	11/96–03/99	M	27
Rattlesnake Hammock Run (Pool A)	KREA 91	Polk	03/96–03/99	M	29
Schoolhouse Run (Pool A)	KREA 92	Polk	03/96–03/99	M	31
Montsdeoca Run (Pool C)	KREA 98	Highlands	03/96–03/99	M	14
Oxbow 13 (Pool C)	KREA 93	Highlands	03/96–03/99	M	29
Micco Bluff Run (Pool C)	KREA 94	Okeechobee	03/96–03/99	M	28
MacArthur Run (Pool C)	KREA 95	Highlands	12/97–03/99	M	31

¹ W = Weekly; M = Monthly; BiM = Bi-Monthly

Study Sites

Tables 4-2 and 4-3 summarize the physical and chemical characteristics of reference sites and the pre-channelized Kissimmee River. All reference streams are free-flowing blackwater Florida streams located within 145 km of each other and within 65 km of the Kissimmee River. Each reference stream has a low gradient (<6.5 cm/km) and a mean water temperature between 21.4 and 25.0°C. The chemical characteristics of these streams also are comparable. Six of the seven streams are lake fed and all streams empty into lakes.

CHAPTER 4 DISSOLVED OXYGEN

Arbuckle Creek is located in Highlands and Polk Counties in central Florida, approximately 16 to 24 km west of Pools B and C of the Kissimmee River (Figure 4-3). Arbuckle Creek begins at the southern end of Lake Arbuckle and flows generally southeast for 39.8 km to Lake Istokpoga. The southernmost section of the creek has been channelized. Flow within Arbuckle Creek is unregulated and varies with the stage of Lake Arbuckle (Milleson 1978). Land use in the Arbuckle Creek watershed includes beef and dairy cattle as well as citrus production (Germain 1994). The water quality monitoring station is located at the southern end of the stream.

Table 4-2. Physical characteristics of reference streams and the pre-channelized Kissimmee River. Temperature data represent mean values.

Stream	Length (km)	Gradient (cm/km)	Drainage Area (ha)	Temp (deg. C)	Flows Into
Arbuckle Creek	39.8	6.2	381	24.99	Lake Istokpoga
Boggy Creek	18.8	2.4	88.8	21.41	E. Lake Tohopekaliga
Fisheating Creek	85.3	2.2	-	24.98	Lake Okeechobee
Josephine Creek	19.3	5.5	143	24.57	Lake Istokpoga
Lake Marion Creek	13.5	2.8	-	22.07	Lake Hatchineha
Catfish Creek, S. Branch	13	-	-	22.78	Lake Hatchineha, Lake Rosalie
Tiger Creek	3.7	3.6	-	23.61	Lake Kissimmee
Pre-channelized Kissimmee R.*	166	6.0 – 9.0	-	-	Lake Okeechobee

Sources: Bass (1983).

* = Source: Koebel (1995).

Table 4-3. Mean values for the period of record for chemical characteristics of reference streams (Table 4-1) and the pre-channelized Kissimmee River (One sample in 1955).

Stream	Sp. Cond. (µS/cm)	pH	Hardness (mg CaCO₃/L)	TP (mg/L)	TN (mg/L)
Arbuckle Creek	134.99	6.31	40.53	0.10	1.18
Boggy Creek	134.50	6.58	37.11	0.08	0.79
Fisheating Creek	220.97	6.60	60.21	0.17	1.76
Josephine Creek	147.42	6.09	45.42	0.04	1.25
Lake Marion Creek	144.97	6.58	54.88	0.07	1.54
Catfish Creek, S. Branch	168.27	6.69	59.05	0.05	2.15
Tiger Creek	104.10	5.69	21.83	0.05	0.95
Pre-channelized Kissimmee R.*	-	-	21.00	-	-

Source: SFWMD dbhydro database (mean values).

*= Source: Parker et al. (1955).

Boggy Creek is located within Orange and Osceola Counties in central Florida (Figure 4-4). Boggy Creek follows a 16 km channelized course from Lake Warren to Boggy Creek road, south of the Orlando International Airport. The remainder of the creek has not been channelized. There are two major branches of Boggy Creek. The east branch is the main branch, with its headwaters beginning at the southern lobe of Lake Conway and running for 19 km before emptying into East Lake Tohopekaliga. The west branch flows from Lake Jessamine to Boggy Creek Swamp, receiving runoff primarily from surrounding residential areas. The drainage landscape between Boggy Creek Swamp and East Lake Tohopekaliga is

primarily citrus (SFWMD 2000a). The sampling station is located approximately one mile northwest of the northern shoreline of East Lake Tohopekaliga.

Fisheating Creek is an extensive riverine swamp system flowing for 85 km through Glades County before emptying into Lake Okeechobee (Figure 4-3). Fisheating Creek is currently the only free flowing tributary of Lake Okeechobee and for the most part has not been greatly impacted by human activities. Land use in and around the floodplain is mostly rangeland. Habitat types include cypress sloughs/mixed hardwood swamp forest, emergent marshes, willow thickets and open-water ponds (SFWMD 2000b). The sampling station is located at the bridge crossing of State Road 78. Data from the early 1940s suggest that chemical composition of water samples from Fisheating Creek and the Kissimmee River were similar before channelization (Parker et al. 1955).

Josephine Creek is located in Highlands County and flows east from Lake Josephine for 19 km before emptying into Lake Istokpoga (Figure 4-3). Land use in the Josephine Creek watershed includes rangeland and various wetlands. Water quality samples were taken approximately midway along the length of the creek.

Lake Marion Creek is located in Osceola and Polk Counties and flows southeast from Lake Marion and Snell Creek for 13.5 km before emptying into Lake Hatchineha (Figure 4-5). Land uses in this area are predominantly wetlands with some rangeland and agriculture near the mouth of the creek (Guardo 1992). The water quality sampling station is located at the mouth of the creek.

Catfish Creek is in Polk County and flows east-southeast approximately 13 km from Lake Pierce to Lake Hatchineha (Figure 4-5). The stream flows through the mostly wooded, Allen David Broussard Catfish Creek Preserve State Park. Water quality samples were collected midway along the creek.

Tiger Creek is located in Polk County and flows northeast between Tiger Lake and Lake Kissimmee (Figure 4-5). The Tiger Creek watershed is mostly wetlands (Guardo 1992). Water quality samples were taken about midway along Tiger Creek.

Comparison Methods

Mean DO concentrations for the wet season and dry season were calculated for each reference stream and for each remnant river channel station (grand wet or dry season mean for the period of record for each stream or remnant channel in the Kissimmee River). Dissolved oxygen concentrations from reference streams and the channelized Kissimmee River were compared using the Kruskal-Wallis test because data did not fit the normal distribution. The percentage of samples exceeding specific DO concentrations for each stream and remnant river channel station during the wet and dry season also were calculated for comparison. Only monthly data from the channelized Kissimmee River were used for comparison with reference streams because data from reference streams were collected using similar methods.

Although no water column profile data have been examined for reference streams (in most cases data do not exist), it is assumed that oxygen values near the bottom of the channel are usually higher when stream flow is present. This was observed during the Pool B Demonstration Project when weirs across C-38 diverted flow to adjacent remnant river runs. Although oxygen concentrations remained low, there was some evidence of more uniform DO profiles during the summer (Rutter et al. 1989). This information was used to help develop the restoration expectation for DO in the river channel.

RESULTS

Baseline Conditions

Continuous DO Data

Water temperature followed a predictable seasonal pattern and was similar at all three stations (Figure 4-6). Dry season water temperatures were cooler than wet season temperatures. DO concentrations were well below 100% saturation at all stations throughout most of the baseline period.

Mean daily DO concentrations for the period of record at stations KRBN, KRDR and KREN were 1.60 ± 0.08 mg/L (± 1 SE), 1.25 ± 0.06 mg/L and 1.33 ± 0.07 mg/L, respectively (Figure 4-7) and were significantly different between stations KRBN and KRDR, and KRBN and KREN (Kruskal-Wallis test, Dunn's test, $p < 0.05$). However, differences of less than 1.00 mg/L are likely not ecologically significant.

CHAPTER 4 DISSOLVED OXYGEN

Mean daily DO concentrations at stations KRBN, KRDR, and KREN were <2 mg/L for 77–82% of the baseline period and <5 mg/L for 93–97% of the baseline period (Figure 4-8).

Wet season DO concentrations were significantly lower (Wilcoxon rank-sum test, $p < 0.05$) than dry season DO concentrations at each station, except KRBN (Table 4-4). Mean daily DO concentrations were usually <2 mg/L within remnant river channels during the wet season (Figure 4-6). Although mean DO concentrations at stations KRDR and KREN were significantly higher during the dry season than the wet season, mean DO concentrations did not vary by more than 1 mg/L seasonally.

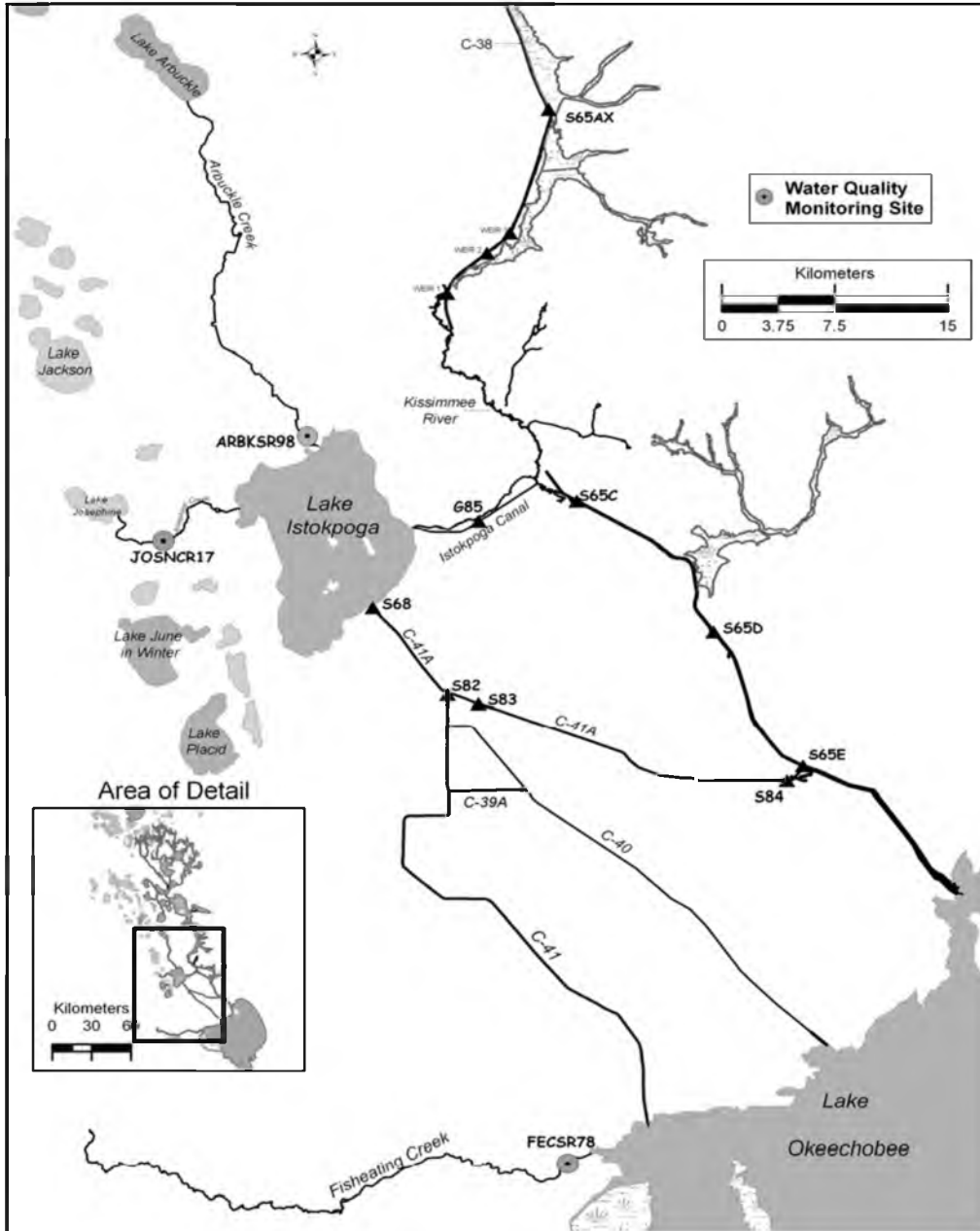


Figure 4-3. Location of Arbutle, Fisheating and Josephine Creeks.

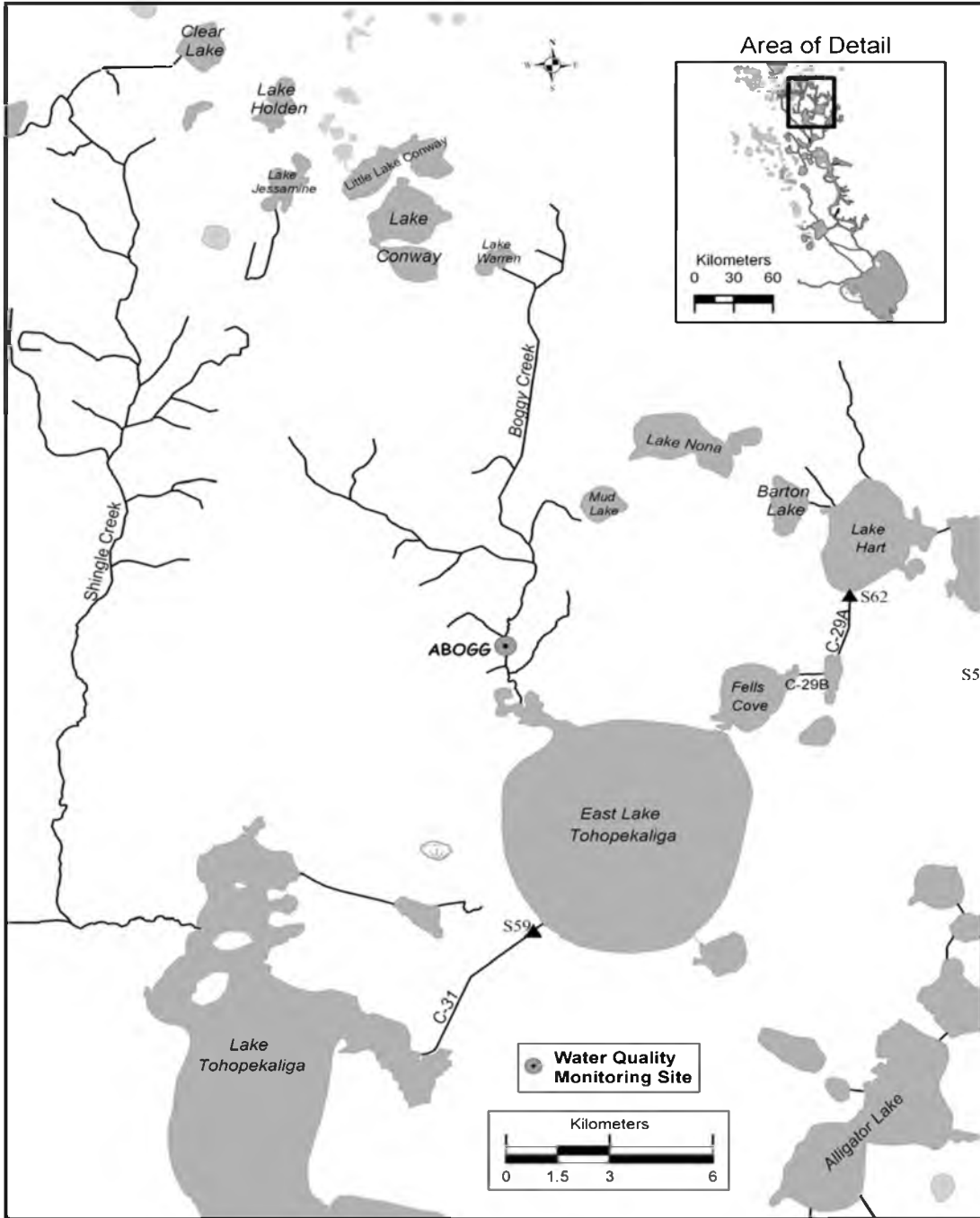


Figure 4-4. Location of Boggy Creek.

Diel DO curves (averaged by season over the period of record) within the channelized system showed little change over the diel period. However, dry season diel patterns were more variable than wet season curves at all stations. Figure 4-9 shows diel DO curves at station KRBN which is representative of stations KRDR and KREN as well. To illustrate variation in diel patterns on a daily scale, daily maximum and minimum DO concentrations at remnant river channel stations were plotted (Figure 4-10). Maximum and minimum daily DO values within remnant river channels varied by more than 2 mg/L 14% of the time and by more than 4 mg/L 2% of the time.

Weekly DO Data

Dissolved oxygen concentrations decreased rapidly with depth at station K05 within Micco Bluff Run from May through late June 1999 (Figure 4-11). The gradient at station K07 was not as strong as at station K05. During July–October 1999, DO concentrations became more uniform with depth and decreased to <2 mg/L throughout the water column at both stations. Dissolved oxygen concentrations near the channel bottom were often <1 mg/L.

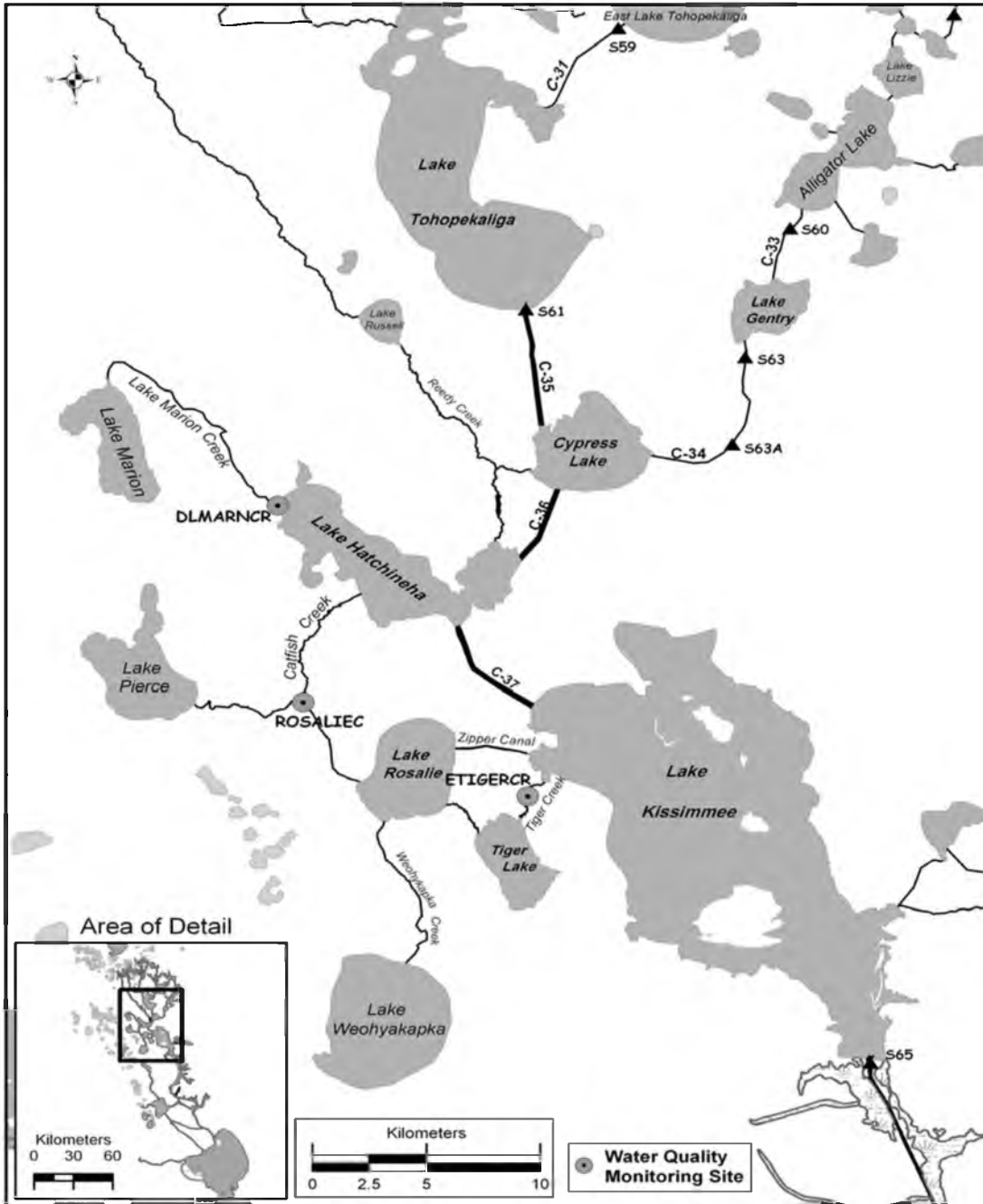


Figure 4-5. Location of Catfish, Tiger and Marion Creeks.

CHAPTER 4 DISSOLVED OXYGEN

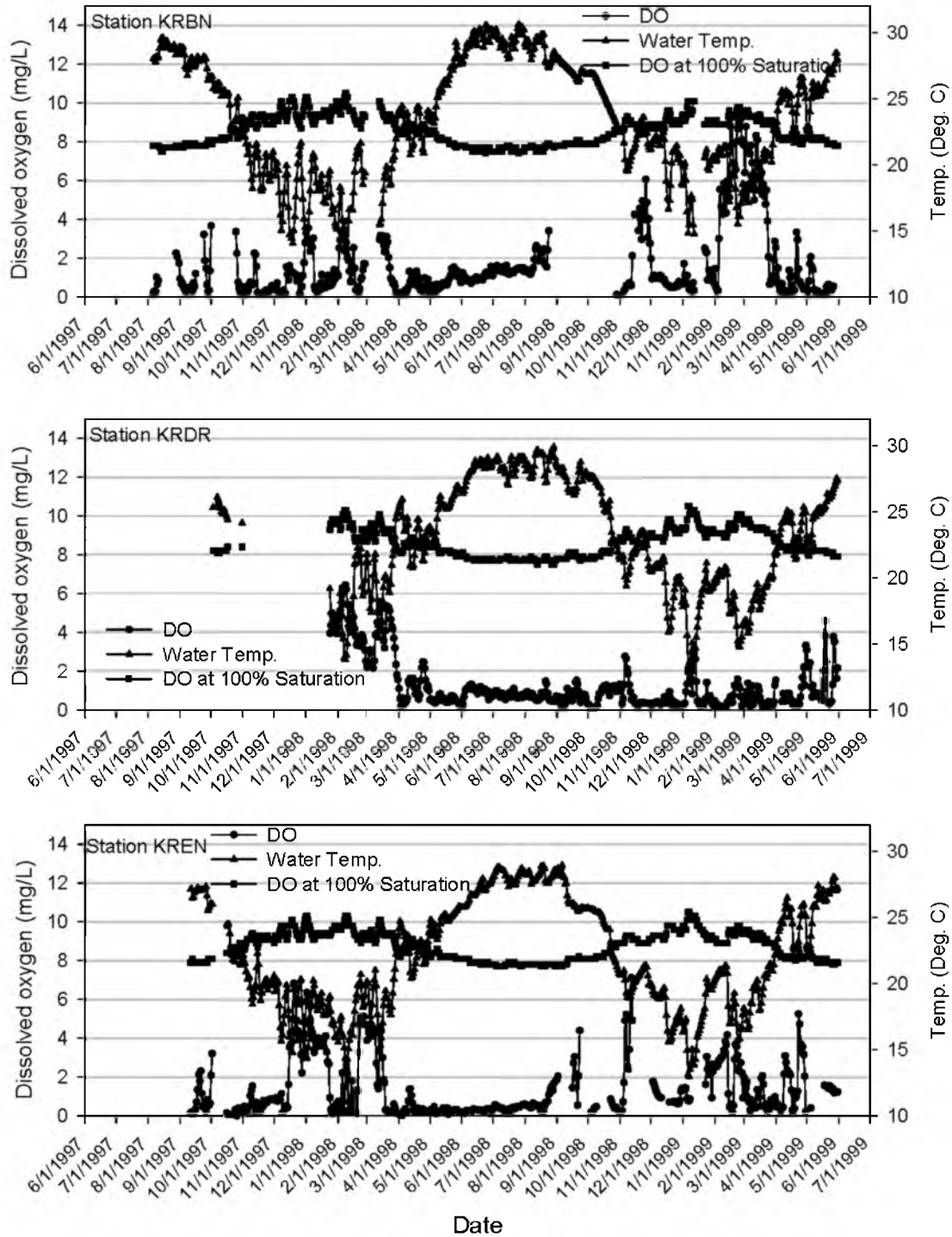


Figure 4-6. Mean daily dissolved oxygen (DO) concentration, water temperature and DO concentration at 100% saturation at remnant river channel stations. Breaks in the data are due to data discarded by the QA/QC process.

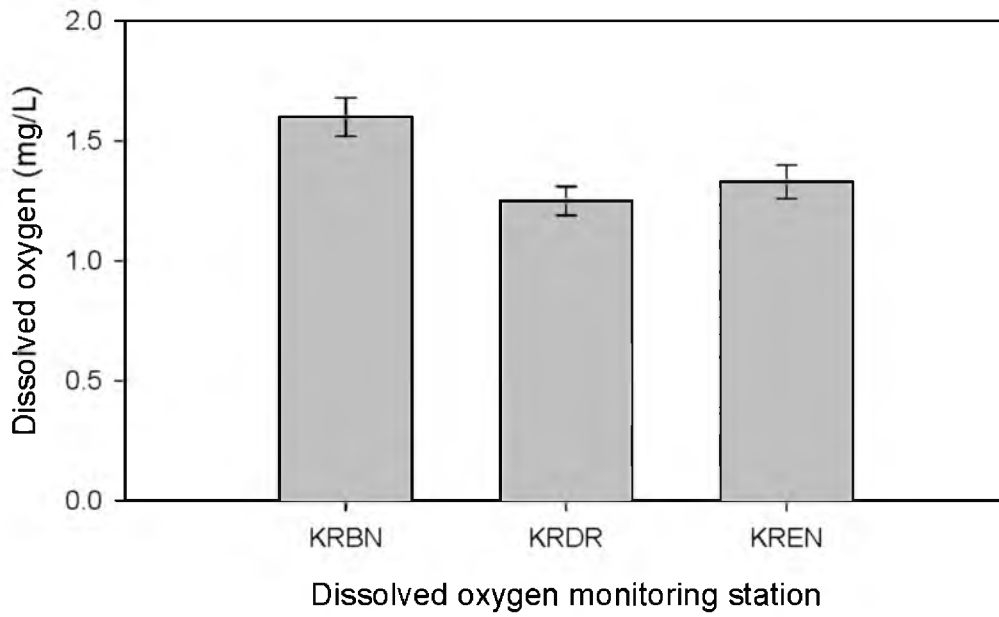


Figure 4-7. Mean daily dissolved oxygen (DO) concentration (± 1 standard error) at remnant river channel stations during the baseline study period. Means were calculated using average daily DO concentrations (average of 96 values per day) at each station.

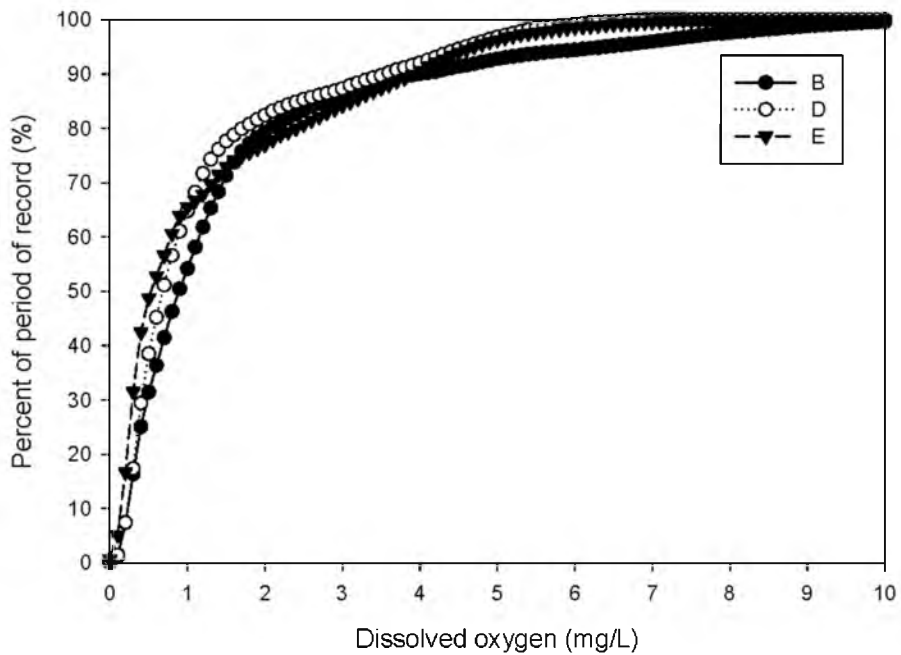


Figure 4-8. Cumulative frequency diagram of dissolved oxygen concentrations at stations KRBN, KRDR and KREN (July 1997–June 1999).

Monthly DO Data

Monthly DO data indicate that concentrations in remnant river runs were often extremely low and concentrations <2 mg/L were common (Figure 4-12). Percent oxygen saturation at all stations was usually $<30\%$. Mean DO concentrations were similar at all stations (Kruskal-Wallis test, $p < 0.05$). Mean DO concentrations (Figure 4-13) at each station ranged from 0.7–1.9 mg/L for the wet season. Mean dry season DO values (2.5–3.8 mg/L) were higher (Wilcoxon rank-sum test, $p < 0.05$) than wet season values. Mean monthly DO concentrations were similar for the control and impact areas (Wilcoxon rank-sum test, $p > 0.05$).

Values at S-65A and S-65C followed similar patterns, but DO tended to be higher at S-65A in 1996–1997 and lower in 1998–1999 (Figure 4-14). Mean monthly values were low during the summer months when water temperatures were highest. However, DO was usually well below saturation levels and fell below 30% saturation during the summer.

Table 4-4. Comparison of mean DO concentrations (± 1 standard error) during the wet (June 1–November 30) and dry (December 1–May 31) seasons of the baseline sampling period.

Station	Season	N	Mean
KRBN	Wet	179	1.30 \pm 0.08
	Dry	338	1.79 \pm 0.12
KRDR	Wet	183	0.77 \pm 0.03
	Dry	305	1.53 \pm 0.09 *
KREN	Wet	197	0.78 \pm 0.08
	Dry	319	1.66 \pm 0.09 *

* = significant difference at the $p < 0.05$ level, Kruskal-Wallis test, Dunn's test, $p < 0.05$

Dissolved Oxygen concentrations were significantly different at S-65A and S-65C. During the first half of the baseline period, S-65A was sampled more often in the afternoon ($\sim 1:00$ – $4:00$ pm), while S-65C was sampled more often in the morning ($\sim 9:00$ – $11:00$ am). During the latter half of the baseline period, the reverse occurred. When S-65A was sampled in the afternoon, 78% of DO measurements were higher at S-65A than S-65C.

However, even though DO was usually greater at S-65C late in the baseline period (when afternoon sampling predominated), it was often lower prior to July 1998 (i.e., the relationship between time and DO becomes ambiguous in the middle of the baseline period). Consequently, when S-65C was sampled in the afternoon and S-65A was sampled in the morning, less than half (47%) of DO measurements from S-65C were greater than values from S-65A. Nearly identical trends were obtained when only wet season samples were considered.

Reference Conditions

Mean DO concentrations ranged from 3.7 to 6.0 mg/L during the wet season and from 5.4 to 7.4 mg/L during the dry season (Figure 4-13).

Dissolved oxygen concentrations were significantly higher during the dry season than during the wet season (Wilcoxon rank-sum test, $p < 0.05$). In five of the seven streams, DO was >5 mg/L in more than 50% of the samples. In all seven of the reference streams more than 90% of the samples had concentrations greater than 2 mg/L (Figure 4-15).

CHAPTER 4 DISSOLVED OXYGEN

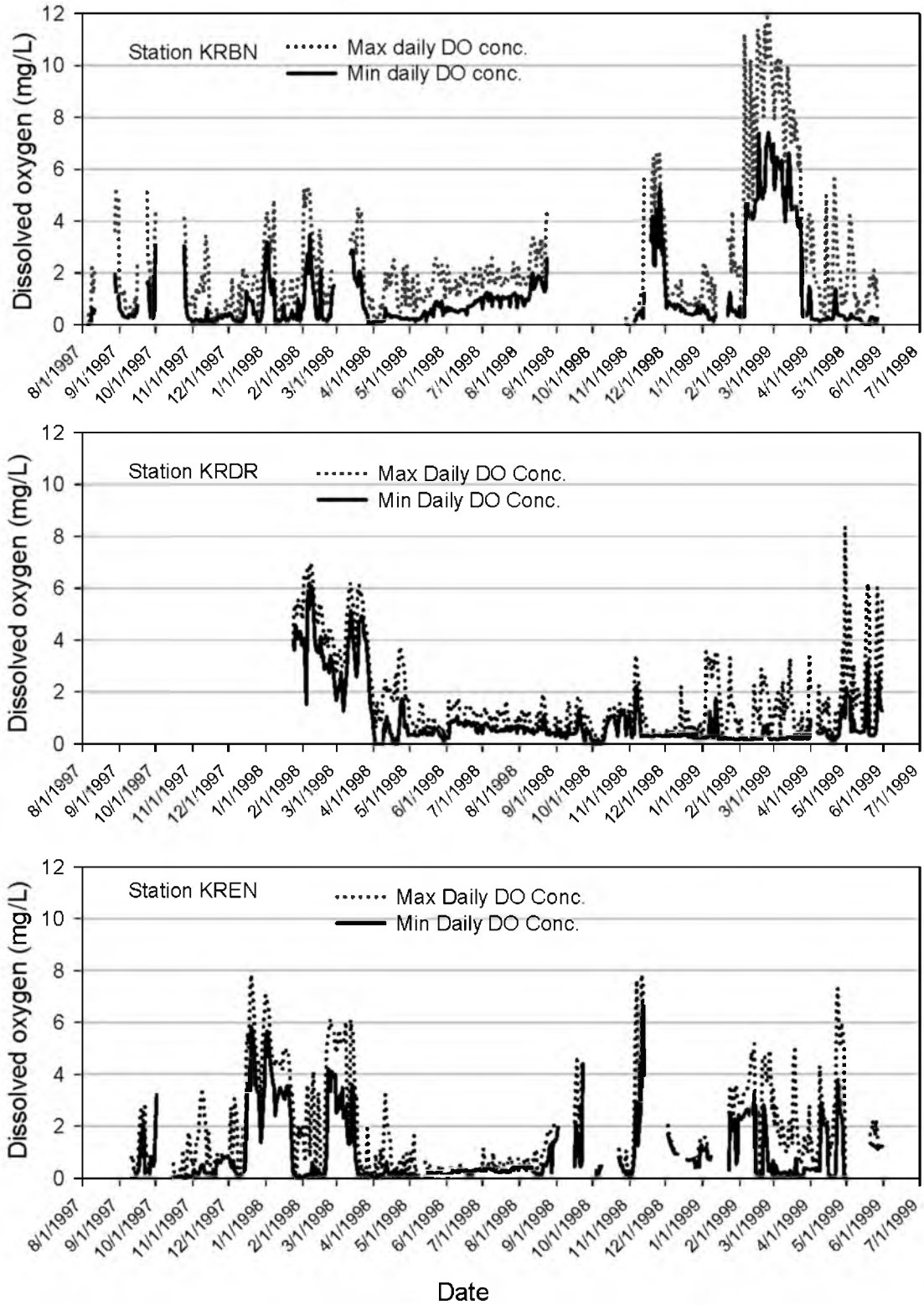


Figure 4-10. Maximum and minimum daily dissolved oxygen concentrations at remnant river channel stations during the baseline study period.

CHAPTER 4 DISSOLVED OXYGEN

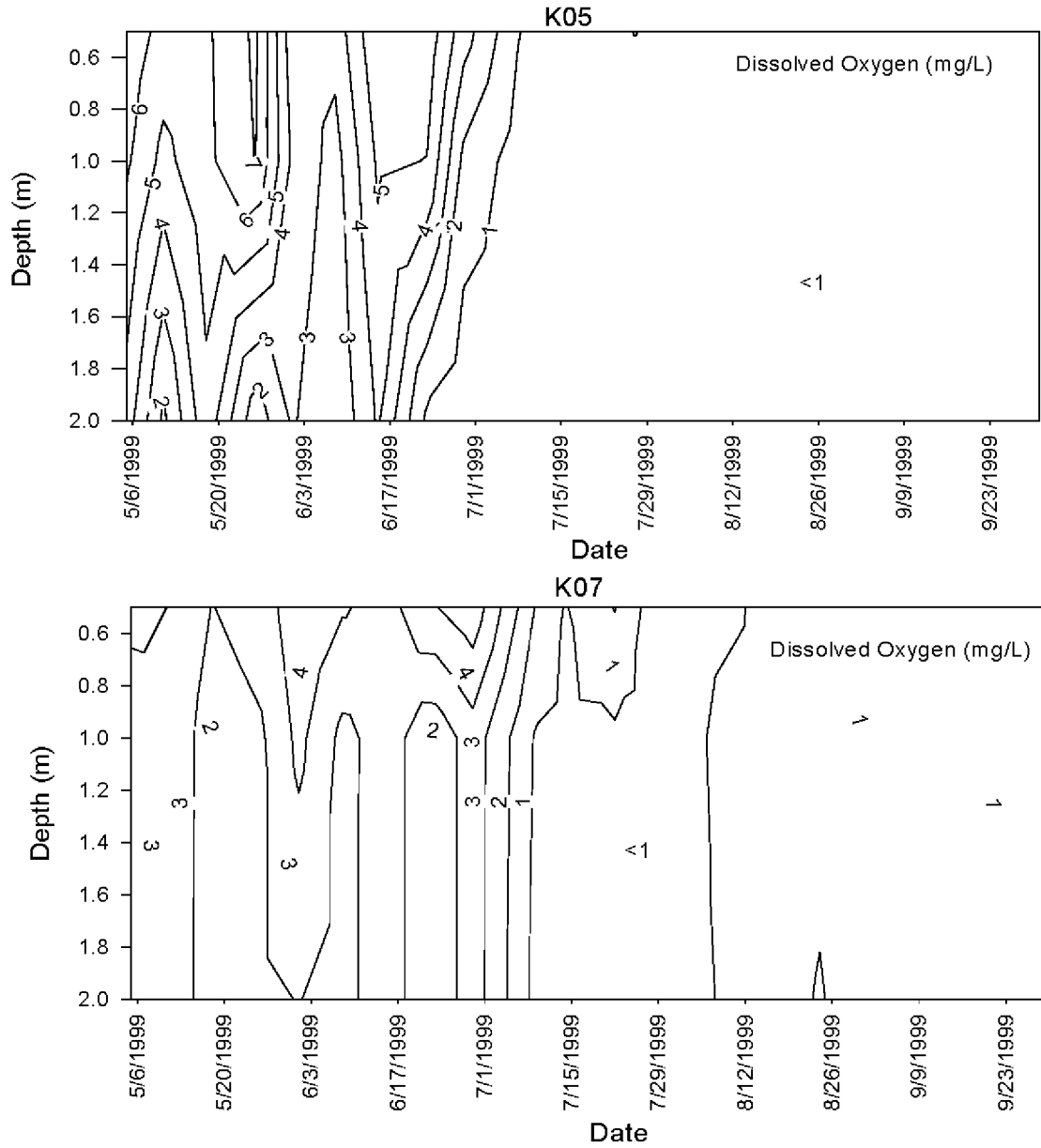


Figure 4-11. Vertical gradient of dissolved oxygen concentrations (mg/L) within Micco Bluff Run during May–October 1999.

CHAPTER 4 DISSOLVED OXYGEN

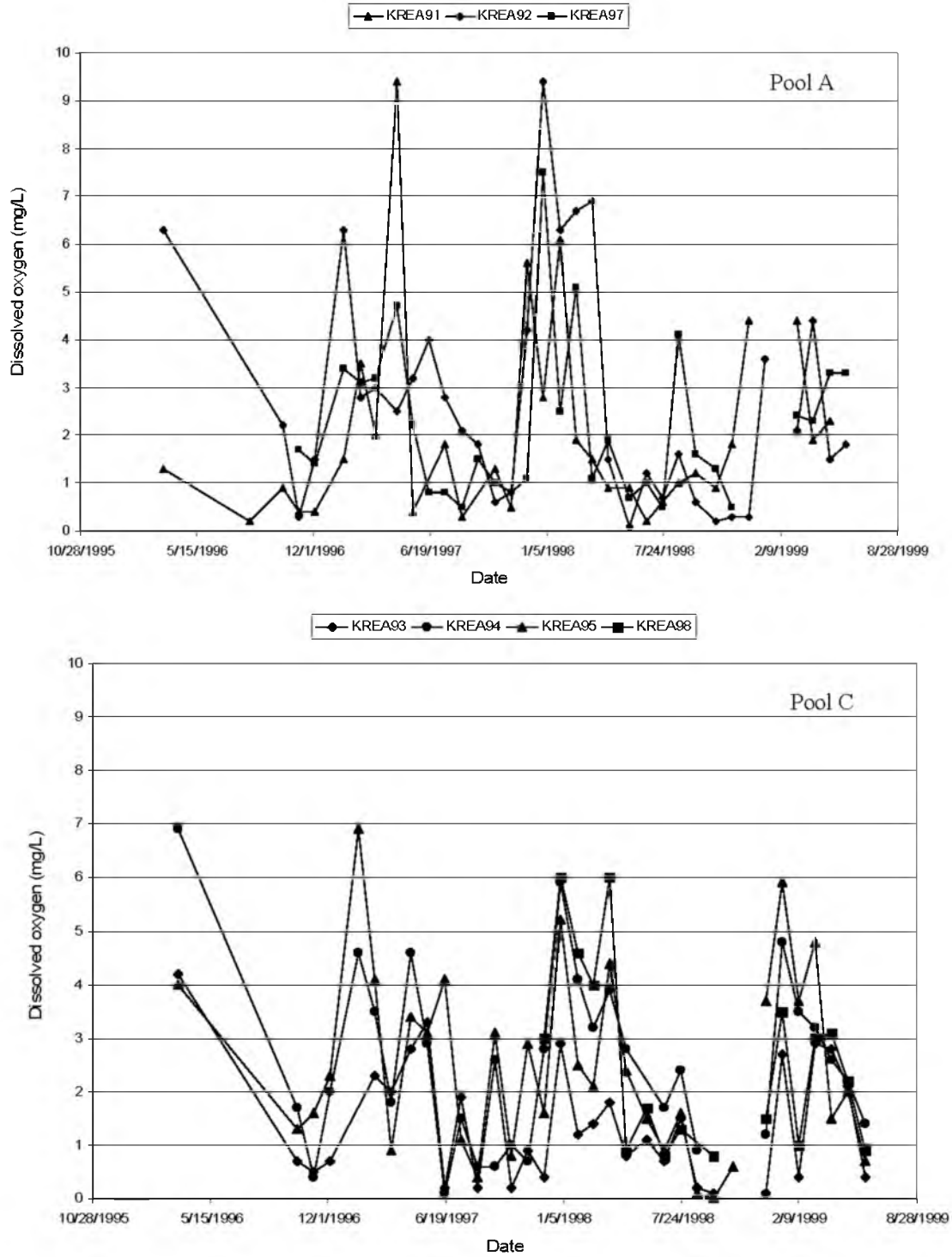


Figure 4-12. Monthly dissolved oxygen concentrations at 0.5 m in remnant river runs of Pools A and C.

Baseline-Reference Condition Comparisons

Mean DO concentrations from reference streams were significantly greater than those from the channelized Kissimmee River (Kruskal-Wallis test, $p < 0.05$). This difference is likely ecologically significant because fish and other aerobic aquatic organisms may become stressed at concentrations less than 2 mg/L (Moss & Scott 1961, Davis 1975, Smale and Rabeni 1995, Matthews 1998)

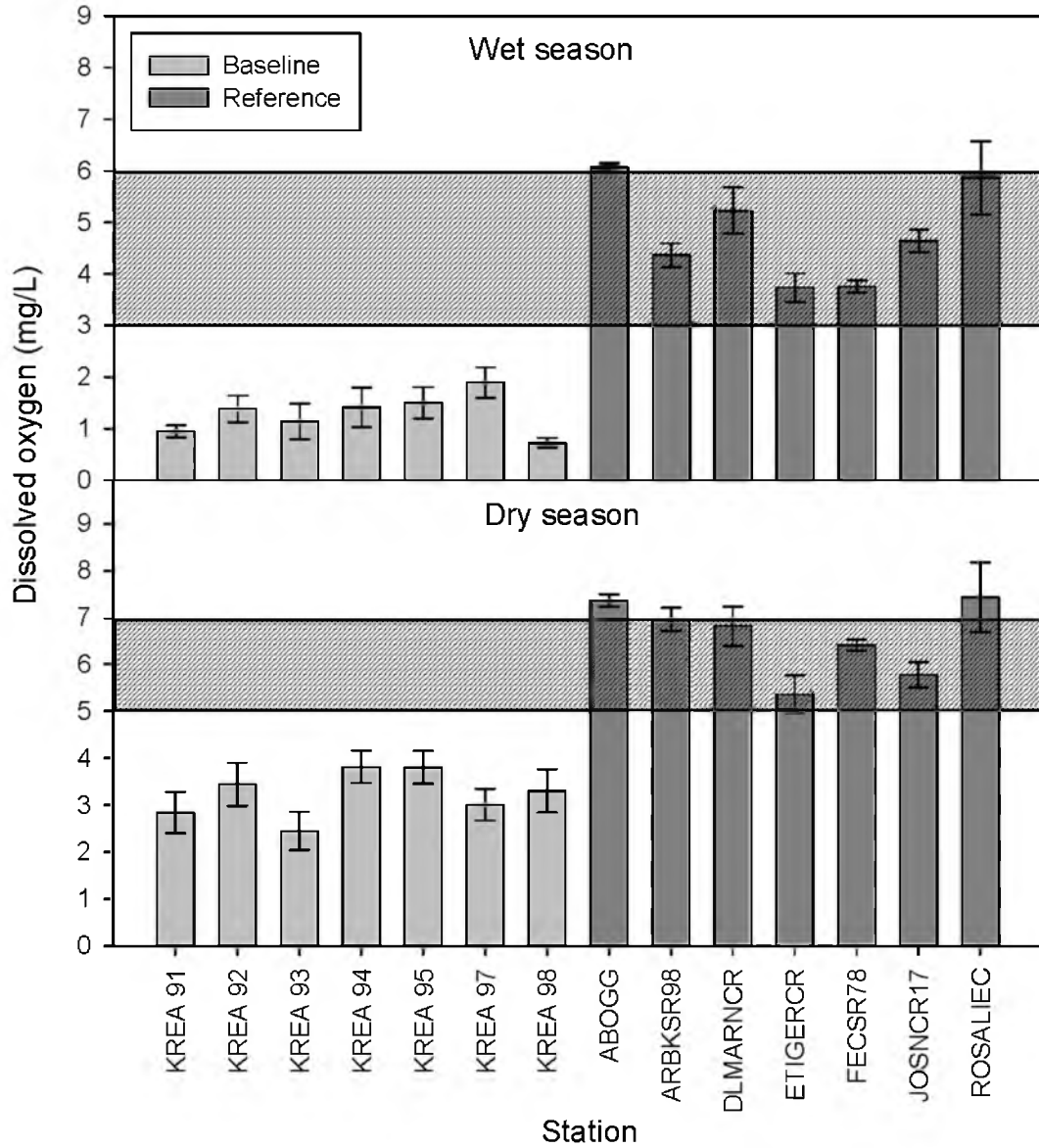


Figure 4-13. Mean (\pm standard error of the mean) dissolved oxygen (DO) concentrations in free-flowing, blackwater, south Florida streams and remnant runs of the channelized Kissimmee River during the wet and dry season. Cross-hatched area represents expected range of DO concentrations in the Kissimmee River after restoration.

Mean wet season DO concentrations were 4.2 mg/L for all reference streams combined and 1.3 mg/L for the channelized Kissimmee River. Mean dry season DO was 6.1 mg/L and 3.1 mg/L for reference

streams and the channelized Kissimmee River, respectively. Grand means for DO concentrations in the channelized Kissimmee River and reference streams were 2.2 mg/L and 5.2 mg/L, respectively.

DISCUSSION

Baseline Conditions

Data collected continuously, weekly, and monthly showed that DO concentrations in the channelized Kissimmee River were persistently low. Continuous monitoring is the most accurate method for measuring changes in DO because concentrations can be monitored at short time intervals over a long period of time (years). However, continuous monitoring is expensive and can not be accomplished at the same spatial scale as weekly or monthly monitoring. Monthly monitoring is useful because a large area can be spot-sampled in a short period of time (several hours), which can show the extent of spatial variation within a system. Weekly water column profiles also are useful because they can be collected over a large area, and show the extent of variation within the water column. These monitoring strategies will be useful for assessing changes in DO dynamics as flow is restored.

Continuous Data

The relatively high percentage of DO data that were discarded by the QA/QC procedure was largely due to equipment failure, calibration error, or extremely low DO concentrations, which tend to foul the sensor and cause erratic readings. YSI Inc. reported that versions of their Rapid-Pulse DO sensors could expire prematurely, thus corrupting any data collected after the sensor stopped operating properly. This problem has been corrected in newer versions of the sensor. Much of our discarded data may be attributed to these technical problems.

Dissolved oxygen concentrations were low at all remnant river channel stations and all stations followed the same general trends. Greater DO concentrations at station KRBN than at stations KRDR and KREN may have been largely due to data collected during February 1999–April 1999, when DO concentrations at station KRBN were near 100% saturation, while DO concentrations at stations KRDR and KREN remained relatively low (Figure 4-6). This localized increase in DO concentration may have resulted from an increase in algal photosynthesis in the water column. Chlorophyll *a* concentrations (an indicator of algal biomass) in Oxbow 13 (near KRBN) during this time period were higher than in all other Pool C runs (Jones 2005). Maximum and minimum daily DO concentrations during this period differed as much as 3–4 mg/L, which is indicative of a diel pattern that may occur during an algae bloom (Wetzel 2001).

Dissolved Oxygen concentrations remained well below 100% saturation for most of the baseline period. Water bodies with large quantities of organic matter (both sediment and dissolved) usually have oxygen concentrations that are appreciably below the saturation point (Wetzel 2001). Dissolved Oxygen values observed within remnant river channels were well below typical DO concentrations for streams in the region and for reference streams (Friedemann and Hand 1989).

Dissolved oxygen concentrations were greater during the dry season due to cooler water temperatures than during the wet season. Solubility of oxygen is affected nonlinearly by temperature and increases in colder water (Wetzel 2001). Additionally, oxygen demand (water column and sediment respiration) is generally lower because of cooler water temperatures (Bott et al. 1985). Wind-induced aeration also is generally higher during the dry season than during the wet season due to cold fronts (causing increased wind speed) that pass through the region.

Dissolved oxygen concentrations were related to time of day, suggesting that diel changes in water column DO concentrations were linked to photosynthesis and respiration by phytoplankton and aquatic macrophytes, and decomposition of organic bottom sediment by bacteria. However, diel oxygen curves in humic colored waters such as the Kissimmee tend to be flatter than in other systems because reduced light penetration (Belanger et al. 1985) results in reduced oxygen production in the water column.

Weekly Data

Dissolved oxygen concentrations in remnant river channels exhibited a vertical gradient during spring and early summer 1999. Vertical stratification is likely caused by bacterial decomposition of organic

matter along the bottom of the remnant river channel, coupled with low or no flow. Vertical stratification of DO also followed a thermal gradient. Thermal stratification of remnant river channels was similar to a warm monomictic lake (which circulates freely in the winter and stratifies during the summer (Wetzel 2001)). Warm, less dense water in the epilimnion develops thermal resistance to mixing with the cooler more dense water of the hypolimnion during early to mid-summer. As DO in the hypolimnion is depleted, a clinograde oxygen profile is formed. By mid-summer, DO concentrations throughout the water column have been depleted. These patterns are similar to data collected between July and October 1989 (Toth 1993, Koebel 1995).

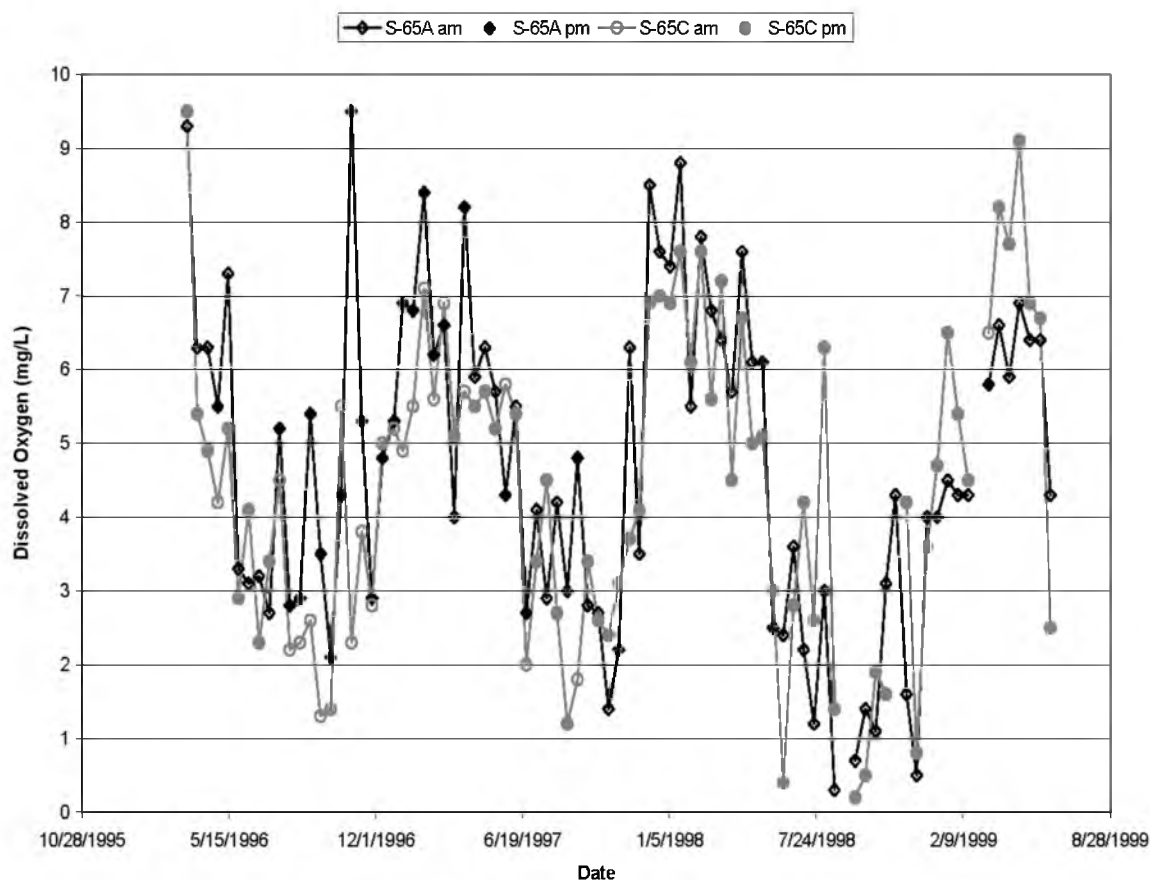


Figure 4-14. Dissolved oxygen concentrations at S-65A and S-65C at 0.5 m.

Monthly Data

The relationship between DO concentration and the time of day measurements were taken may be related to phytoplankton communities. Common cyanobacteria in C-38, including *Anabaena sp.* and *Microcystis aeruginosa*, tend to rise to the surface on calm, sunny days. As these phytoplankton produce oxygen, DO concentrations increase during the day. Therefore, near-surface DO measurements would tend to be higher in the afternoon than in the morning, especially when more phytoplankton are present. Chlorophyll *a*, an indicator of phytoplankton biomass, was usually greater at S-65A in 1996. Whether this was due to more algal biomass in the water column or phytoplankton rising to the surface during the day is unknown, as only near-surface samples were collected. In either case, afternoon sampling at this structure resulted in higher Chlorophyll *a* concentrations compared to S-65C.

Dissolved Oxygen concentrations at remnant river stations varied considerably. Schoolhouse Run (KREA92) in Pool A and MacArthur Run (KREA95) in Pool C often had higher DO concentrations than other runs even though they were usually sampled earlier in the day. These two runs are at the lower ends of

Pools A and C and tend to be wider and less choked with vegetation. This may have allowed more solar insolation and greater phytoplankton productivity and wind-induced reaeration than in other runs.

These results demonstrate the importance of considering time of day, among other factors, when comparing DO data from different locations. Post-construction samples will be taken at approximately the same time of day as baseline samples.

Data collected during the baseline period are adequate for assessing restoration of DO regimes within the Kissimmee River. Continuous monitoring resulted in reliable data on a 15 minute frequency, while weekly and monthly sampling covered a wide geographic area. Post-construction data collection began in June 1999 and will continue until some time after the Upper Basin regulation schedule is implemented.

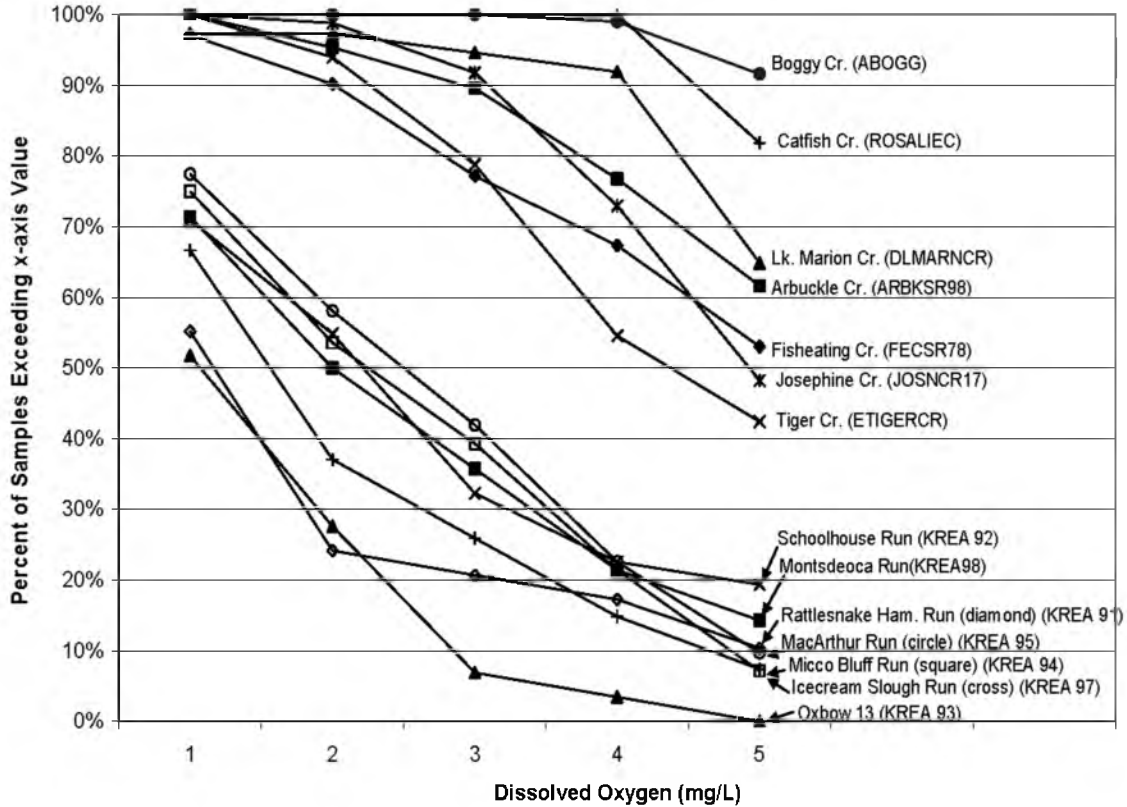


Figure 4-15. Dissolved oxygen concentrations at 0.5 m depth in south Florida reference streams and remnant river runs of the channelized Kissimmee River.

Reference Conditions

The reference streams are most similar to the pre-channelized Kissimmee River in stream gradient, proximity to the Kissimmee River and stream type. Reference stream gradient varied from 2.2 to 6.2 cm/km compared to the pre-channelized Kissimmee, which had a gradient varying from 6 to 9 cm/km (Table 4-2). Choosing streams with low gradients was important because DO concentration is affected by aeration through turbulent flow. All reference streams were located within 65 km of the Kissimmee River and therefore had similar climatic conditions and water temperatures. Water temperature is one of the most critical factors affecting DO concentrations, because the solubility of oxygen in water increases with a decrease in temperature. All reference sites were sand-bottomed blackwater streams with moderate to low impact from human activity.

Reference site data may be limited for several streams because the period of record was relatively short (<2 years). Also, the period of record does not overlap for all streams making it difficult to compare data among sites. Reference streams were shorter and narrower and had smaller drainage areas than the pre-

channelized Kissimmee River. Flow velocity and water depth of reference sites may also differ from the pre-channelized Kissimmee River. Additionally, some sections of reference streams receive more shading from riparian vegetation than the pre-channelized Kissimmee River.

These reference streams may not completely represent conditions that existed in the pre-channelized river. However, due to similarities in flow, watershed characteristics and water quality, these streams likely approximate oxygen regimes in the river before channelization, they are the best analog available.

Expectations

Based on comparisons of baseline and reference data, mean daytime concentration of DO in the Kissimmee River channel is expected to increase from <1–2 mg/L to 3–6 mg/L during the wet season and from 2–4 mg/L to 5–7 mg/L during the dry season. Mean daily concentrations are expected to be greater than 2 mg/L more than 90% of the time. Dissolved Oxygen concentrations within 1 m of the channel bottom are expected to exceed 1 mg/L more than 50% of the time.

Other Studies

Other factors under investigation are relationships between DO concentrations and precipitation, stage recession rates and groundwater inputs within the channelized system. Belanger (1994) found that critically low DO conditions occurred when the previously dry floodplain was inundated and rapidly drained. Toth (1988) hypothesized that a September 1988 fish kill caused by extremely low DO was likely linked to rapid drainage of water from the floodplain into remnant river channels and C-38. Seepage of groundwater also may contribute to low DO concentrations. Concentrations of ammonium-N and BOD in groundwater can be high and may represent a significant source of oxygen uptake (Belanger 1994). Dissolved oxygen data collected during the baseline period will be used with groundwater seepage, rainfall and flow data to investigate these relationships.

A study to monitor water quality during Phase I of the Kissimmee River Restoration project was initiated in June 1999 (Colangelo and Jones 2005). The objective of this study was to monitor changes in water quality as flow was diverted into remnant river runs, and as the old river channel was flushed. Additionally, vertical gradients in dissolved oxygen and turbidity upstream and downstream of the construction were monitored. Phosphorus concentrations and loads downstream of the construction also were monitored.

Future research may include a water column community metabolism study similar to that performed by McCormick et al. (1997) in the Florida Everglades. Diel DO data can be used in conjunction with water temperature and oxygen diffusion rates to estimate baseline and post-construction gross primary production and aerobic respiration within the water column. This type of study can provide information about the changing ecological health of the system.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors thank Ben Bolan, R. Harper Carroll IV, Pat Davis, Kim Kanter and Lisa Kreiger for their assistance with data collection and equipment calibration and Bonnie Rose for map preparation. We also would like to thank Lou Toth, David H. Anderson, Stephen G. Bousquin, Gary E. Williams, Mike Chimney, and Jim Laing for comments and suggestions that improved this report and the associated restoration expectation.

LITERATURE CITED

- Anderson, D. H., D. Frei, and W. P. Davis, 2005. River channel geomorphology of the channelized Kissimmee River. Chapter 3 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Bass, D. G. 1983. Rivers of Florida and their fishes. Completion report for Investigations Project, Dingell-Johnson. Project F-36, North Florida Streams Research, Study III. Florida Game and Fresh Water Fish Commission, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- Belanger, T. W., H. Heck, and C. Kennedy. 1994. Dissolved oxygen field studies in the Kissimmee River system. Final Report for Contract C-3205 to the South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach Florida, USA.
- Belanger, T. V., F. E. Dierberg, and J. Roberts. 1985. Dissolved oxygen concentrations in Florida's humic colored waters and water quality standard implications. *Florida Scientist* 48:107-119.
- Bott, T. L., J. T. Brock, C. S. Dunn, R. J. Naiman, R. W. Ovink, and R. C. Petersen. 1985. Benthic community metabolism in four temperate stream systems: an inter-biome comparison and evaluation of the river continuum concept. *Hydrobiologia* 123:3-45.
- Bousquin, S. G. 2005. Littoral vegetation in the channelized Kissimmee River baseline report. Chapter 7 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Colangelo, D. J., and B. L. Jones. 2005. Phase I of the Kissimmee River Restoration Project, Florida, USA: impacts of construction on water quality. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment* 102:139-158.
- Davis, J. C. 1975. Minimal dissolved oxygen requirements of aquatic life with emphasis on Canadian species: a review. *Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada* 32:2295-2332.
- Friedemann, M., and J. Hand. 1989. Typical water quality values for Florida's lakes, streams and estuaries. Standards and Monitoring Section, Bureau of Surface Water Management, Florida Department of Environmental Regulation, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- Germain, G. J. 1994. Surface water quality monitoring network. Technical Memorandum DRE 317. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Guardo, M. 1992. An atlas of the upper Kissimmee surface water management basins. Technical Memorandum. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Jones, B. L. 2005. Water quality in the channelized Kissimmee River, Chapter 5 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Koebel, J. W. 1995. An historical perspective on the Kissimmee River Restoration Project. *Restoration Ecology* 3:149-159.
- Koebel, J. W., B. L. Jones, and D. A. Arrington. 1999. Restoration of the Kissimmee River, Florida: water quality impacts from canal backfilling. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment* 57:85-107.
- Loftin, K. M., J. B. Waide, and T. V. Belanger. 1993. Dissolved oxygen model study for the Kissimmee River: a review of existing information and preliminary modeling. Howard L. Searcy Consulting Engineers in association with FTN Associates, Ltd. and Thomas V. Belanger, Ph.D, West Palm Beach Florida, USA.
- Matthews, W. J. 1998. *Patterns in Freshwater Fish Ecology*. Chapman and Hall, London, UK.
- McCormick, P. V., M. J. Chimney, and D. R. Swift. 1997. Diel oxygen profiles and water column community metabolism in the Florida Everglades, U.S.A. *Archiv für Hydrobiologie* 140:117-129.

CHAPTER 4 DISSOLVED OXYGEN

- Milleson, J. F. 1978. Limnological investigations of seven lakes in the Istokpoga drainage basin. Technical Publication No. 78-1. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Moss, D. D., and D. C. Scott. 1961. Dissolved-oxygen requirements of three species of fish. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 90:377-393.
- Parker, G. G., G. E. Ferguson, and S. K. Love. 1955. Water resources of southeastern Florida, with special reference to the geology and ground water of the Miami area. Water Supply Paper 1255. United States Geological Survey, Washington, D. C., USA.
- Phelps, G. G. 2002. Source water identification and chemical typing for nitrogen at the Kissimmee River, Pool C, Florida - Preliminary Assessment USGS report 02-48, SFWMD contract #10712. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Rutter, R. P., D. E. Sessions, D. A. Winkler. 1989. Kissimmee River Restoration Project: post-construction monitoring. Florida Department of Environmental Regulation, South Florida District, Punta Gorda, Florida, USA.
- SFWMD. 2000a. Kissimmee basin water supply plan, support document. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- SFWMD. 2000b. Save Our Rivers 2000 land acquisition and management plan. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Smale, M. A., and C. F. Rabeni. 1995. Hypoxia and hyperthermia tolerances of headwater stream fishes. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 124:698-710.
- Stewart-Oaten, A., W. W. Murdoch, and K. R. Parker. 1986. Environmental impact assessment: pseudoreplication in time? *Ecology* 67:929-940.
- Toth, L. A. 1993. The ecological basis for the Kissimmee River restoration plan. *Florida Scientist* 56:25-51.
- Toth, L. A. 1988. September 1988 Kissimmee River fish kill. Pages 241-247 *in* M. K. Loftin, L. A. Toth, and J. T. B. Obeysekera, editors. *Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium*. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Wetzel, R. G. 2001. *Limnology* third edition. Academic Press. San Diego, California, USA.



CHAPTER 5

WATER QUALITY IN THE CHANNELIZED KISSIMMEE RIVER

Bradley L. Jones

*Kissimmee Division, Watershed Management Department, South Florida Water Management District,
West Palm Beach, FL 33406*

ABSTRACT: To document water quality conditions in the channelized Kissimmee River, remnant river run and C-38 stations in Pools A and C were monitored for three years prior to Phase I construction. The range of median turbidity values was low (1.2–3.0 NTU), and median concentrations of chlorophyll *a* (3.3–17.3 mg/m³), total phosphorus (0.034–0.071 mg/L), total nitrogen (1.12–1.33 mg/L), specific conductance (110–277 µS/cm), and pH (5.88–6.87) were moderate. Chlorophyll *a* concentrations rose above 40 mg/m³ occasionally, indicating the presence of algal blooms. Variations in color, organic carbon, specific conductance, chloride, alkalinity, and pH reflected seasonality in headwater and tributary discharges. Higher ionic content in some river runs may be indicative of agricultural inflows. Small, but statistically significant differences existed between Pool A and Pool C runs. Chlorophyll *a*, turbidity, total phosphorus (TP), and alkalinity were higher in Pool A, while dissolved inorganic nitrogen, specific conductance, and chloride were higher in Pool C. Runoff from ditched tributaries increased phosphorus concentrations in one Pool C run. In contrast, a Pool A run receiving inflow from a floodplain marsh had more moderate concentrations. Total phosphorus concentrations at the upper four C-38 structures followed the trend of concentrations in Lake Kissimmee, which increased slightly after declining in the 1980s. A larger increase at S-65 may have been caused by phosphorus release and wind-induced sediment resuspension in the lake following artificial drawdown and hydrilla control, muck and tussock removal or dredging in the lake's south end, local impacts at the water control structure, or inputs of phosphorus near the lake's outlet. Elevated concentrations of phosphorus at S-65, coupled with high discharges from a succession of storms, resulted in disproportionately large phosphorus loading from S-65 in 1998. However, agricultural watersheds of Pools D and E remained the most concentrated source of phosphorus in the Kissimmee Basin. Concentrations at S-65D and S-65E were substantially higher than at the upstream structures. After restoration, turbidity and total suspended solids (TSS) concentrations are expected to remain low. As stated in the expectation compendium (Jones 2005), mean turbidity in the restored river channel should not differ significantly from mean turbidity in similar south Florida streams (3.9 NTU), and the median TSS concentration should not exceed 3 mg/L.

INTRODUCTION

Water quality is an important component of habitat quality, and its influence on fish, aquatic invertebrates, vegetation, microorganisms, and ecological dynamics is well known. Accordingly, the quality of water can be an important determinant of species presence, diversity, abundance, reproduction,

and productivity. Water quality also can be altered by physical modifications and shifts within biotic communities, so restoration of habitat can potentially improve water quality, which in turn may promote desired changes in the biota.

In addition, many water quality parameters respond quickly to physical and hydrologic changes and can serve as early indicators of changes in habitat quality. Water quality can be monitored frequently and rapidly to support adaptive management during restoration and recovery.

Water quality investigations also can supplement other studies of the Kissimmee River and its restoration (Bousquin et al. 2005), which document changes in species composition and habitat characteristics and distribution. Inclusion of water quality data in these evaluations can provide understanding of mechanisms leading to ecological change. For these reasons, water quality is an important component for assessing restoration of the Kissimmee River ecosystem.

Perhaps the most significant benefit of restoration with respect to water quality is the expected increase in dissolved oxygen concentrations. To document daily as well as seasonal variations in oxygen, additional monitoring was conducted. For this reason, dissolved oxygen has been discussed separately in the previous chapter (Colangelo and Jones 2005). The present chapter discusses baseline and reference conditions for water quality parameters other than dissolved oxygen, with special attention given to phosphorus, turbidity and total suspended solids (TSS).

Impacts of Channelization on Water Quality

Much of the initiative to restore the channelized Kissimmee River derived from concern that the C-38 flood control canal formed a conduit for rapid downstream transport of nutrients from the river's headwater basin. However, initial studies identified agricultural runoff, particularly from beef cattle ranching and dairy farming, as the primary cause of elevated phosphorus loads in the channelized system (Federico and Brezonik 1975, Florida Department of Environmental Regulation 1976, Lamonds 1975). In addition to facilitating direct entry of nutrients from surrounding agricultural lands by eliminating the system's natural capacity to filter and retain nutrients, the dredging of C-38 and ditching of lateral tributaries allowed cattle to graze along and within waterways throughout the floodplain. The most severe phosphorus runoff problems existed in the watersheds of Pools D and E. Soon after channelization, Lamonds (1975) found that the mean phosphorus concentration at S-65E (0.08 mg/L) was three times higher than at S-65, and the watersheds of Pools D and E contributed 75% of the phosphorus load originating in the river basin (excluding Lake Kissimmee). However, nitrogen concentrations did not appear to be related to intensity of agricultural land use. Nitrogen concentrations in C-38 ranged from 1.00 to 2.00 mg/L and decreased slightly between S-65 and S-65E.

Drastically modified flow patterns and channel morphometry also contributed to poorer water quality in the canal and remnant runs. The canal's water column was often stratified in summer, and water near the canal bottom was lower in dissolved oxygen and higher in phosphorus and ammonium-nitrogen (Lamonds 1975). These lower oxygen concentrations probably resulted from greater oxygen demand, anaerobic inputs from groundwater and tributaries, lack of consistent flow, and the canal's deep, box-cut shape. Stagnant conditions in remnant runs led to growth of aquatic vegetation and accumulation of organic sediment, which contributed to poor benthic habitat and chronic anoxic conditions. Specific conductance doubled from the 1950s to the early 1970s due to unusually low discharges, diversion of Lake Istokpoga outflow away from the river, and an increase in groundwater contributions (Lamonds 1975). From measurements of phytoplankton chlorophyll *a*, Rutter et al. (1989) concluded that the channelized system functioned more like a eutrophic reservoir than a natural river. Following periods of discharge through the system, phytoplankton responded to the influx of nutrients and formed blooms after water control structures were closed.

Objectives

The objectives of this chapter are to:

- (1) Establish baseline (channelized) and reference (pre-channelized) conditions for assessing the effects of restored flow on water quality;
- (2) Compare remnant river channel and C-38 water quality in Pools A and C during the three-year period before backfilling began in June 1999; and
- (3) Quantify phosphorus concentrations and loads throughout C-38, including temporal trends and seasonal differences over a 26-year record.

METHODS

Baseline Conditions*Comparison of Water Quality in Pools A and C*

Water quality data were compared from seven remnant river runs and two C-38 stations in Pools A and C for the period of March 18, 1996 to June 8, 1999. One station was sampled in each remnant run (Figure 5-1). Sampling of Rattlesnake Hammock Run (KREA 91) and Schoolhouse Run (KREA 92) in Pool A, and Oxbow 13 (KREA 93), Micco Bluff Run (KREA 94), and MacArthur Run (KREA 95) in Pool C began in March 1996. Ice Cream Slough Run (KREA 97) in Pool A was added to the monitoring program in November 1996, and Montsdeoca Run (KREA 98) in Pool C was added in December 1997. Data from C-38, sampled at S-65A and S-65C, were included to evaluate the quality of water entering and leaving the area to be restored. These data also were compared to remnant run data to determine the degree of similarity.

Samples from the remnant river runs were collected from a boat in mid-channel usually once per month. Sampling of C-38 was done on the upstream side of the water control structures. The canal samples were usually collected every two weeks, but the frequency ranged from weekly to bi-monthly.

At each station, water was sampled at a depth of zero to 0.5 m with a plastic bucket or Van Dorn bottle. Subsamples were transferred to polyethylene bottles. Unfiltered subsamples were analyzed for turbidity, TSS, chlorophyll *a*, total organic carbon (TOC), total phosphorus (TP), total Kjeldahl nitrogen (composed of organic nitrogen and ammonium), and alkalinity. Subsamples for color, dissolved organic carbon (DOC), soluble reactive phosphorus (SRP), nitrate- and nitrite-nitrogen, ammonium-nitrogen, and chloride were filtered through a 0.45 micron, polycarbonate membrane filter. Subsamples for TP, TOC, DOC, and nitrogen analyses were preserved immediately with 50% sulfuric acid to pH <2. Samples were transported on ice and refrigerated until analysis. Specific conductance and pH were measured *in situ* at a depth of 0.5 m with a Hydrolab®. Sampling and analytical methods are described in detail in the South Florida Water Management District (SFWMD) Comprehensive Quality Assurance Plan (SFWMD 1999).

Water quality data from certain lateral tributaries also are included in this report when needed to interpret water quality data from the remnant runs. These tributary stations include Rattlesnake Slough (KREA 89), which flows into Rattlesnake Hammock Run, two unnamed tributaries (KREA 99 and KREA 100) flowing into Montsdeoca Run, and Starvation Slough (KREA 83) and Oak Creek (KREA 96), which flow into Micco Bluff Run. These stations were visited monthly, but grab samples were collected only when flow was observed. The sampling method was the same as described above.

Data values below the detection limit of the analytical method were set to half the detection limit before performing statistical analysis. Because data from most stations were not normally distributed, significant differences ($p < 0.05$) between stations and pools were tested with the nonparametric Kruskal-Wallis test and Dunn's test using SAS, v.8 (SAS Institute, Cary, NC). Linear regressions of total phosphorus concentrations versus time were performed after log-transforming the data.

Only three years of baseline data are available for the river runs, but the water quality record for C-38 extends back to June 1973. The Kruskal-Wallis test was used to compare these earlier data to the 1996–1999 data set to determine if the latter data were significantly different from the longer period of record.

C-38 Phosphorus Concentrations and Loads

Further analysis of phosphorus data was based on grab samples from the six C-38 structures (S-65 to S-65E) since 1973 and from Lake Kissimmee since 1982. Monthly mean concentrations were calculated for months when multiple samples were collected. Summary statistics (e.g., annual and seasonal means) were then calculated from the monthly mean values.

Computation of total phosphorus loads involved grab samples supplemented by automatic sampling. Grab samples were only included in loading calculations if the structures had been open at the time of sample collection (i.e., there was flow through the pool). Samples also were taken with automatic samplers from the upper half of the water column on the upstream side of the structures. The autosampler took 80 ml water samples every 144 minutes (ten samples per day) and composited them in a pre-acidified, 1 liter, polyethylene bottle over a 24-hour period. These unrefrigerated, daily-composite samples were transported weekly to the lab for analysis. If two or more samples (grab or automated) were collected on a given day, the data were averaged to yield a daily mean concentration.

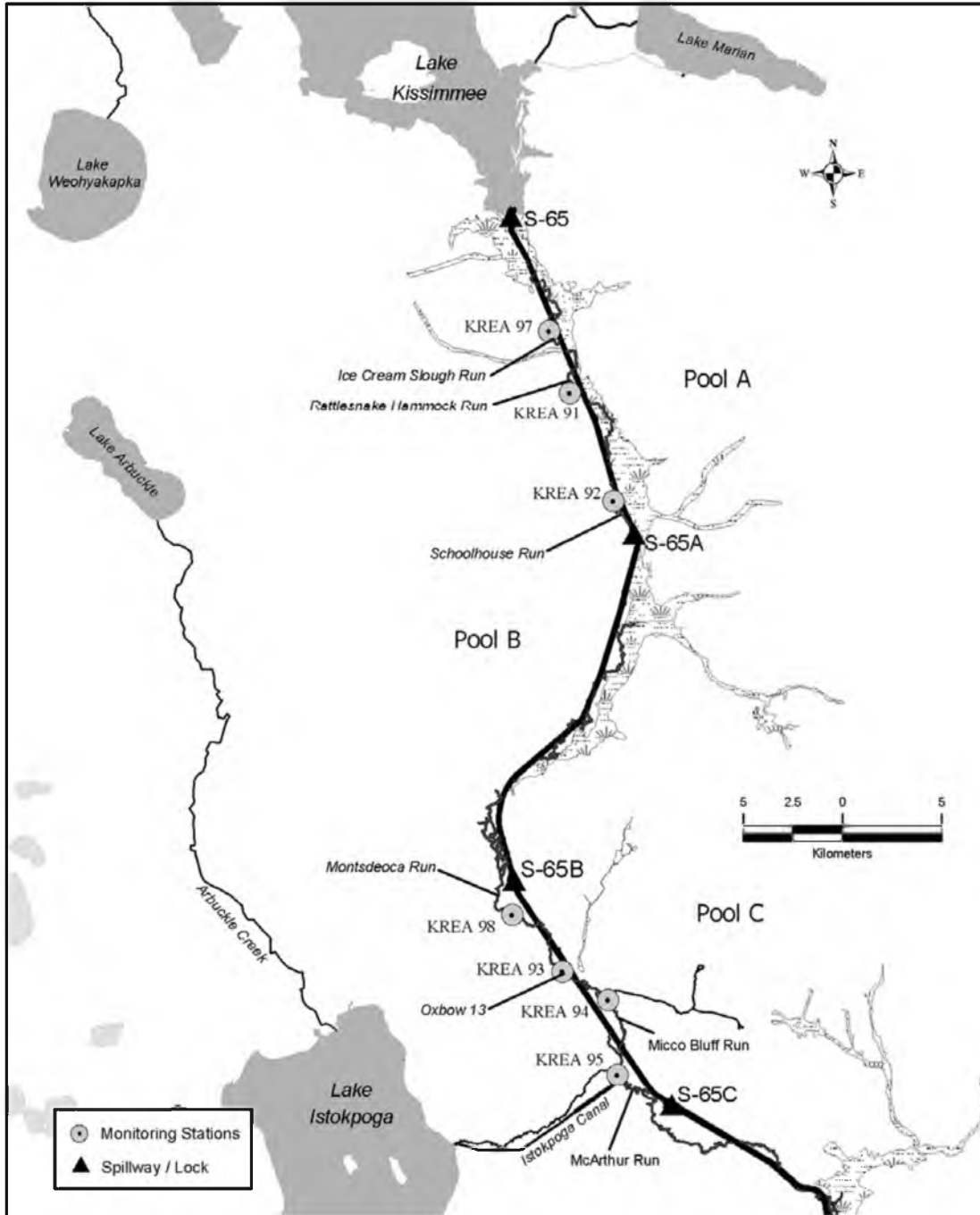


Figure 5-1. Locations of grab sample water quality monitoring stations (KREA91–KREA98) in Pools A and C.

Multiple samples collected the same day included grab samples collected on both upstream and downstream sides of the structures during earlier years.

After the TP concentration data set was established, concentrations for days between adjacent sampling dates were estimated by interpolation to provide estimated or measured TP concentrations for each day. If automated composite samples were collected between grab sample dates, measured TP values were available for each day of sampler operation and interpolation was not necessary.

Total phosphorus loads were calculated by multiplying daily TP concentration by daily discharge at each structure. Discharges were estimated by the U. S. Geological Survey (USGS) (S-65, S-65E) and SFWMD (S-65A, S-65B, S-65C, S-65D). Daily loads were summed by month and by year. To facilitate evaluation of long-term trends, discharge-weighted (D-W) TP concentrations were calculated by dividing annual TP load by annual discharge.

Reference Conditions

Little information is available on the quality of water in the pre-channelized Kissimmee River. The earliest description (Love 1955) of water quality in the pre-channelized ecosystem (1940–1941) characterized the river's water as soft (hardness ranging from 17 to 26 mg/L), highly colored (110 units on the platinum-cobalt scale), and low in total dissolved solids (61 to 80 mg/L). Daily monitoring at the SR 70 bridge west of the town of Okeechobee showed little variation in concentrations of dissolved constituents, indicating no or limited impact from surface runoff, although flow during this period (1940–1941) was only moderate (~1000–3000 cfs). However, runoff of particulates from the watershed may have been insignificant even during extreme flooding. The river was fed by upper basin lakes that overflowed through wide, shallow marshes during periods of heavy rainfall. Floods were characterized by slow changes in stage, low flow velocities, and long periods of recession. Floodwaters were relatively clear and little silt was left after floods passed (Bogart and Ferguson 1955). In addition to headwater flow from Lake Kissimmee, which supplied 58% of total river discharge (Bogart and Ferguson 1955), river flow was maintained by groundwater seepage from aquifers underlying upland areas (Parker 1955). Surface runoff was inhibited by flatness of the terrain, abundant vegetation, and permeable sandy soil. Consequently, the Kissimmee River carried relatively clear water, although it was capable of moving considerable quantities of loose sand during seasonal floods (Parker 1955). These characteristics suggest that watershed runoff did not carry much suspended material and did not significantly influence turbidity in the pre-channelized river. Any turbidity present would have been due to internal factors such as plankton, suspended detritus, or sediment erosion during extreme discharges. However, in a flowing, blackwater river surrounded by dense vegetation, phytoplankton blooms were probably rare.

Turbidity

Among the water quality parameters discussed in this chapter, a restoration expectation has been developed only for turbidity and TSS. Because no turbidity and TSS data exist from the pre-channelized Kissimmee River, reference conditions have been derived from similar streams in south Florida (Table 5-1). Data for these eight free-flowing, blackwater streams (Table 5-2) came from the SFWMD's database and were collected and analyzed in a manner similar to the baseline data. As described by Colangelo and Jones (2005), these streams and their watersheds share some features of the former Kissimmee River (e.g., low topographic relief, sandy substrate, presence of swamps or marshes, low velocity), although other characteristics such as watershed size, discharge, watershed development, and artificial drainage may differ.

Phosphorus Loading

Reference data are also lacking for phosphorus, the other parameter of primary interest. The only phosphorus data from the pre-channelized river are from three samples collected in 1952 (Odum 1953). One sample was taken on August 19, 1952 at a location believed to be the USGS gauge located south of SR 60 in what is now Pool A. The TP concentration in this sample was 0.060 mg/L. As documented later in this chapter, this concentration is similar to concentrations in Lake Kissimmee and C-38 (Pool A) after channelization. Sample concentrations collected two months earlier at two downstream stations were much lower. A sample collected on June 16, 1952 at Ft. Basinger, in what is now Pool D, had a concentration of 0.002 mg/L. Another sample collected on June 22, 1952 at SR 78 near the river's mouth had a concentration of 0.012 mg/L. Discharge on that date averaged 1,450 cfs (Joyner 1974), which is close to the mean daily discharge (2,231 cfs) for 1929–1960. Multiplying 0.012 mg/L by the mean daily discharge yields a mean loading rate of 65 kg/day or 24 metric tons per year (Mt/y). These data suggest that TP

CHAPTER 5 WATER QUALITY

concentrations and loads were very low in the lower part of the river compared to values measured decades later in Pools D and E.¹

Table 5-1. South Florida Water Management District data sets for Florida streams used as reference sites for turbidity and total suspended solids.

Water Body	SFWMD Station ID	County	Period of Record (month/year)	Frequency
Fisheating Creek	FECSR78	Glades	4/73–2/99	Weekly - Monthly
Arbuckle Creek	ARBKSR98	Highlands	2/88–2/99	Bi-Monthly
Lake Marian Creek	DLMARNCR	Polk	4/82–9/85	Monthly
Reedy Creek	CREEDYBR	Osceola	4/85–3/99	Monthly
Tiger Creek	ETIGERCR	Polk	4/82–6/85	Monthly
Josephine Creek	JOSNCR17	Highlands	2/88–2/99	Monthly - Bi-Monthly
Boggy Creek	ABOGG	Osceola	8/81–3/99	Monthly
Catfish Cr.-S. Branch	ROSALIEC	Polk	11/84–9/85	Monthly

Table 5-2. Summary of turbidity and total suspended solids data for Florida stream reference sites.

Water Body	Turbidity (NTU)				TSS (mg/L)¹		
	N	Median	Mean ± Std. Error	Max.	N	Median	Max.
Fisheating Creek	393	1.6	3.8 ± 0.9	290.0	365	<3.0	986.7
Arbuckle Creek	85	2.9	3.4 ± 0.2	14.4	39	<3.0	24.0
Lake Marian Creek	37	2.0	4.5 ± 1.9	70.0	13	4.0	15.0
Reedy Creek	150	1.3	2.0 ± 0.2	18.9	99	<3.0	58.0
Tiger Creek	33	3.9	3.9 ± 0.3	8.7	12	3.0	8.0
Josephine Creek	85	2.2	2.4 ± 0.2	10.5	39	<3.0	14.0
Boggy Creek	204	2.0	6.5 ± 2.8	570.0	116	<3.0	416.0
Catfish Cr.-S. Branch	11	3.8	4.8 ± 0.8	11.1	4	4.5	11.0

¹ = Most total suspended solids values were below detection limit (usually <3.0 mg/L). Consequently, means and standard errors for TSS are not shown.

RESULTS

Results are presented in two parts. The first part focuses on data collected during a period of approximately three years before backfilling began in June 1999. Water quality is compared between remnant river channel and C-38 sampling stations in Pools A and C. The second part of the results examines phosphorus concentrations and loads throughout C-38, including temporal trends and seasonal differences over a 26-year record.

¹ The Kissimmee River phosphorus data from 1952 should be treated with caution. Total phosphorus concentrations reported in the range of 0.002-0.012 mg/L may have been below the minimum detection unit of analytical methods commonly used over 50 years ago.

General Water Quality of Pools A and C

Appendix 5-1A presents descriptive statistics for data collected at each station. Because data for most parameters were not normally distributed, median values are emphasized in the text below.

Turbidity and Total Suspended Solids

Turbidity was usually below 10 NTU in all remnant runs (Appendix 5-2A). There was a slight tendency for higher values in summer, which probably reflect higher densities of phytoplankton. Median turbidity values were 1.2 to 2.5 NTU. Although variation was small, turbidity values in Pool A runs were significantly higher than in Pool C runs (Kruskal-Wallis test; $p < 0.05$). As indicated below in the Planktonic Chlorophyll *a* section, this difference may have been related to more phytoplankton in Pool A runs, which could be mainly attributed to brief algal blooms. Concentrations of TSS in remnant channels were 25 mg/L or less, and were usually below the detection limit of 3 mg/L.

Similar levels of turbidity and TSS were measured in C-38. However, turbidity was significantly higher (Kruskal-Wallis test; $p < 0.05$) at S-65A (median 3.0 NTU) than at S-65C (median 2.0 NTU) (Appendix 5-3A). Higher phytoplankton densities were probably responsible for most instances of higher turbidity at S-65A. The unusually high turbidity value (87 NTU) in May 1998 (Appendix 5-3A) coincided with the dense algal bloom observed at this station (Appendix 5-4A).

Compared to 1973–1996, turbidity in 1996–1999 was not significantly different at S-65C, but was slightly higher at S-65A (Kruskal-Wallis test; $p < 0.05$). Total suspended solids concentrations at the two structures did not differ significantly between the two time periods (Appendix 5-5A).

Judging from a comparison of these baseline data with data from the eight reference streams, channelization has not increased turbidity and TSS concentrations significantly. Aside from occasional algal blooms that raised turbidity under stagnant conditions, suspended particulates in the channelized river system remained low. Median turbidity and TSS values in these reference streams also were low (1.3–3.9 NTU and <3.0–4.5 mg/L, respectively; Table 5-2). These values were probably typical of the former Kissimmee River due to the characteristics of the river and its watershed mentioned earlier. Therefore, because both baseline values and comparable reference values have been low, turbidity and TSS are not expected to change significantly after restoration. As stated in the expectation compendium (Jones 2005), mean turbidity in the restored river channel should not differ significantly from overall mean turbidity in the eight reference streams (3.9 NTU), and median TSS concentration should not exceed 3 mg/L.

Planktonic Chlorophyll a

Concentrations of planktonic chlorophyll *a* were usually low in all remnant runs, but occasionally rose above 40 mg/m³ (Appendix 5-6A), indicating the presence of algal blooms. Blooms were found in six of the seven runs. Median chlorophyll *a* values ranged from 3.3 mg/m³ in Montsdeoca Run to 17.3 mg/m³ in Ice Cream Slough Run (Appendix 5-1A).

Chlorophyll *a* concentrations were significantly greater in Pool A runs than in Pool C runs (Kruskal-Wallis test; $p < 0.05$). Also, chlorophyll *a* was significantly higher in Oxbow 13 and Ice Cream Slough Run compared to the other runs in their respective pools (Dunn's test; $p < 0.05$). Concentrations in Oxbow 13 tended to be slightly higher than in the other Pool C runs toward the end of the three-year period (Appendix 5-6A). In Ice Cream Slough Run, the difference was due to a bloom in which chlorophyll *a* reached a maximum of 120.7 mg/m³ on June 24, 1998 (Appendix 5-6A). This bloom persisted in Ice Cream Slough Run until October. Rattlesnake Hammock Run also had a bloom in June 1998.

The June 1998 bloom in the remnant runs was preceded by a major bloom in C-38, where chlorophyll *a* exceeded 300 mg/m³ at S-65A on May 12, 1998 (Appendix 5-4A). The spring bloom in Pool A was followed by a bloom in Pool C, where chlorophyll *a* exceeded 105.9 mg/m³ at S-65C on July 7, 1998 and 75.6 mg/m³ on July 23, 1998 in Micco Bluff Run.

Chlorophyll *a* concentrations in C-38 (Appendix 5-4A) were usually similar to those in the remnant runs. Except for the bloom period of 1998, they remained at ≤ 50 mg/m³. The median concentration at S-65A (12.0 mg/m³) was 50% higher (Kruskal-Wallis test; $p < 0.05$) than the concentration at S-65C (8.0 mg/m³).

Color and Organic Carbon

Color was variable in remnant runs (Appendix 5-7A) and C-38 (Appendix 5-8A), ranging from 30 to 561 Pt-Co units. Rattlesnake Hammock Run had significantly (Dunn's test; $p < 0.05$) more color (median = 151 Pt-Co units) than the other two Pool A runs. In Pool C, Micco Bluff Run was significantly higher in color (median = 142 Pt-Co units) than MacArthur and Montsdeoca Runs. Rattlesnake Hammock Run received inflow that tended to be higher in color. Color at the outlet of Rattlesnake Slough (sampled three times in 1996) was 166–191 Pt-Co units. Micco Bluff Run received inflow from Starvation Slough and Oak Creek, which had median color values of 195–255 Pt-Co units (July 1996–August 1998 data). Other remnant runs, such as Montsdeoca Run, received tributary inflow that was lower in color and may have originated partially from pumped groundwater (B. Jones, SFWMD, personal observation).

Color values at the two C-38 stations, while similar to those in the remnant runs, followed a seasonal pattern. The highest color occurred in the wet season (summer of 1996, 1997, and 1998) when S-65 was closed but S-65C was open to pass local inflows (Appendix 5-8A). Color was more moderate during the dry season when discharges were either low or were predominantly from Lake Kissimmee.

Color was a good indicator of organic carbon concentrations. Correlations between color and TOC were significant at every station ($r^2 = 0.41$ to 0.92 ; $p < 0.05$). Consequently, TOC displayed the same temporal patterns, and differences and similarities between stations (Appendix 5-9A and Appendix 5-10A). Median TOC concentrations in remnant runs and C-38 ranged from 17.0 to 22.8 mg/L. Nearly all (>92%) organic carbon was in the dissolved form.

Color and organic carbon did not differ significantly between Pool A and Pool C remnant runs. These parameters also did not change significantly at S-65A and S-65C between 1973–1996 and 1996–1999 (Appendix 5-5A) (Kruskal-Wallis test; $p < 0.05$).

Phosphorus

With few exceptions, TP concentrations were moderate at all stations. Concentrations were significantly higher in Pool A runs than Pool C runs (Kruskal-Wallis test; $p < 0.05$), but this difference was due to lower concentrations in Montsdeoca Run. Median concentrations in river runs ranged from 0.034 mg/L in Montsdeoca Run to 0.071 mg/L in Micco Bluff Run, and medians for S-65A and S-65C were 0.067 and 0.056 mg/L, respectively.

In Pool A, Ice Cream Slough Run and Schoolhouse Run had significantly higher concentrations than Rattlesnake Hammock Run (Dunn's test; $p < 0.05$), and greater values were measured toward the end of the baseline sampling period (Appendix 5-11A). Concentrations in Rattlesnake Hammock Run may have been lower due to inflow from Rattlesnake Slough. Although water quality monitoring at the slough's outlet (KREA 89) ended in August 1996, 112 samples taken from 1986 to 1996 had TP concentrations (median = 0.041 mg/L, mean = 0.046 mg/L, range = 0.006–0.179 mg/L) similar to those measured in this run during 1996–1999.

Total phosphorus in Micco Bluff Run was significantly higher than in the other three runs in Pool C (Dunn's test; $p < 0.05$). In June 1997, TP in this run increased to more than 0.4 mg/L (Appendix 5-11A) following a week of precipitation totaling more than 7 cm. Samples taken on the same date from its two tributaries, Oak Creek and Starvation Slough, also were high in phosphorus (Appendix 5-12A). Although only a few samples were collected from these tributaries during 1996–1999, they indicate the potential for these tributaries to impact phosphorus concentrations in Micco Bluff Run.

Total P concentrations were essentially similar at S-65A and S-65C (Appendix 5-13A), even though they were statistically higher at S-65A (Kruskal-Wallis test; $p < 0.05$). In May 1998, higher TP at S-65A coincided with a spring algal bloom. A second, higher peak in August 1998 coincided with higher turbidity (but low chlorophyll *a*) that might have originated from suspension of lake sediment near S-65. Apparently, this turbidity plume drifted down to S-65C, where a smaller peak was measured the following month. Another phosphorus/turbidity spike appeared at S-65A in December 1998.

On average, concentrations of soluble reactive phosphorus were less than half the total P. However, except for the very high TP value at S-65A in August 1998, SRP was proportionately higher whenever TP concentrations rose. For example, when TP peaked in Micco Bluff Run in 1997 and Schoolhouse Run in 1998, SRP accounted for 77–79% of the total phosphorus. This percentage decreased as TP declined to background levels. The same relationship was present in C-38. Between August 1998 and March 1999, when phosphorus concentrations were slightly elevated in the canal, SRP made up approximately 60–90% of TP.

Total phosphorus and SRP at S-65A and S-65C were significantly higher (Kruskal-Wallis test; $p < 0.05$) in 1996–1999 than in 1973–1996 (Appendix 5-5A). Concentrations at these monitoring stations followed the trend at the Lake Kissimmee outflow and increased after 1994 (See Phosphorus Concentrations and Loads below).

Nitrogen

Total nitrogen (TN) concentrations, calculated from total Kjeldahl nitrogen and nitrate/nitrite analyses, ranged from 0.50 to 2.34 mg/L in the remnant runs and showed no temporal trends or significant differences between stations or pools during the 1996–1999 baseline period (Appendix 5-14A). Median concentrations among monitoring stations ranged from 1.12 to 1.33 mg/L over these three years. With the exception of one data point (a value of 5 mg/L coinciding with the dense algal bloom at S-65A in 1998), the range of concentrations in C-38 was similar (Appendix 5-15A), and the median TN concentration was 1.13 mg/L at both S-65A and S-65C.

The dissolved inorganic nitrogen (DIN) fraction (nitrate, nitrite, and ammonium ions) comprised 2–14% of the total nitrogen and was significantly greater in Pool C runs than in Pool A runs (Kruskal-Wallis test; $p < 0.05$). This difference was due to concentrations in Montsdeoca and MacArthur Runs, which were significantly higher than concentrations in other runs of Pool C (Dunn's test; $p < 0.05$). Montsdeoca Run received occasional discharge from Pool B (through Culvert S-65BX2 in the S-65B tieback levee) and two ditches draining a nearby pasture and citrus grove. Median DIN concentrations in samples collected from these ditches in 2001 were 1.62–1.96 mg/L, indicating that they probably were the source of higher DIN concentrations (mostly nitrate) in Montsdeoca Run. The citrus grove was irrigated with groundwater from the Floridan Aquifer, and excess water was apparently released to the run. However, 11 samples taken from a nearby Floridan Aquifer well (OKF-42) at S-65C had lower DIN concentrations (median = 0.41 mg N/L; 99% ammonium-N) than the ditches (Florida Department of Environmental Protection, 2000), thus pointing to the influence of agricultural land use on these ditch concentrations. Groundwater seepage directly into Montsdeoca Run also has been investigated as a potential source of nitrogen, but Belanger et al. (2001) have found that mean nitrate/nitrite concentrations in shallow groundwater wells (0.023–0.075 mg N/L) on the channel bank were lower than in the channel (0.463 mg N/L). MacArthur Run is another run that occasionally received substantial citrus and pasture drainage via its main tributary, the Istokpoga Canal. However, no water quality data from the canal and its inflows are available to determine why MacArthur Run was higher in DIN.

Dissolved inorganic nitrogen concentrations in C-38 were slightly higher than in most remnant runs and tended to be lowest in the spring and summer (Appendix 5-16A). This seasonal pattern also may have been present in remnant runs (Appendix 5-17A). Compared to 1973–1996, significantly higher DIN concentrations were present at S-65A and S-65C during 1996–1999 (Appendix 5-5A), but total nitrogen did not differ significantly between the two periods (Kruskal-Wallis test; $p < 0.05$).

Other parameters

Significant differences in specific conductance, chloride, and alkalinity existed between Pool A and Pool C runs due to particular conditions in certain runs. Specific conductance and chloride were higher in Pool C runs, while alkalinity was higher in Pool A runs (Kruskal-Wallis test; $p < 0.05$).

Median values of specific conductance at river channel stations ranged from 110 to 227 $\mu\text{S}/\text{cm}$, which can be classified as moderate for a Florida freshwater system. Ice Cream Slough Run, Montsdeoca Run, and MacArthur Run had significantly higher values (Dunn's test; $p < 0.05$) than the other runs in their respective pools (Appendix 5-18A). Specific conductance in Montsdeoca and MacArthur Runs appears to be related to chloride concentrations (Appendix 5-19A), indicating the importance of agricultural inputs to these runs. Median chloride concentrations in two ditches feeding Montsdeoca Run were over 80–100 mg/L (SFWMD unpublished data, 2001), about twice the level in Montsdeoca Run (42.2 mg/L). The higher DIN concentrations in Montsdeoca Run also appear to be somewhat related to specific conductance. Higher values of specific conductance in Ice Cream Slough Run were related to alkalinity (Appendix 5-20A) instead of chloride, suggesting a different source, possibly groundwater-related. Median alkalinity (61.9 mg CaCO_3/L) in Ice Cream Slough Run was nearly twice the median at any other station.

Specific conductance, chloride, and alkalinity values in the other four runs did not vary as much and resembled levels found in C-38 (Appendix 5-21A, Appendix 5-22A, and Appendix 5-23A). As with color

and organic carbon data, some slight seasonal variations (e.g., specific conductance in C-38), may indicate wet-dry season cycles.

Values of pH (range = 4.80–8.15) also varied seasonally (Appendix 5-24A and Appendix 5-25A). Lowest values were measured at S-65A and S-65C, but these two stations had significantly higher mean values (~ 6.8) than the remnant runs (5.95–6.47). Lower mean values in the remnant runs may reflect more influence of tributary inputs and surrounding vegetation and soils. More neutral values in C-38 are probably due to higher pH in Lake Kissimmee. Mean pH at S-65 was 7.33 during the 1996–1999 period.

Compared to 1973–1996, specific conductance, chloride, and alkalinity were significantly lower at S-65A and S-65C in 1996–1999, and pH was higher at S-65A (Kruskal-Wallis test; $p < 0.05$) (Appendix 5-5A).

Phosphorus Concentrations and Loads

Total Phosphorus Concentrations in C-38 and Lake Kissimmee

Long-term trends in monthly mean TP concentrations at S-65, S-65A, S-65B, and S-65C generally reflect the trend in Lake Kissimmee (Appendix 5-26A and Appendix 5-27A). However, concentrations at these structures, particularly at S-65, were sometimes higher than in the lake. Linear regressions on the log-transformed data indicated significant increases in TP from June 1973 to May 1999. While concentrations at these four structures were generally similar, S-65 exhibited the greatest increase ($r^2 = 0.20$; $p < 0.01$), and the slope of the upward trend decreased progressively downstream. Most of the increase occurred after 1994.

Because C-38 transports phosphorus loads from Lake Kissimmee, an understanding of factors affecting lake phosphorus concentrations is important for assessing past and future loading from C-38. Until the 1980s, effluents from wastewater treatment plants raised TP concentrations in Lake Tohopekaliga, Lake Cypress, Lake Hatchineha, and the northern portion of Lake Kissimmee (Williams 2001). The influence on Lake Kissimmee during this time is indicated by the difference in TP concentrations between the lake's northern monitoring station (E02) and central station (E04) (Appendix 5-26A). As these effluents were diverted away from the lakes, TP concentrations declined in Lake Tohopekaliga and the lakes downstream (James et al. 1993, 1994, Williams 2001). Later, hydrilla expanded across these lakes. Hydrilla was first reported in Lake Kissimmee in 1977 (Williams 1990), but coverage remained below 20 percent until 1991. Coverage then increased each year until 1995, when it reached 52% (SFWMD et al. 1997). Management efforts were confined to controlling only the heaviest hydrilla growth until 1997, when lake-wide treatment with fluridone herbicide became possible. By October 1998, hydrilla occupied only 19% of Lake Kissimmee (Florida DEP Bureau of Invasive Plant Management, unpublished data). Total phosphorus, chlorophyll a , and turbidity in Lake Kissimmee were relatively low during the period of hydrilla expansion, but increased in the year following lake-wide treatment (Appendix 5-28A). The mean lake TP concentration in 1998 was 0.062 mg/L, which was its highest since 1987.

Total phosphorus concentrations at S-65 have followed the upward trend in Lake Kissimmee, but have been frequently higher than mid-lake concentrations in recent years. From 1989–1999, the highest TP concentrations at S-65 (~ 0.15–0.50 mg/L) have occurred in 1989, 1992, 1996, and 1998 (Appendix 5-26A). The 1989 and 1992 phosphorus pulses traveled downstream and were detectable at S-65A, S-65B, and S-65C (Appendix 5-26A and Appendix 5-27A). Monthly mean TP (0.175–0.463 mg/L) and SRP (0.099–0.348 mg/L) at S-65 were exceptionally high in samples taken from June to August 1992. The magnitude and duration of this event suggests discharge of a concentrated source of phosphorus to the south end of Lake Kissimmee. In 1996, high TP values coincided with dredging, vegetation removal, and low water levels during a managed drawdown of the lake. Because discharges were low during the time of greatest impact, concentrations downstream of S-65 were not greatly affected. In 1998, higher TP concentrations at S-65 might have been due to local factors that will be mentioned in the following Phosphorus Loads section.

While phosphorus concentrations and loads at S-65A, S-65B, and S-65C depended largely on concentrations in Lake Kissimmee, especially at higher discharges, local influences on concentrations at S-65 could have affected loading calculations at this structure at certain times. Higher TP values could also occur occasionally during low- or no-flow conditions due to algal blooms in C-38, but in general, TP concentrations at these structures were moderate in comparison to concentrations at S-65D and S-65E (Appendix 5-27A). Over a 25-year period (1974–1998), mean annual TP concentrations at the four upper

structures were similar to each other (0.051–0.055 mg/L), despite higher concentrations at S-65 in the late 1990s (Appendix 5-29A). Mean monthly TP values (Appendix 5-30A) appear to show that concentrations increased in the summer, especially at S-65D and S-65E. Concentrations at S-65 and S-65A also appear to increase. However, if 1992 and 1996 TP values are excluded, average concentrations at S-65 and S-65A become lower relative to S-65B and S-65C, and the resulting plots more closely resemble plots of median monthly TP values (Appendix 5-30A). Consequently, to avoid the bias of years with unusually high values, seasonal means were calculated from the median monthly values. Resulting wet season means (June–November) were higher than dry season means (December–May), and these differences were greater at the lower structures (Appendix 5-31A).

Phosphorus Loads

Mean monthly discharges and phosphorus loads in C-38 followed a distinct seasonal pattern (Appendix 5-32A), reflecting the schedule of regulatory releases from Lake Kissimmee, as well as rainfall-runoff during the wet season. Over 60 percent of discharges and loads from S-65 occurred during the dry season, when the Kissimmee lakes were lowered in preparation for rains in summer and fall. In the wet season, a higher proportion of discharge originated from the C-38 basin (Appendix 5-33A).

Annual phosphorus loads (Appendix 5-34A) at S-65 to S-65C rose during 1974–1998 due to increases in both discharges (Appendix 5-35A) and concentrations (Appendix 5-26A, Appendix 5-27A, and Appendix 5-29A). During the last three years, mean annual discharge from S-65 was almost 50 percent greater than in 1974–1995, and mean annual phosphorus loading increased by more than 360 percent. Discharge-weighted TP concentrations (Appendix 5-36A) rose from 0.043 mg/L (1974–1995) to 0.104 mg/L (1996–1998). Although D-W TP concentrations at S-65D and S-65E were higher in most years (Appendix 5-36A), they did not increase in 1996–1998. Consequently, loading from the upper basin became proportionately greater. From 1974 to 1995, discharge from S-65 accounted for 69% of discharge from S-65E, but only 30% of the phosphorus load. In 1996–1998, S-65 contributed 76% of the discharge and 68% of the phosphorus load from S-65E (Appendix 5-37A). In the latter period, phosphorus loads from S-65 exceeded loads from S-65A, S-65B, and S-65C due to higher concentrations at the headwater structure and possible underestimation of discharge at the downstream structures, particularly at S-65A during heavy flow in 1997–1998.

The high discharge in 1997–1998 resulted from an unusual succession of storms caused by the El Niño climatic phenomenon. Large releases were made through S-65 beginning in late November 1997. Discharges climbed to over 8000 cfs in December and January and over 10,000 cfs in February and March (Appendix 5-38A). Consequently, the river's headwater contributed most of S-65E's discharge (78%) and phosphorus loading (54%) in 1998. Nearly all (98%) of the 1998 loading from S-65 that year occurred in the first four months. Total phosphorus concentrations at S-65 were above average during this time and were higher than concentrations in Lake Kissimmee, which were between 0.04 and 0.05 mg/L (Appendix 5-38A). Concentrations in Lake Hatchineha, Lake Cypress, Reedy Creek, and Lake Tohopekaliga were similar to the values in Lake Kissimmee. Therefore, the upper basin was not the source of higher concentrations at S-65. Instead, local factors near S-65 appear to have affected phosphorus concentrations during this period. These factors may have included agricultural runoff, wind-induced suspension of sediment from a clear lake bottom formerly covered with weeds, construction activities or weed accumulation at S-65, or mechanical weed harvesting. Because these few months during 1997–1998 and the three-year period of 1996–1998 were unusual with respect to these local factors, the higher concentrations and loads measured during this time may not signify a lasting trend. In fact, more recent data (1999–2003) collected by the SFWMD indicate that annual mean TP concentrations at S-65 are closer to the long-term average (B. Jones, SFWMD, unpublished data). Consequently, the baseline condition for C-38 phosphorus loads was established using data from prior years (1974–1995).

During 1974–1995, phosphorus loading at S-65C and S-65D averaged 51 and 83 Mt/y, respectively. These amounts comprised 43% and 71% of the load at S-65E. Upstream of the restoration area, at S-65A, the mean loading rate was 42 Mt/y (Appendix 5-37A).²

² Discharges and phosphorus loads were estimated for the designated structures only and do not represent accurate estimates for the entire channel-floodplain system. Other significant, unmeasured discharges through the system may have occurred during this baseline period. Prior analysis conducted by the SFWMD during development of the 1997 Lake Okeechobee SWIM Plan Update (SFWMD 1997)

Because phosphorus loads can vary greatly from year to year, discharge-weighted concentrations (annual load divided by annual discharge) provide a more useful metric for evaluating effects of restoration. Annual mean D-W TP concentrations were 0.053 mg/L at S-65C (range = 0.033–0.087 mg/L) and 0.078 mg/L at S-65D (range = 0.047–0.141 mg/L) (Appendix 5-39A). Concentrations were greater during years of lowest flow (1981 and 1985).

DISCUSSION

1996–1999 Baseline Comparisons

Many statistically significant differences in water quality between remnant river runs were small or ecologically unimportant (e.g., turbidity), or due to transient events such as algal blooms (e.g., chlorophyll *a*). However, some of these differences demonstrate the impact of tributary runoff in the channelized system. For example, phosphorus concentrations in Micco Bluff Run were apparently elevated by pasture runoff from its tributaries. Although land use has not affected water quality in Pool C as severely as pasture and dairy runoff has in Pools D and E, evidence suggests that direct runoff from ditched tributaries has had measurable impacts on water quality in Pool C river channels.

Conversely, marsh inflow might have regulated phosphorus concentrations in Rattlesnake Hammock Run. The moderate TP concentrations in the outflow from Rattlesnake Hammock Marsh may be illustrative of water quality in restored wetlands, which may be capable of retaining substantial amounts of phosphorus as water moves between the channel and floodplain. Goldstein (1993) found that small wetlands could remove between 25% and 80% of the phosphorus they received. In the Everglades, marshes constructed to remove phosphorus from agricultural inflows reduced TP concentrations from 0.100 to 0.025 mg/L (SFWMD 2001). Moustafa et al. (1996) estimated that Boney Marsh had a mean annual phosphorus removal efficiency of 71%. The Boney Marsh experiment demonstrates that a significant proportion of phosphorus can be assimilated even when input concentrations are moderately low, as is typical of much of the Kissimmee River. Most studies of other constructed wetlands have reported comparable removal efficiencies (Gersberg et al. 1984, Godfrey et al. 1985, Cooper and Findlater 1990, Pride et al. 1990, Meiorin 1989, LaRock et al. 1991, Mitsch 1992, Moustafa 1999).

Backfilling of ditched tributaries with high TP concentrations and reestablishment of floodplain sloughs also should reduce phosphorus inputs to the river channel. Because most phosphorus in lateral inflows appears to be SRP, successful reductions in phosphorus inputs must occur through biological uptake on the floodplain, rather than entrapment of particulates. After restoration, phosphorus concentrations and other parameters should exhibit less variability in Pool C, as continuous flow and hydrologic interaction with the floodplain restores more consistent, high-quality water to the river. In Pool A, water quality may become more consistent as well if ditches are degraded, cattle are removed, and the canal receives continuous flow from Lake Kissimmee.

Baseline water quality in the remnant runs was similar to water quality in C-38, except for pH, which was somewhat higher in the canal. Differences within C-38 (at S-65A and S-65C) were insignificant, except for a few parameters — notably turbidity, chlorophyll *a*, TP (higher at S-65A), and DIN (higher at S-65C). However, these differences were small, and in most cases can be attributed to brief events such as algal blooms and turbidity in discharge from Lake Kissimmee. Consequently, if the quality of water improves significantly as it flows through the restored area, this change should be evident by comparing pre- and post-restoration data at the upstream (S-65A) and downstream (S-65C) stations. Likewise, the overall similarity of water quality in the Pool A and Pool C remnant runs allow the Pool A runs to serve as acceptable controls for comparison with the Pool C runs in the post-restoration evaluation.

identified discrepancies in the water budgets of individual pools that were attributed to undocumented discharges through flanking structures along the pool tieback levees (Joseph Albers, SFWMD, personal communication). Consequently, further examination of operational records and analysis of hydrologic data would be needed to accurately estimate baseline discharges and loads from each pool. In addition, better understanding of channel-floodplain hydrology is needed for future evaluation of post-restoration phosphorus loads, which should take these unmeasured baseline discharges into account when doing pre- and post-restoration comparisons.

C-38 Phosphorus Concentrations and Loads

After declining in the 1980s and early 1990s, TP concentrations in Lake Kissimmee exhibited a small increase, which was most noticeable at S-65. Concentrations in C-38 followed the headwater trend. Possible factors contributing to these higher concentrations include: lake management activities (organic sediment and tussock removal, and dredging); response of Lake Kissimmee to artificial drawdown and hydrilla control (sediment phosphorus release and return to a plankton-dominated system); wind-induced sediment resuspension in the lake; local impacts at S-65 (weed accumulation and SR 60 bridge construction); or inputs of phosphorus near the lake's outlet. It is significant to note, however, that these potential causes did not always increase TP loading downstream, because S-65 was frequently closed when concentrations were greatest.

Elevated TP concentrations at S-65, coupled with very high discharges during a succession of storms, resulted in disproportionately large phosphorus loading from S-65 in 1998. This raised concern that urban development in Orange and Osceola Counties had accelerated eutrophication of the Kissimmee Chain of Lakes. However, TP concentrations in these lakes, including Lake Kissimmee, were lower than concentrations at S-65, thus pointing to causal factors near the structure. The prospect of a local influence near the outlet of Lake Kissimmee poses a more manageable problem for phosphorus control efforts, and the upward TP trend may prove to be a condition that can be rapidly reversed.

Although there is no obvious indication that urbanization has increased phosphorus loading from S-65, it remains a potential threat. Further land development as well as existing agricultural operations could affect future loading from the headwater lakes if nonpoint-source runoff is not controlled adequately. Consequently, efforts to monitor and control phosphorus runoff in the upper basin should continue.

Restoration of the Kissimmee River might reduce phosphorus loading downstream as the restored floodplain sloughs and marshes provide opportunity for retention and assimilation of phosphorus from the river's headwater- and watershed. The Kissimmee River is the largest inflow and source of phosphorus to Lake Okeechobee (SFWMD 2003), so reduced loading would significantly benefit lake eutrophication management. However, a reliable prediction of phosphorus load reduction is difficult due to insufficient knowledge of future river-floodplain hydrology and assimilation rates. As mentioned above, very little phosphorus data exist from the pre-channelized river, so it is unknown if net phosphorus retention occurred in the past. Likewise, not enough is known at this time about flow pathways, rates, volumes, and residence times in the restored river-floodplain to derive estimates of future phosphorus retention rates.

One indication that the floodplain may act to retain phosphorus comes from Boney Marsh, a 49 ha constructed wetland formerly located in Pool B. Over a nine-year period (1978–1986), this marsh received controlled but variable inflow with an average TP concentration of 0.056 mg/L. The marsh's monthly mean retention rate was $0.03 \text{ g}\cdot\text{m}^{-2}\cdot\text{month}^{-1}$ and TP concentrations in its outflow averaged 0.020 mg/L, representing a TP removal efficiency of 71% (Moustafa et al. 1996). It is difficult, however, to extrapolate these results to the entire river-floodplain system. Although this wetland represented a typical broadleaf marsh and the annual water regime was managed to generally resemble the average hydroperiod in the floodplain before channelization, it was not representative of the entire floodplain. Water depths in this marsh averaged 38 cm and fluctuated over a 90 cm range. The hydraulic residence time was 18 days (Mierau and Trimble 1988). Much of the water in the restored floodplain will be passing through areas with greater depths and shorter residence times.

Although a simple model of the restored river could be developed based on a set of assumptions of future discharges, phosphorus inputs, and assimilation rates, a large amount of uncertainty would be associated with calculations of future concentrations and loads. A simple model might not be able to deal with the spatial variability of soils, vegetation, and hydroperiod that could influence rates of assimilation and decomposition. Therefore, estimates of phosphorus concentration and load reductions have not been developed quantitatively in the form of an expectation.

Recommendations for Further Evaluation

The current monitoring design should be sufficient to detect changes in Pool C relative to Pool A. Monitoring of Pools A and C are expected to continue as described here, with grab samples collected at biweekly to monthly intervals at C-38 and river channel stations. These data will be supplemented by 24-hour monitoring of phosphorus collected by autosamplers in C-38. In addition, wetland stations were added to the water quality program in August 2001 as the floodplain in Pool C became inundated.

CHAPTER 5 WATER QUALITY

To improve evaluation of phosphorus loads, more accurate and reliable discharge estimates are needed. Also, possible factors contributing to higher concentrations should be examined more thoroughly. Studies of factors affecting phosphorus trends in Lake Kissimmee will be valuable, but an investigation of possible sources of phosphorus near S-65 is just as important. Because concentrations and loads at S-65B were similar to levels at S-65A and S-65C, a continuation of loading estimates at the location of S-65B (now demolished) is not necessary, but routine monitoring of water quality will continue at a nearby station in the river channel (KREA 98 in Montsdeoca Run).

More attention should be given to nutrient dynamics in the channelized and restored systems. Specific investigations should include phosphorus exchange between the river channel and floodplain, and assimilation and release of phosphorus in floodplain wetlands. Some preliminary work has been done to analyze phosphorus content in floodplain soil samples in Pool D. Further field collections, along with possible experimental studies, should be considered. Although it is too late to perform a field study of pre-restoration conditions in Pool C, an evaluation could be conducted using Pool D, with interpretations applied to Pool C as appropriate.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The author thanks David J. Colangelo for assistance with statistical analysis, Cheol Mo for providing discharge and phosphorus loading data, and Lou Toth, Joseph W. Koebel, David H. Anderson, David J. Colangelo, Joseph Albers, and Zaki Moustafa for helpful comments on the manuscript. The author is also grateful to the staff of the SFWMD Environmental Resource Assessment Department, who collected and analyzed samples and managed the water quality monitoring program.

CHAPTER 5 WATER QUALITY

LITERATURE CITED

- Belanger, T. V., H. H. Heck, R. Kirkner, B. Jones, S. Krupa, C. Gefvert, D. Colangelo, and D. Butler. 2001. Kissimmee River groundwater seepage study: Phase I and II. Final report submitted to the South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Bogart, D. B., and G. E. Ferguson. 1955. Surface water. Pages 291-510 *in* G. G. Parker, G. E. Ferguson, and S. K. Love, editors. Water resources of southeastern Florida. Supply Paper 1255. U. S. Geological Survey, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- Bousquin, S. G., D. H. Anderson, D. J. Colangelo, and G. E. Williams. 2005. Introduction: baseline studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. Chapter 1 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Colangelo, D. J., and B. L. Jones. 2005. Dissolved oxygen in the channelized Kissimmee River and seven reference streams. Chapter 4 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Cooper, P. F., and B. C. Findlater, editors. 1990. Constructed wetlands in water pollution control. Pergamon Press, New York, New York, USA.
- Federico, A., and P. L. Brezonik. 1975. A survey of water quality in the Kissimmee-Okeechobee watershed. Technical Series 1(8). Florida Department of Environmental Regulation, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- Florida Department of Environmental Protection. 2000. Generalized Water Information System database, version 3.0, May 2000. Florida Department of Environmental Protection, Ambient Monitoring Section, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- Florida Department of Environmental Regulation. 1976. Report of investigations in the Kissimmee River-Lake Okeechobee watershed. FDER Technical Series 2(2). Florida Department of Environmental Regulation, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- Gersberg, R. M., B. V. Elkins, and C. R. Goldman. 1984. Wastewater treatment by artificial wetlands. *Water Technology* 1:443-450.
- Godfrey, P. J., E. R. Kaynor, S. Pelczarski, and J. Benforado, editors. 1985. Ecological considerations in wetlands treatment of municipal wastewaters. Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., New York, New York, USA.
- Goldstein, A. L. 1993. Utilization of wetlands as BMPs for the reduction of nitrogen and phosphorus in agricultural runoff from south Florida watersheds. *Lake Management* 2:345-350.
- James, R. T., K. M. O'Dell, and B. L. Jones. 1993. Water quality improvements of Lake Tohopekaliga in response to lake management. Pages 26-37 *in* C. E. Watkins, H. McGinnis, and K. J. Hatcher, editors. Proceedings of the Southeastern Lakes Management Conference, The Benefits of Lake and Reservoir Management. North American Lake Management Society, Alachua, Florida, USA.
- James, R. T., K. O'Dell, and V. H. Smith. 1994. Water quality trends in Lake Tohopekaliga, Florida, USA: responses to watershed management. *Water Resources Bulletin* 30:531-546.
- Jones, B. L. 2005. Turbidity and suspended solids concentrations in the river channel. *In* D. H. Anderson, S. G. Bousquin, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Defining success: expectations for restoration of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Expectation 9. Technical Publication ERA #433.
- Joyner, B. F. 1974. Chemical and biological conditions of Lake Okeechobee, Florida, 1969-1972. Report of Investigations No. 71. Florida Department of Natural Resources, Bureau of Geology, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.

CHAPTER 5 WATER QUALITY

- Lamonds, A. G. 1975. Chemical characteristics of the lower Kissimmee River, Florida - with emphasis on nitrogen and phosphorus. WRI 45-75. U. S. Geological Survey, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- LaRock, P. A., B. Tuovila, T. Johengen, J. Outland, C. Watkins, and E. Livingston. 1991. The role of aquatic marshland plants in reducing pollutant loads to a Florida lake. Pages 41-50 *in* M. Kylely, editor. Proceedings of the Second Annual Meeting of Florida North American Lake Management Society. Florida Lake Management Society, Winterhaven, Florida, USA.
- Love, S. K. 1955. Quality of ground and surface water. Pages 727-833 *in* G. G. Parker, G. E. Ferguson, and S. K. Love, editors. Water resources of southeastern Florida. Supply Paper 1255. U. S. Geological Survey, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- Meiorin, E. C. 1989. Urban runoff treatment in a fresh/brackish water marsh in Fremont, California. Pages 667-685 *in* D. A. Hammer, editor. Constructed wetlands for wastewater treatment: municipal, industrial and agricultural. Lewis Publishers, Chelsea, Michigan, USA.
- Mierau, R., and P. Trimble. 1988. Hydrologic characteristics of the Kissimmee River floodplain Boney Marsh experimental area. Technical Memorandum 9-88. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Mitsch, W. J. 1992. Landscape design and the role of created, restored, and natural riparian wetlands in controlling nonpoint source pollution. *Ecological Engineering* 1:27-47.
- Moustafa, M. Z. 1999. Nutrient retention dynamics of the Everglades Nutrient Removal Project. *Wetlands* 19:689-704.
- Moustafa, M. Z., M. J. Chimney, T. D. Fontaine, G. Shih, and S. Davis. 1996. The response of a freshwater wetland to long-term "low-level" nutrient loads - marsh efficiency. *Ecological Engineering* 7:15-33.
- Odum, H. T. 1953. Dissolved phosphorus in Florida waters. Pages 1-40 *in* Report of investigations, No. 9: miscellaneous studies. Florida Geological Survey, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- Parker, G. G. 1955. Geomorphology. Pages 127-155 *in* G. G. Parker, G. E. Ferguson, and S. K. Love, editors. Water resources of southeastern Florida. U. S. Supply Paper 1255. Geological Survey, Tallahassee, Florida, USA.
- Pride, R. E., J. S. Nohrstedt, and L. D. Benfield. 1990. Utilization of created wetlands to upgrade small municipal wastewater treatment systems. *Water Air Soil Pollution* 50:371-385.
- Rutter, R. P., D. E. Sessions, and D. A. Winkler. 1989. Kissimmee River Restoration Project: post-construction monitoring. Florida. Department of Environmental Regulation, South Florida District, Punta Gorda, Florida, USA.
- SFWMD. 1997. Surface water improvement and management (SWIM) plan: update for Lake Okeechobee. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- SFWMD. 1999. South Florida Water Management District comprehensive quality assurance plan. WRE Inventory No. 383. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- SFWMD. 2001. 2001 Everglades consolidated report. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- SFWMD. 2003. Surface water improvement and management (SWIM) plan: update for Lake Okeechobee. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- SFWMD, Florida Game and Fresh Water Fish Commission, U. S. Army Corps of Engineers, and Florida Department of Environmental Protection. 1997. Management plan for the Kissimmee Chain of Lakes. Draft report, May 30, 1997. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Williams, V. P. 2001. Effects of point-source removal on lake water quality: a case history of Lake Tohopekaliga. *Lake and Reservoir Management* 17:315-329.

CHAPTER 5 WATER QUALITY

Williams, V. 1990. Management and mis-management of the Upper Kissimmee River Basin Chain of Lakes. Pages 9-29 *in* M. K. Loftin, L. A. Toth, and J. T. B. Obeysekera, editors. Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.



CHAPTER 6

ALGAL SPECIES RICHNESS, DIVERSITY AND BIOMASS IN THE CHANNELIZED KISSIMMEE RIVER

David J. Colangelo¹, Robert W. Pillsbury², and Shelly L. Schmidt³

¹*Kissimmee Division, Watershed Management Department, South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, FL 33406*

²*Department of Biology/Microbiology, University of Wisconsin-Oshkosh*

³*Current affiliation unknown*

ABSTRACT: Algal studies were performed in the channelized Kissimmee River to establish baseline conditions for evaluating the effects of restoration of pre-channelization hydrology. Although no pre-channelization reference data exist, metrics for monitoring change in the algal community were selected based on existing literature and best scientific judgment. Baseline algal species richness and biomass (biovolume) were measured monthly from July 1999 through December 1999. Mean periphyton species richness and biovolume in remnant river channels of Pools A and C were 42.1 ± 2.0 (standard error of the mean) and $20.47 \pm 9.05 \text{ mm}^3/\text{cm}^2$ respectively. Relative abundance of rheophilic periphyton (estimated by cell counts) was $28.7\% \pm 5.0\%$. However, none of the dominant species (>5% of total biovolume) were rheophilic. Periphyton biovolume was significantly related to dissolved inorganic nitrogen concentration. Mean species richness and biovolume of truly planktonic phytoplankton species were 22.5 ± 1.8 and $7.30 \pm 2.85 \text{ mm}^3/\text{cm}^2$ per sample, respectively. After restoration of pre-channelization hydrology to the river channel, periphyton species richness and percentage of rheophilic species likely will increase, and species richness of truly planktonic phytoplankton likely will decrease.

INTRODUCTION

Algae are primary producers that form the base of the food web in many aquatic systems. Periphyton (algae attached to substrate) and phytoplankton (algae suspended in the water column) respond quickly to environmental change (Biggs 1996). Channelization of the Kissimmee River transformed the flowing river into a central drainage canal (C-38) composed of a series of reservoir-like pools. Examining changes in the algal community before and after backfilling of canal C-38 and restoration of flow to the river channel should be useful for understanding cause and effect relationships between physical restoration and ecosystem responses. For example, because algae are a major food source of many invertebrate and fish species, changes in algal communities may help explain changes in invertebrate and fish populations after the restoration project is complete.

During daylight hours, algae oxygenate the water column through photosynthesis, and at night, algae consume oxygen through respiration. Dissolved oxygen (DO) is necessary for the metabolism of most aquatic organisms, and DO concentrations in the channelized Kissimmee River can be extremely low, particularly during the warm, wet season (Colangelo and Jones 2005). Algal studies can help clarify the mechanisms driving DO dynamics.

Few studies examining algal communities in undisturbed, sub-tropical, blackwater river systems exist, and no periphyton or phytoplankton reference data exist from the Kissimmee River before channelization. This report focuses on the description of algal communities in the channelized Kissimmee River. Metrics to be monitored to detect changes in algal communities were chosen based on information available in the literature and best scientific judgment.

Objectives

The objective of this study was to establish baseline conditions for assessing effects of restored hydrology on algae species richness, diversity, and biovolume within the river channel.

METHODS

Baseline Conditions

Study Sites

The channelized Kissimmee River is characterized by non-flowing, stagnant conditions. Riverbed substrate consists of flocculent, unconsolidated organic material (Anderson et al. 2005). Littoral vegetation is dominated by *Salvinia minima*, *Scirpus cubensis*, *Ludwigia peruviana*, and *Nuphar lutea*. Approximately two thirds of the area between channel banks was vegetated (Bousquin et al. 2005).

Periphyton and phytoplankton species richness, diversity, and biovolume were quantified for remnant river runs in Pools A and C. Monitoring stations (five stations with three replicates each) were selected to cover several river reaches in each Pool (Figure 6-1). Sample sites were chosen to represent average habitat conditions (channel depth, littoral vegetation, etc.) in each Pool. Remnant river runs were approximately 20–30 m wide and 2–3 m deep with little or no flow.

Periphyton

Mean species richness and percentage of rheophilic species (cells) were chosen as metrics because baseline variability of these metrics was relatively low. Maximum species richness of periphyton often occurs in habitats with low to intermediate disturbance frequency (Connell 1978, Biggs et al. 1998, Sousa 1985), such as low to moderate changes in flow velocity and flooding. Restoration of stage and discharge to pre-channelization frequencies should increase disturbance frequency, which is very low under baseline conditions. Increased disturbance frequency in the river channel may allow an increase in periphyton species richness. Highest discharges in the pre-channelization Kissimmee River occurred during September–November with considerable annual variability (Toth 1993). Reestablishment of flow through the reconnected river channels should lead to an increase in the relative percentage of rheophilic species present in the river channel after flow is restored. Periphyton biovolume was used to determine species dominance based on biomass. The Shannon-Wiener diversity index (see following equation) was used as a measure of species diversity.

Shannon-Wiener Index

$$H' = \sum_{i=1}^s (p_i) (\log_2 p_i)$$

H' = information content of sample (bits/individual)

= index of species diversity

s = number of species

p_i = proportion of total sample belonging to i th species

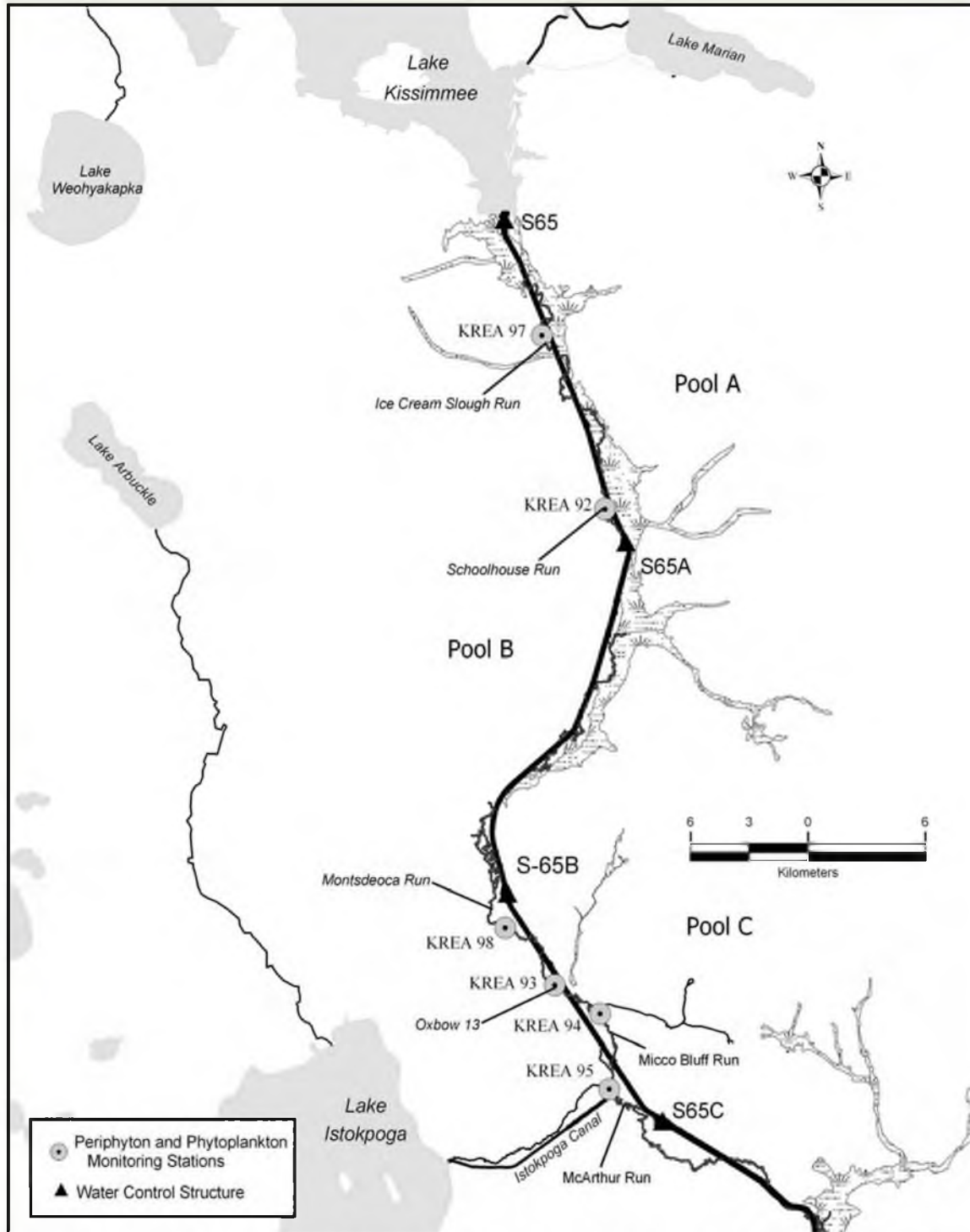


Figure 6-1. Periphyton and phytoplankton monitoring stations in Pools A and C of the Kissimmee River.

Periphyton were sampled monthly in Pools A (KREA92 and KREA97) and C (KREA93, KREA94, KREA95 and KREA98) (Figure 6-1) from August 1999 through December 1999 using artificial substrates (lightly sanded, clear acrylic rods) suspended from anchored floats. This method was developed following guidelines outlined in Barbour et al. (1999). Acrylic rods were approximately 6.5 cm long with a diameter of 1.2 cm. Floats had a diameter of 7.62 cm and were 3.81 cm long. Acrylic rods were attached to each

float by inserting the rod into a hole in the center of the float. Floats were placed at the margins of and within littoral vegetation mats at each station (three floats per station) to maximize the range of light conditions present in the river channel. Acrylic rods were collected at the beginning of each month and replaced with new rods. At the time of collection, rod length (area exposed for periphyton growth) was recorded. Rods were kept in plastic sample bags on ice until they could be transported to the lab for processing. A small brush was used to scrape periphyton from each rod into a plastic tray. Approximately 100 ml of tap water was used to wash periphyton from the rod and brush. The sample was then mixed thoroughly and a 30 ml sub-sample was transferred to a 30 ml amber bottle. Lugol's solution (3.0% final volume) was added to preserve each sub-sample. Sample bottles were then refrigerated for future cell counts and taxonomic identification.

For algal identification and counts, samples were mixed thoroughly to suspend algae in the sample solution. Using a pipette, a Palmer-Maloney counting slide was filled with suspended periphyton sample. Samples were then examined on a compound microscope at 400X. Algae were identified to the lowest taxonomic level possible. Slides were scanned until at least 300 cells were identified and recorded along with the volume of water examined. Only cells that were viable (containing chloroplasts or protoplasm) were counted. To identify diatoms to species, a subset of each sample was taken and oxidized to clear diatom frustules of organic material. Cleaned frustules were dried on a cover slip and mounted with Naphrax mounting media to make permanent slides. These slides were examined under oil immersion at a magnification of 1000x. Cells were identified for each diatom form found in the corresponding Palmer-Maloney count. For example, if eight naviculoids were found, eight naviculoids were identified to species from the diatom slides. To estimate cell biovolume, average cell dimensions were measured during the counts or collected from the literature. The dimensions were applied to standard geometric shapes which approximate the shape of each taxon. Species richness was calculated by summing the species present in each sample.

Water quality sampling stations were located near algae sampling stations (Figure 6-1). Water samples were collected monthly and analyzed for soluble reactive phosphorus (SRP), dissolved inorganic nitrogen (DIN), turbidity, water temperature, pH and dissolved organic carbon (DOC) (Jones 2005). Results from these analyses were used to interpret results from periphyton and phytoplankton sample analyses. Table 6-1 summarizes water quality data used in this study.

Table 6-1. Mean water quality values in Pools A and C from August 1999 through December 1999.

Pool	Parameter	Value
A	DIN (mg/L)	0.01
	DOC (mg/L)	14.10
	Water Temp °C	23.21
	SRP (mg/L)	0.04
	Turb (NTU)	2.46
	pH	6.54
C	DIN (mg/L)	0.02
	DOC (mg/L)	22.22
	Water Temp °C	22.63
	SRP (mg/L)	0.03
	Turb (NTU)	6.34
	pH	6.19

Phytoplankton

Mean species richness of planktonic species was chosen as a metric to measure change because baseline variability was relatively low. After flow is restored, planktonic phytoplankton species richness is expected to decrease due to reestablishment of pre-channelization hydrologic conditions. Exclusively

planktonic species should be flushed from reconnected river channels after flow is restored. However, because the floodplain and river channel will be hydrologically reconnected after flow is restored, suspended algae from the floodplain may enter the river channel as water levels fluctuate (Garcia de Emiliani 1997, Rojo et al. 1994).

Phytoplankton were sampled at the same stations as periphyton, monthly from July 1999 through December 1999. A vinyl tube (diameter = 2.5 cm, length = 100 cm) was vertically lowered into the water column to sample the surface meter of water. Stoppers were placed on the ends of the tube before the tube was pulled out of the water. The contents of the tube were then placed into a clean bucket and mixed. A 1.0 L plastic bottle was filled from the bucket and preserved with Lugol's iodine solution (3.0% final volume). Samples were kept cool and dark during transport. In the lab, the 1.0 L samples were concentrated to 20 mls using Imhof funnels. Plankton was allowed to settle for 48 hours. Methods for phytoplankton identification and biovolume calculation were identical to those used for periphyton. Biovolume of truly planktonic phytoplankton species was used to determine species dominance based on biomass. The Shannon-Wiener diversity index was used as a measure of species diversity.

Data Analysis

Summary statistics (mean, standard deviation, standard error of the mean, minimum and maximum values, and coefficient of variation (CV %)) were computed for algae species richness and cell biovolume. The Shannon-Wiener function (a measure of species diversity) was calculated for each sample. Linear regression was used to determine relationships between water quality variables and algae biovolume. Power analysis was used to calculate minimum detectable differences for all metrics. SAS version 8 (SAS Institute, Cary, NC) was used for all statistical analyses.

RESULTS

Baseline Conditions

Power analysis indicated the minimum detectable (90% of the time) increase in species richness of periphyton, percentage of rheophilic periphyton species, and minimal detectable decrease in species richness of truly planktonic phytoplankton was 2.0 species, 3.0% and 2.2 species, respectively. Complete lists of all periphyton and phytoplankton identified during this study are included in the Appendices 6-1A and 6-2A.

Periphyton Species Richness and Biovolume

Mean species richness in remnant river channels of Pools A and C was 46.1 ± 1.9 (standard error of the mean) and 38.1 ± 2.0 per sample, respectively (Table 2). Mean monthly periphyton species richness varied considerably (range = 28 - 52) (Figure 6-2); however, variability within each Pool on each sample date was low.

Species richness was generally higher during October, November, and December than during August and September. The mean Shannon-Wiener diversity index for samples collected in Pools A and C was 2.5 ± 0.1 and 2.8 ± 0.1 respectively.

Total rheophilic species collected in Pools A and C were 33 and 37 species, respectively. Mean relative abundance of rheophilic species (by cell count) was $22.6 \pm 1.7\%$ in Pool A and $34.8 \pm 3.3\%$ in Pool C (Table 6-2).

Mean periphyton biovolume in Pools A and C was $21.86 \pm 6.5 \text{ mm}^3/\text{cm}^2$ and $19.08 \pm 11.6 \text{ mm}^3/\text{cm}^2$, respectively (Table 6-2). Periphyton species comprising >5% of the total biovolume were considered dominant. Dominant species included *Gomphonema gracilis*, *Oedogonium* spp., and *Spirogyra* spp. in Pool A and *Oedogonium* spp., *Schizomeris leibleinii*, and *Spirogyra* spp. in Pool C (Table 6-3). *Spirogyra* spp. accounted for the majority of the biovolume present in both Pools. Temporal variability and mean periphyton biovolume was particularly high during October (Figure 6-3). The high mean biovolume value recorded during October in Pool C can be attributed to one extremely high value at station KREA98. None of the dominant periphyton species were rheophilic.

Regression analysis revealed periphyton biovolume increased significantly with DIN ($r^2 = 0.37$, $p = 0.02$). No significant relationships were found between biovolume and SRP, turbidity, water temperature, pH or DOC. Shannon-Wiener index values also were not significantly related to any of the water quality variables.

CHAPTER 6 ALGAE

Table 6-2. Mean periphyton species richness, relative abundance (based on cell counts) of rheophilic species, mean biovolume, Shannon-Wiener index, and summary statistics in Pools A and C from August 1999–December 1999. Values in parentheses represent the standard error of the mean.

Species Richness	Pool A	Pool C
Mean	46.1 ± (1.9)	38.1 ± (2.0)
n	27	24
max	64	62
min	21	22
CV%	21.1	25.4
% Rheophilic	22.6 ± (1.7)	34.8 ± (3.3)
Biovolume (mm ³ /cm ²)		
Mean	21.86 ± (6.5)	19.08 ± (11.6)
n	27	24
max	124.77	282.60
min	0.07	0.10
CV%	155.61	297.09
Shannon-Wiener	2.5 ± (0.1)	2.8 ± (0.1)

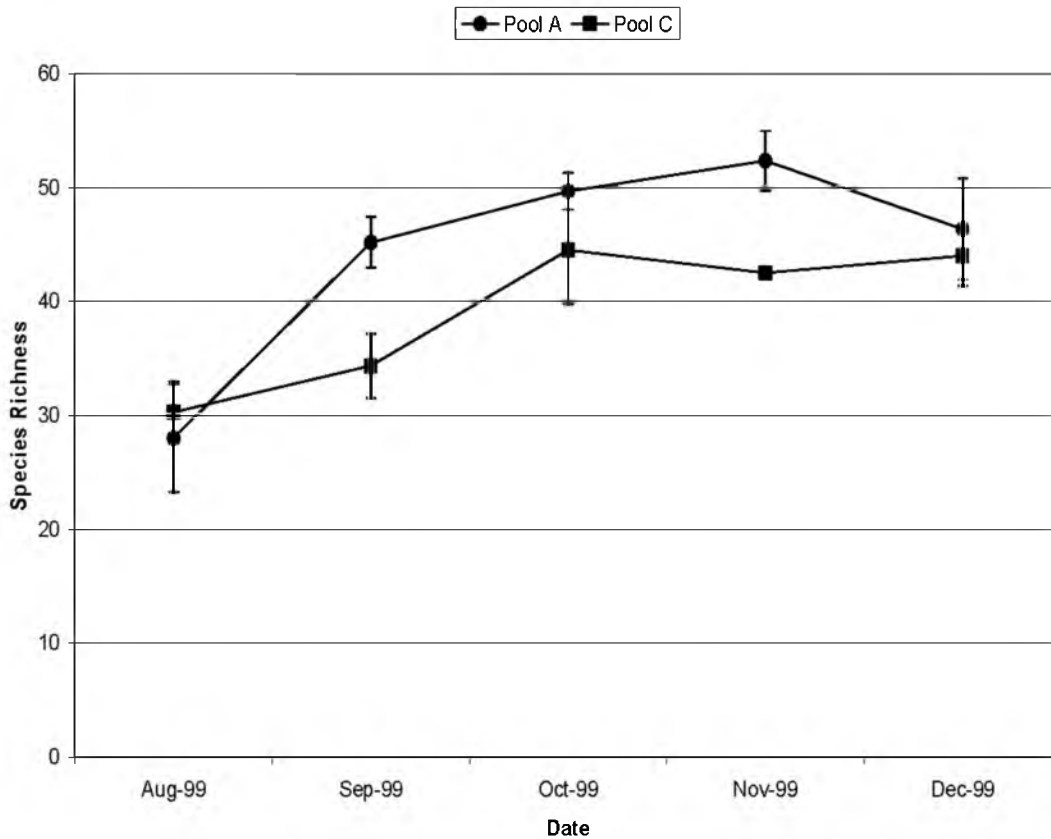


Figure 6-2. Mean monthly periphyton species richness in Pools A and C from August 1999 through December 1999. Error bars represent the standard error of the mean.

Mean species richness of truly planktonic species (water column obligates) per sample in remnant river channels was 22.3 ± 1.8 in Pool A and 22.6 ± 1.7 in Pool C (Table 6-4). Phytoplankton species richness varied considerably for some months and very little for other months (Figure 6-4). Highest species richness values occurred during September and lowest values occurred during October–November.

Mean biovolume of truly planktonic species per sample was 11.76 ± 4.58 and 2.85 ± 1.13 in Pools A and C, respectively (Table 6-4). Biovolume in Pool A varied considerably while variability in Pool C was relatively low (Figure 6-5). There were 11 dominant (>5% of total biovolume) phytoplankton species in Pools A and C (Table 6-5). Identities of species with highest biovolume in Pools A and C were different, with Euglenophytes dominating in Pool A, and Cyanophytes and Chlorophytes dominating in Pool C.

Kirchneriella subsolitaria was the most dominant species in Pool A and *Scenedesmus quadricauda* was the most dominant species in Pool C. The Shannon-Wiener index was 2.7 ± 0.2 in Pools A and C (Table 6-5).

Linear regression analysis showed no significant relationships between biovolume and DIN, SRP, turbidity, water temperature, pH or DOC. Shannon-Wiener index values also were not significantly related to any of the water quality variables.

Table 6-3. Dominant periphyton species (>5% of total biovolume) within remnant channels of the Kissimmee River from August 1999–December 1999.

Pool	Species	Division	% of total biovolume	Rheophilic*
A	<i>Gomphonema gracilis</i>	Bacillariophyta	8.3	
A	<i>Oedogonium</i> sp. 1	Chlorophyta	15.8	
A	<i>Oedogonium</i> sp. 2	Chlorophyta	6.1	
A	<i>Spirogyra</i> spp. 1	Chlorophyta	54.2	
C	<i>Oedogonium</i> sp. 1	Chlorophyta	17.4	
C	<i>Schizomeris leibleinii</i>	Chlorophyta	5.3	
C	<i>Spirogyra</i> sp. 1	Chlorophyta	32.5	
C	<i>Spirogyra</i> sp. 2	Chlorophyta	6.2	

* Palmer 1977.

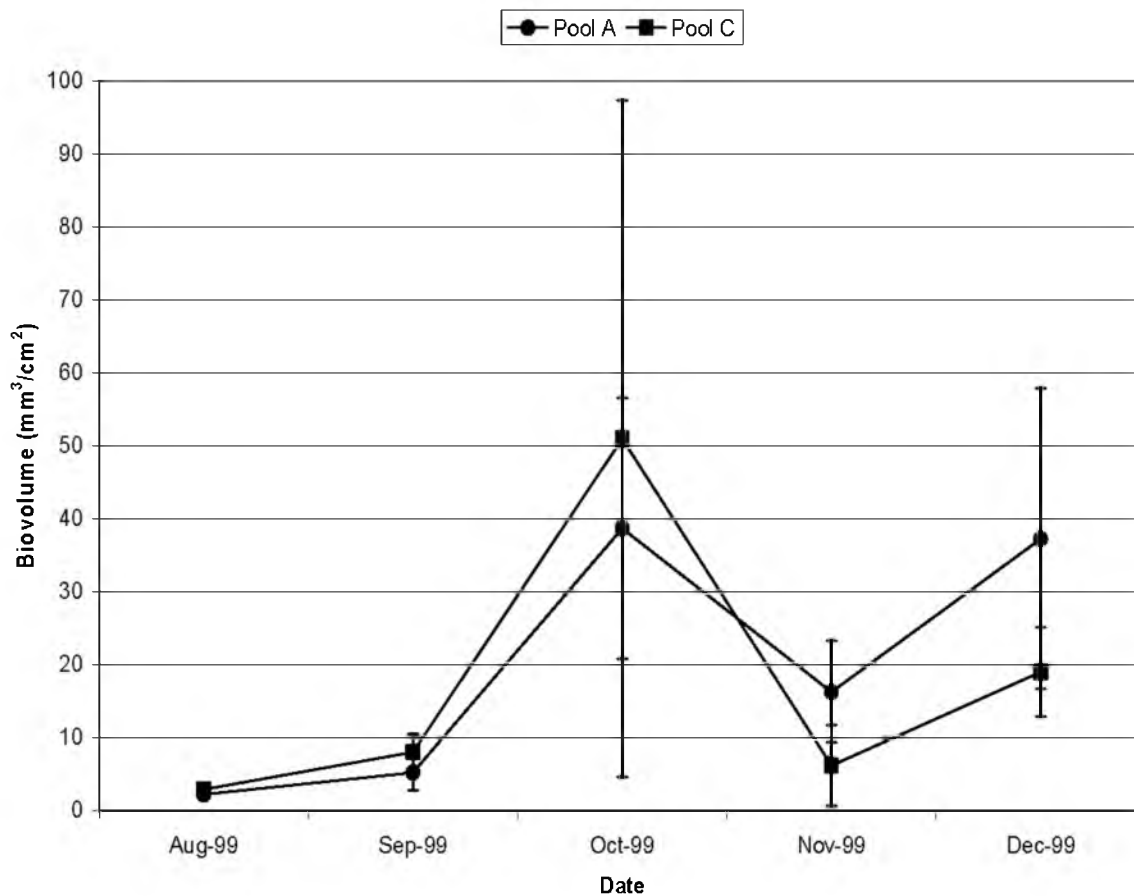


Figure 6-3. Mean monthly periphyton biovolume (mm^3/cm^2) in Pools A and C from August 1999 through December 1999. Error bars represent the standard error of the mean.

Table 6-4. Mean species richness, biovolume, and summary statistics of truly planktonic phytoplankton in Pools A and C from July 1999–December 1999. Values in parentheses represent the standard error of the mean.

Species Richness	Pool A	Pool C
Mean	$22.3 \pm (1.8)$	$22.6 \pm (1.7)$
n	14	13
max	36	35
min	11	14
CV%	30.4	26.6
Biovolume (mm^3/L)		
Mean	$11.76 \pm (4.58)$	$2.85 \pm (1.13)$
n	13	11
max	47.91	10.32
min	0.12	0.08
CV%	140.59	131.28
Shannon-Wiener	$2.7 \pm (0.2)$	$2.7 \pm (0.2)$

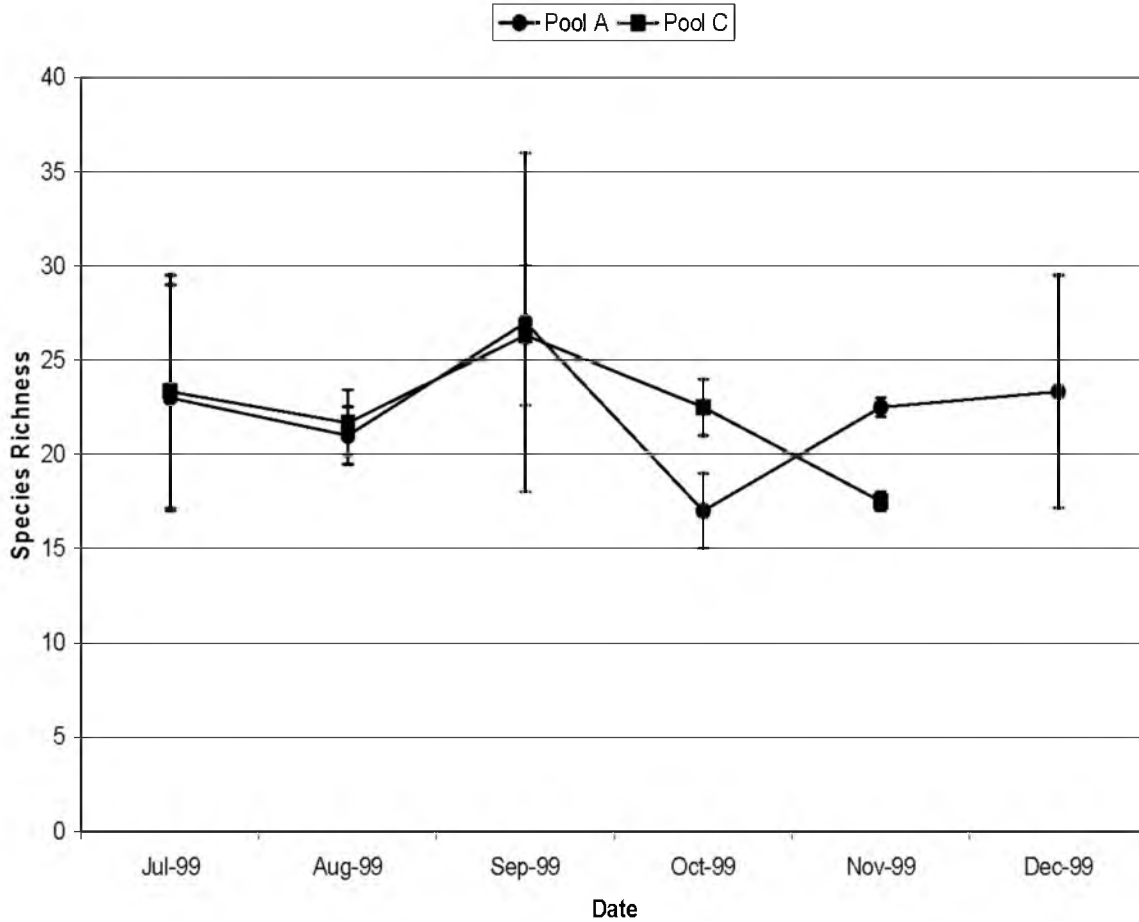


Figure 6-4. Truly planktonic phytoplankton species richness in Pools A and C from July 1999–December 1999. Error bars represent the standard error of the mean.

DISCUSSION

Baseline Conditions

Periphyton and Phytoplankton Species Richness and Biovolume

The periphyton and phytoplankton data presented in this chapter are limited because samples were only collected for five to six months in a single year. Several years of monthly samples would be necessary to capture seasonal and annual variability in algae species richness and biovolume. Additionally, data were collected after the beginning of Phase I construction in Pools B and C. Only data from stations that had not received flow at the time of collection were included in this study. However, with an area of disturbance as large as Phase I backfilling and construction nearby, we cannot entirely rule out the possibility of construction impacts on the periphyton and phytoplankton communities.

None of the dominant periphyton species were rheophilic. However, as many as 36 rheophilic species were present in the population. This source of rheophilic cells is potentially important for reestablishing a community structure dominated by rheophilic species normally found in a lotic system.

CHAPTER 6 ALGAE

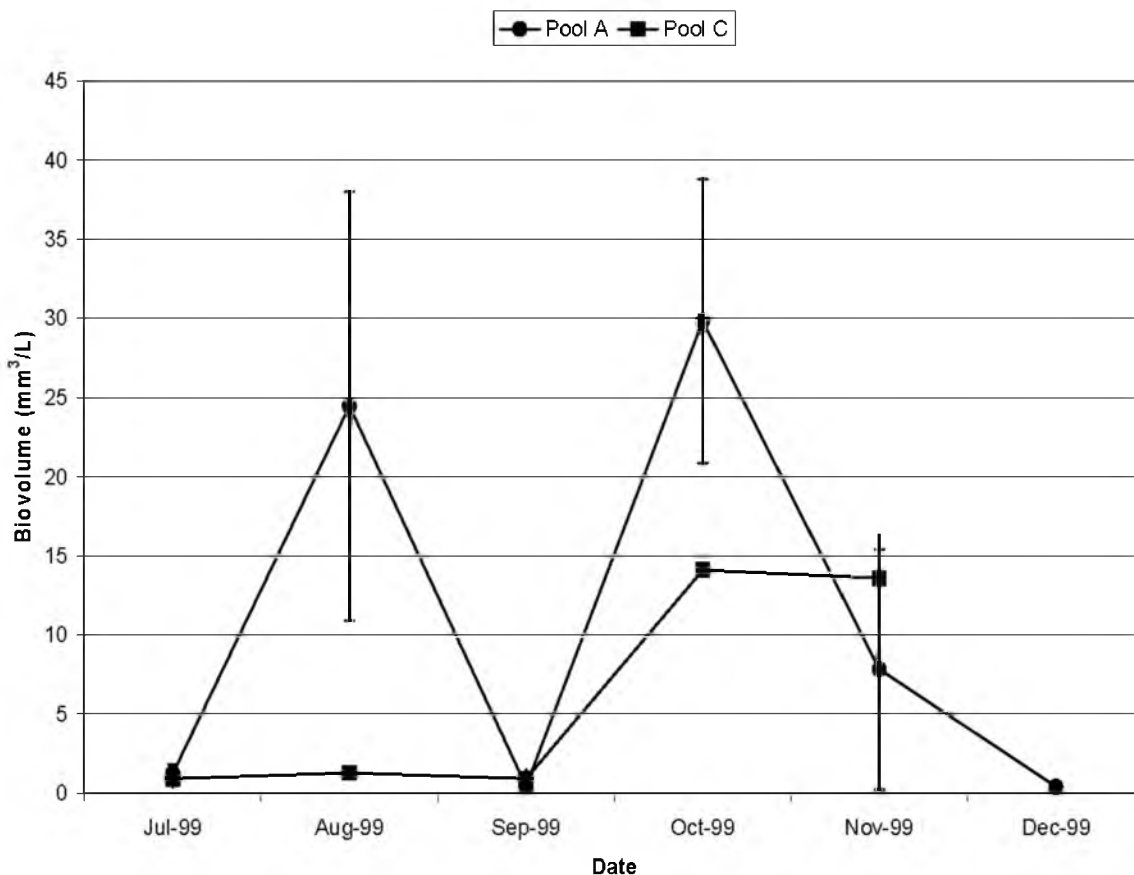


Figure 6-5. Mean monthly phytoplankton biovolume (mm^3/cm^2) in Pools A and C from July 1999 through December 1999. Error bars represent the standard error of the mean.

Table 6-5. Dominant (>5% of total biovolume) truly planktonic phytoplankton species within remnant channels of the Kissimmee River from July 1999–December 1999.

Pool	Species	Taxa	% of Total biovolume
A	<i>Aphanocapsa</i> sp.	Cyanophyta	6.2
A	<i>Euglena</i> sp.	Euglenophyta	16.5
A	<i>Euglena acus</i> var. <i>rigida</i>	Euglenophyta	10.2
A	<i>Euglena minuta</i>	Euglenophyta	8.0
A	<i>Kirchneriella subsolitaria</i>	Chlorophyta	21.5
A	<i>Cryptomonas erosa</i>	Other	7.8
C	<i>Chroococcus minor</i>	Cyanophyta	8.9
C	<i>Schizothrix calcicola</i>	Cyanophyta	5.4
C	<i>Euglena minuta</i>	Euglenophyta	7.8
C	<i>Scenedesmus armatus</i>	Chlorophyta	18.4
C	<i>Scenedesmus quadricauda</i>	Chlorophyta	20.8

CHAPTER 6 ALGAE

Periphyton biomass is controlled by changes in resources (nutrients, light, and temperature) and disturbance (flooding, suspended sediment), or grazing by invertebrates and fish (Biggs 1996). Of all the water quality variables measured, periphyton biovolume responded significantly only to changes in DIN, suggesting that periphyton in the channelized system may be limited by nitrogen.

Spirogyra spp. and *Oedogonium* spp. were the most dominant periphyton species observed. Both taxa are classified as preferring low disturbance, moderately enriched habitats (Biggs et al. 1998). It is likely that after flow is restored, periphyton species that prefer low disturbance habitats such as low flow velocity canals and lakes, will be reduced in number.

Variability of phytoplankton species richness was low throughout the study area. However, biovolume was over four times greater in Pool A than in Pool C. Extremely high biovolume values were recorded at one station in Pool A (KREA 97, Ice Cream Slough) in August and October. High biovolume values recorded at this station are likely the result of a localized algae bloom (chlorophyll *a* and DIN values also were high at KREA 97 during August and October). However, because no significant relationships were found using regression analyses, it is unclear which environmental variables control changes in phytoplankton biovolume in the channelized Kissimmee River.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors wish to thank South Florida Water Management District Kissimmee Division staff and Riverwoods Field Lab staff for assistance with data collection and sample processing. We also thank Stephen G. Bousquin, Gary E. Williams, Therese East, Scot Hagerthey and Dan Haurert for comments and suggestions that improved this chapter.

LITERATURE CITED

- Anderson, D. H., D. Frei, and W. P. Davis, 2005. River channel geomorphology of the channelized Kissimmee River Chapter 3 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Barbour, M. T., J. Gerritsen, B. D. Snyder, and J. B. Stribling. 1999. Rapid bioassessment protocols for use in streams and wadeable rivers: periphyton, benthic macroinvertebrates and fish, Second Edition. EPA 841-B-99-002. U. S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, D. C., USA.
- Biggs, B. J. F., R. J. Stevenson, and R. L. Lowe. 1998. A habitat matrix conceptual model for stream periphyton. *Archiv fur Hydrobiologie* 143:21-56.
- Biggs, B. J. F. 1996. Patterns in benthic algae of streams. *In* R. J. Stevenson, M. L. Bothwell, and R. L. Lowe, editors. *Algal Ecology, Benthic Freshwater Ecosystems* Academic Press New York, New York, USA.
- Bousquin, S. G. 2005. Littoral vegetation in the channelized Kissimmee River baseline report. Chapter 7 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Colangelo, D. J., and B. L. Jones. 2005. Dissolved oxygen in the Kissimmee River: baseline report. Chapter 4 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Connell, J. 1978. Diversity in tropical rainforests and coral reefs. *Science* 199:1302-1310.
- Garcia de Emiliani, M. O. 1997. Effects of water level fluctuations on phytoplankton in a river-floodplain lake system (Parana River, Argentina). *Hydrobiologia* 357:1-15.
- Jones, B. L. 2005. Water quality in the Kissimmee River. Chapter 5 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Palmer, C. M. 1977. Algae and water pollution. EPA-600/9-77-036. U. S. Environmental Protection Agency, Cincinnati, Ohio, USA.
- Rojo, C. M., A. Cobelas and M. Arauzo. 1994. An elementary, structural analysis of river phytoplankton. *Hydrobiologia* 289:43-55.
- Sousa, W. P. 1985. Disturbance and patch dynamics on rocky intertidal shores. Pages 101-124 *in* S. T. A. Pickett, and P. S. White, editors. *The Ecology of Natural Disturbance and Patch Dynamics*. Academic Press, New York, New York, USA.
- Toth, L. A. 1993. The ecological basis for the Kissimmee River restoration plan. *Florida Scientist* 56:25-51.



CHAPTER 7

LITTORAL VEGETATION IN THE CHANNELIZED KISSIMMEE RIVER

Stephen G. Bousquin

*Kissimmee Division, Watershed Management Department, South Florida Water Management District,
West Palm Beach, FL 33406*

ABSTRACT: To provide baseline (channelized-condition) data for assessment of the effects of restored flow on littoral vegetation in remnant channels, measurements of littoral plant communities were made under non-flowing conditions in remnant runs of the channelized Kissimmee River in 1998 and 1999. Variables measured included plant cover by species, the width of vegetation beds, and the vegetated percentage of channel area, among others. Reference data to estimate pre-channelization conditions were collected in an experimental semi-restored run in 1998 following a nine month episode of continuous flow diverted from canal C-38 by weirs installed for this purpose. During the non-flowing baseline period, vegetation beds were substantially wider and had higher cover of floating and mat-forming species relative to cover of emergent species than in the reference data. In the enhanced-flow reference data used to estimate pre-channelization conditions, river channels had narrower mats and plant communities were heavily dominated by emergent species. Comparison of these data sets suggests that as a result of elimination of flow, vegetation bed widths increased and changes in the structure of plant communities occurred, greatly reducing relative cover of emergent species. Channelization of the Kissimmee River likely precipitated a string of effects associated with these changes in littoral vegetation, resulting in interrelated impacts on channel morphology, water quality, and wildlife habitat. Reestablishment of flow in the Kissimmee River is expected to restore littoral vegetation to conditions more typical of lotic, pre-channelization conditions, in which littoral vegetation is limited to relatively narrow littoral zones near the edges of channels and is dominated by emergent species.

INTRODUCTION

In flowing rivers, growth of macrophytes is constrained primarily by channel depth and flow (Dawson 1998). These and other components of the physical habitat of river channel plants were substantially modified by elimination of flow in the Kissimmee River following construction of canal C-38 (Bousquin et al. 2005). Virtually all flow in the former (remnant) river channel was intercepted by the canal. Changes in plant habitat related to elimination of flow included alterations in channel cross-section, substrate characteristics, channel depth, and distribution of point-bars (Anderson et al. 2005); and water chemistry (Colangelo 2005, Jones 2005).

Aquatic plant species that are emergent in growth-form (rooted to the substrate) are well-adapted to a flowing river environment. Rooted beneath water, the shoots and leaves of emergent plants extend above the surface for photosynthesis and gas exchange (Reimer 1984, Dawson 1988). Because they are attached

CHAPTER 7 LITTORAL VEGETATION

to the substrate, emergent plants can resist translocation by normal flows in rivers and tend to dominate in-channel plant communities under flowing conditions. In contrast, under non-flowing conditions free-floating species tend to increase because they can occupy deeper sections toward the center of channels and can expand in area at the water surface in shallower areas, which may enhance competitive advantages for space and light over established or propagating emergents. Mat-forming species such as *Scirpus cubensis* also may increase under non-flowing conditions; in turn, the surface mats they form can provide boglike substrates that can be colonized by emergents and terrestrial species (Figure 7-1), including shrubs (Milleson et al. 1980, Miller et al. 1990).



Figure 7-1. A remnant channel in the channelized Kissimmee River, ca. 1999, showing “floating mat” expansion toward center of river channel.

Because of the sensitivity of river channel plants to flow regimes, the character of river channel littoral (edge) vegetation can be expected to change following elimination or restoration of flow, both in species composition and the areal extent of vegetation. For a river system, plant communities that are characteristic of flowing conditions are an indicator of an ecologically functional system. For these reasons, the effects of channelization on littoral vegetation in the Kissimmee River are of interest to the restoration evaluation program, both as simple indicators of change following restoration of flow and as indicators of progress toward ecological integrity.

Objectives

The objectives of this study were to:

- (a) Estimate baseline (channelized) conditions in littoral vegetation beds and plant communities;
- (b) Quantify the impacts of channelization and resulting elimination of flow on littoral plant communities, by using reference data to estimate pre-channelization conditions;
- (c) Develop expectations (predictions based on reference data) for responses of littoral vegetation to restoration for the purpose of evaluating the restoration project goal of restoring ecological integrity.

Littoral Plant Communities

Littoral vegetation beds of several recognizable types occur in the channelized Kissimmee River. Which species occur at a particular location is determined by flow and water depth, type of substrate, and channel curvature; founder effects and availability of propagules are likely additional factors. Assemblages vary in species composition and dominance; some common river channel plant communities are defined in Bousquin and Carnal (2005) and are separated in that report by growth forms of typical species, e.g. emergent or floating species.

Shallow areas adjacent to banks tend to be characterized by short-stature emergents such as *Polygonum densiflorum* (smartweed), *Hydrocotyl umbellata* (pennywort), and various aquatic grasses such as *Sacciolepis striata* (cupscale) and *Panicum hemitomon* (maidencane). Under non-flowing conditions, at least where exotics are controlled, deeper areas adjacent to steep banks and at the deep edges of mats are often dominated by *Nuphar lutea* (spatterdock), a native emergent with long petioles connecting fleshy, bottom-rooted rhizomes to floating leaves. It occurs in water as deep as 2–3 m (S. Bousquin, South Florida Water Management District, personal observation).

Semi-buoyant “floating mats” up to 1 m thick, formed of dead plant material and prevalent in non-flowing channels, serve as suitable substrates in deep areas for emergent species, including those listed above, wetland shrubs such as *Ludwigia peruviana* (Peruvian primrosewillow) and *Salix caroliniana* (coastal plain willow), and upland shrub species such as *Myrica cerifera* (waxmyrtle). Pockets of open water in these mats may provide habitat for floating species like *Salvinia minima* (water spangles, a small-fronded (<0.5 in dia) native aquatic fern most often found in low current conditions, e.g., in channelized runs and in flowing runs in backwaters and, under flowing conditions, in areas sheltered by other plants); often in association with another small floating fern, *Azolla caroliniana* (mosquito fern); *Wolffiella gladiata* (mudmidget); and species of *Lemna* (duckweed).

Under non-flowing conditions and lacking weed control, extensive mats composed nearly exclusively of invasive floating species (*P. stratiotes* and *E. crassipes*) may occur. Such large mats, which may be virtually monospecific, are dependant on lack of flow to stay in place and possibly, except in deep areas, to retain a competitive advantage over emergents.

METHODS

Study Areas

Baseline sampling was conducted in remnant river channels that had lacked sustained flow since completion of channelization in 1971. Channel substrates were composed of unconsolidated deposits of organic material averaging 14 cm in thickness in Pool C runs. These deposits overlaid the original pre-channelization sandy riverbed (Anderson et al. 2005). River channel widths ranged from 11.9 m to 69.0 m and averaged 36.1 m. Channel depths to firm sand averaged 1.7 m (Anderson et al. 2005). Reference data were collected in June 1998 from an experimentally semi-restored remnant channel (River Run #1) in lower Pool B. This run had received intermittent flows and stage fluctuations since 1985, and continuous,

CHAPTER 7 LITTORAL VEGETATION

moderate to high flow for nine months prior to data collection. Weirs placed across the C-38 canal as part of the Demonstration Project (Toth 1991) diverted water through the remnant channel.

In the channelized system prior to the late 1980s, beds of floating exotic vegetation were common, occasionally completely spanning remnant channels (Campbell 1989; R.M. Bodle, L. Toth, South Florida Water Management District, personal communications). An intensive herbicide treatment program was undertaken during 1983–1987 to reduce cover of these species. Substantial reductions in the cover of floating exotics to low “maintenance control” levels had been achieved by 1988 (Grimshaw 2002). Targeted cover in this ongoing program is approximately $\leq 5\%$ absolute cover (R.M. Bodle, South Florida Water Management District, personal communication). These species have been kept relatively stable at these low levels since 1988 by regular (usually twice annually) herbicide applications (Grimshaw 2002). Weed control has and will continue to maintain low levels of invasive species over the period of data collection in both the reference and baseline study areas. Therefore, the magnitude and effects of herbicide applications are assumed to be similar in the Impact, Control, and Reference areas (defined below), and are not viewed as confounding factors.

Sampling Methods

Sampling Methods-Baseline Data

Baseline sampling was conducted twice annually over a two-year period from 1998–1999 during the winter dry season (usually February–March) and the summer wet season (August–September), except in 1998 when dry season sampling extended into May. Sampling was conducted at fixed transects distributed in non-flowing (remnant) channels of Pools A, B, and C (Map Appendix 1A–8A). Each transect is permanently marked on opposite banks with galvanized steel poles. Transects are located at channel bends and straight reaches to capture variation associated with channel shape or pattern.

Baseline sampling was conducted in one-meter wide belt transects established by sighting between the transect poles and placing 1 m by 2 m quadrats on the upstream side of the sightline, with the long dimension of the quadrat on the transect. Baseline surveys were initiated at the left bank facing downstream and were continued across the channel by adding consecutive quadrats. For each quadrat, we recorded the overall percentage cover of living and dead vegetation to the nearest 5%, and cover of all plant species using a six-level system developed by Daubenmire (Table 7-1) (Daubenmire 1959). Several metrics, described below, were derived from the raw cover, cover class, and dimensional measurements. The midpoints of cover classes were used for calculations involving species cover classes (Table 7-1) (Daubenmire 1959).

Table 7-1. Cover ranges and midpoints of the Daubenmire scale (Daubenmire 1959).

Cover Class	Range (%)	Midpoint (%)
0	0	0
1	0.1 - 5.0	2.5
2	5 - 25	15
3	25 - 50	37.5
4	50 - 75	62.5
5	75 - 95	85
6	95 - 100	97.5

Vegetation data from 91 transects were used in the baseline analyses. Impact area channels, which will receive flow following backfilling as part of Phase I of the restoration project, were sampled at 70 transects distributed among the five remnant channels in Pool C and the southernmost remnant channel in Pool B (Map Appendix 6A–8A). Twenty-one transects were sampled in three channels in Pool A where flow will not be restored (Map Appendix 1A–4A), which will be used as a control area. Data from the Control area

CHAPTER 7 LITTORAL VEGETATION

will be incorporated in the restoration evaluation to assess the effects of background variation in measured variables using a before-after-control-impact (BACI) approach (Stewart-Oaten et al. 1992).

For data analyses, each transect was subdivided into two transect sections, one on either side of the channel. Transect sections were used to distinguish individual vegetation beds on opposite banks, and are the basic calculation unit for most species and dimensional metrics used in this study (see descriptions of individual metrics, below). Calculations based on transect sections refer only to the vegetation bed from which they were derived. For example, a species' relative cover value refers to the relative cover estimate for the species in one of the two possible vegetation beds (left or right) sampled at a transect. Calculations that combine section metrics are based only on quadrats that intercept an area with $\geq 5\%$ vegetation; derived values such as means for these metrics do not consider unvegetated quadrats.

Transect sections in both the baseline and reference data sets were categorized as being located at inner margins of curved channel bends (inner), outer margins of curved channel bends (outer), or at the margins of straight reaches (straight) (Figure 7-2) for evaluations of variation in width associated with channel pattern or curvature/position. Grand means of widths presented for the baseline period are the averages of the four baseline sample period means for each pattern category ($n=4$). Widths and vegetated percentage of channel were averaged over all sampled transect sections in each pattern category for each of the four sample periods. An average of 130 transect sections were measured per sample period in the Impact area; 42 transect sections were measured per sample period in the Control area.

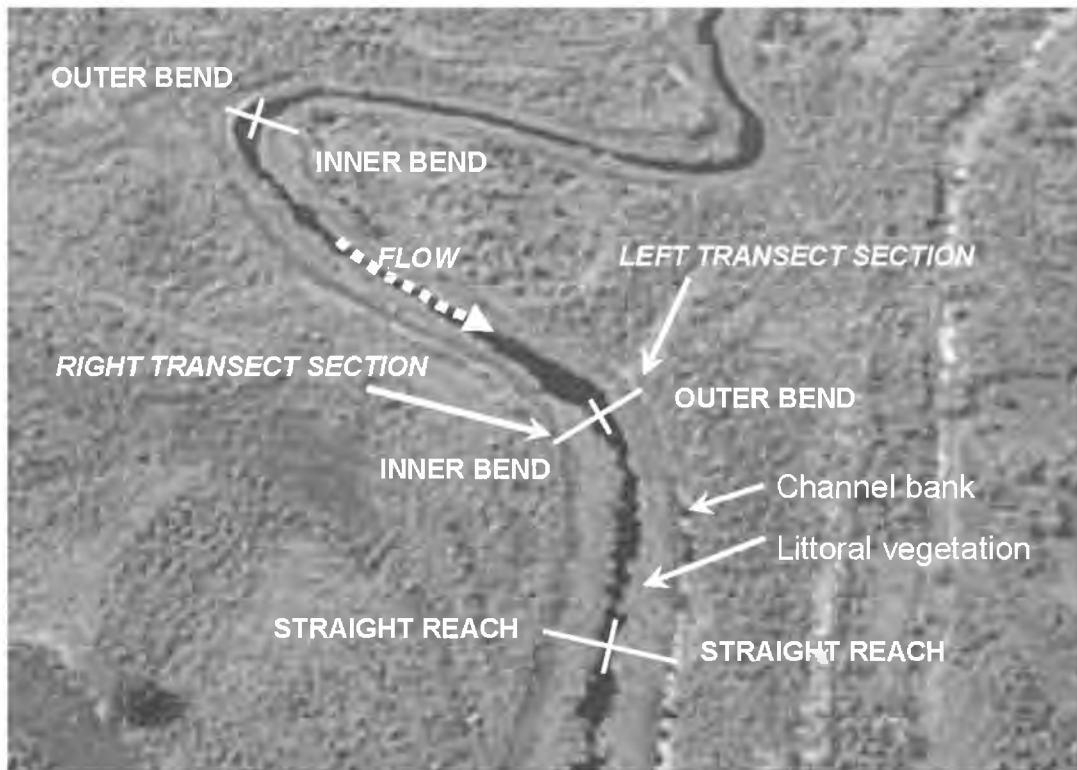


Figure 7-2. Diagram of transect orientation illustrating classification of transect sections at inner bends, outer bends, and straight reaches.

Relative cover and species richness were averaged over all sampled vegetated transect sections for each species or growth-form for each of the four baseline sample periods. Grand means for the baseline period are the averages of the four sample period means for each species or growth-form ($n=4$). An average of 125 vegetated transect sections occurred per sample period in the Impact area; 42 vegetated transect sections occurred per sample period in the Control area.

CHAPTER 7 LITTORAL VEGETATION

Sampling Methods-Reference Data

Reference surveys to estimate pre-channelization conditions used methods similar to those presented above for baseline data. Quantitative reference data to estimate pre-channelization littoral plant community structure and the width of vegetation beds were obtained from the semi-restored run. Cover class (Daubenmire 1959) (Table 7-1) data from a field survey of 13 transects in the semi-restored channel (C. Hovey, unpublished data) and cover estimates from photointerpretation of 1998 aerial photography (C. Hovey, unpublished results) were used to estimate mean relative cover of plant species under flowing conditions. Relative cover means for this survey are the averages of sampled vegetation beds (transect sections, two per transect, $n=26$) that occurred at the 13 transects.

Reference estimates of vegetation bed widths were derived from data collected in a concurrent but separate survey of vegetation beds in the same channel (C. Hovey, unpublished). Width data were collected at 42 beds at inner channel bends ($n=11$), outer bends ($n=19$), and straight reaches ($n=12$) of river channel. Beds in each of these categories were averaged to derive reference means. Additional qualitative assessment of actual in-channel vegetation cover prior to construction of canal C-38 was based on June 1956 black and white aerial photography (1:12000) (C. Hovey, unpublished).

Methodology for the reference survey data differed in some respects from baseline methods. Of the metrics used in the baseline data, only width, relative cover, relative frequency, and importance could be calculated with confidence from the reference data. Channel widths were not recorded and the precise locations of measurements are unknown, so vegetated percentages of channels could not be calculated. In some other respects, data collection for the reference survey data differed from baseline methodology. Only littoral beds delineated on aerial photographs of the area were measured in the 1998 ground survey, so bends without vegetation were not included in estimates of mean bed width. This methodology probably results in inflated means compared to those calculated from baseline surveys, particularly along outer channel bends, which may lack vegetation under flowing conditions. However, because this difference would result in bias in the direction opposite from that expected (wider beds in the reference period, so less baseline/reference contrast), this is not viewed as a large problem for baseline/reference comparisons. Although River Run #1 was not fully restored by the Demonstration Project, the reference data represent a point on a trajectory toward probable community structure and bed width in a restored system.

Grouping Variables

Both the reference and baseline data sets were organized by categorical grouping variables, including Area (Impact, Control, or Reference), and Season (summer or winter). Species were categorized by Growth Form as emergent, floating and mat-forming, submergent, or N/A (family or genus only, or unidentified species); and by Origin as native, non-native, or unknown.

Metrics

The following metrics were measured or derived for baseline period data. Those marked † were also measured or derived for the reference data. Section metrics were measured for individual vegetation beds within transect sections and refer only to vegetated quadrats. Transect metrics refer to entire transects, including both vegetated and unvegetated (open water) quadrats.

Width (section metric)†. An estimate of the lateral dimension of a littoral vegetation bed from the bank to its waterward edge. Beds were considered to end at the most waterward quadrat where total living plant cover was $\geq 5\%$. Width was estimated by multiplying quadrat length (2 m) by the number of contiguous vegetated quadrats containing $\geq 5\%$ absolute plant cover in the transect section; the last waterward quadrat was estimated to the nearest 1 m if less than the entire quadrat contained $\geq 5\%$ cover.

Relative Cover (section metric)†. An estimate of the cover of a plant species or group of species (e.g., emergent species or native species) relative to the cover of all species in a transect section. It was calculated by dividing the sum of the cover class midpoints of each species or group of species in all quadrats in the transect section by the sum of the cover class midpoints of all species in all quadrats in the same transect section. Relative cover was calculated for each species, species growth-form (floating and mat-forming species, emergent species, or submergent species), and species origin category (native, non-native).

CHAPTER 7 LITTORAL VEGETATION

Relative Frequency (section metric)†. As calculated here, frequency is the number of quadrats in which a species occurs in a transect section. Relative frequency is the frequency of a species divided by the sum of the frequencies of all species in all transect sections.

Section Percentage Frequency (section metric)†. Percentage of the number of transect sections at which a species or group of species was present.

Importance Value (IV) (section metric)†. Cover or frequency alone may be a misleading indicator of the influence of species in communities, given that other measures are possible and may convey different relationships. Relative frequency expresses commonness of species across sampling sites, while cover better-expresses influence within the community. Importance value (IV) (Grieg-Smith 1983) is an index value between 0 and 100, calculated here as the sum of the relative cover and relative frequency values for a species in a transect section. Although this index has problems when used in a community comparison context (Brower et al. 1990), importance value is used here to give a better estimate of the relative influence of individual species in communities than either cover or frequency alone.

Percentage Live Cover (section metric). Average percentage cover of living plants in a vegetation bed. Percent live cover was calculated for each transect section on each sampling date by averaging the percent live cover of vegetated quadrats at each transect section. Two transect section values were derived per transect per sampling period. This is the only metric that is a mean of quadrat values prior to calculation of group means, although the term "mean" is not included in the name of the metric.

Species Richness (section metric)†. Species richness is the number of species found in a transect section.

Percentage Vegetated Area (transect metric). Estimate of the percentage of the river channel covered by $\geq 5\%$ vegetation cover in a transect. Percent vegetated area was calculated for each transect on each sampling date by dividing the number of vegetated quadrats by the total number of quadrats in a transect. Percent vegetated area is an estimate of vegetated area relative to channel area within the area of the belt transect, and so standardizes mat widths with respect to the width of channels.

Statistical Methods

Except for bed widths, data were seldom normally distributed across sampling periods. Baseline and reference data that did not pass the Kolmogorov-Smirnov test of normality were compared with the Kruskal-Wallis one-way analysis of variance on ranks; reference-baseline comparisons of widths were conducted with two-way ANOVA. All comparisons were one-tailed and were considered significant at $p < 0.05$ or marginal in significance if close to 0.05. All means are reported and graphed with \pm one standard error. SAS version 8 (SAS Institute, Cary, NC) was used for statistical analyses.

Baseline Period Control Area Data

When interpreting baseline period (channelized-condition) data, it is important to recognize that the stratification of sampling in the Control and Impact areas is a distinction determined exclusively by planned restoration project activities, i.e., impacts (e.g., restored flow, hydroperiod, and other hydrologic characteristics) that were planned to take place in the Impact area but not in the Control area. At the time of baseline data collection, no impact had yet taken place. The purpose of Control area data is to evaluate Impact area responses using BACI-type approaches (e.g., Stewart-Oaten et al. 1992) with respect to an area where the impact had not occurred. Although Control area data are of intrinsic interest in baseline studies, to avoid confusion in comparisons, Control area data are being reserved for future BACI analyses in which the Impact area data will be compared with future evaluation data from the same location following restoration of flow. Control area data are presented in Table 7-2, but Impact area data alone are used in this report to represent the baseline period in graphs and statistical comparisons.

RESULTS

Vegetated Percentage of Channels and Width of Vegetation Beds

During the baseline period, mean vegetated percentage of river channels was $56.7\% \pm 5.0\%$. Inner bend widths averaged $12.4 \text{ m} \pm 0.7 \text{ m}$, outer bends $6.0 \text{ m} \pm 1.0 \text{ m}$, and straight sections $9.3 \text{ m} \pm 0.6 \text{ m}$

CHAPTER 7 LITTORAL VEGETATION

(Figure 7-3). In the 1998 reference field survey used to estimate pre-channelization conditions, mean widths were 5.0 m ± 0.4 m on inner bends, 3.8 m ± 0.5 m on outer bends, and 3.6 m ± 0.6 m on straight reaches (Figure 7-3). Pre-channelization (1956) aerial photography (C. Hovey, unpublished) proved problematic to interpret decisively because a distinct littoral zone was difficult to distinguish from marshes and other floodplain edge vegetation. However, the width of littoral vegetation beds appeared greatest on inner channel bends, where beds tended to be approximately twice as wide as on outer bends, which often had little littoral vegetation. Widths of vegetation beds on either side of straight channel reaches appeared approximately equal, but not as wide as on inner bends nor as narrow as on outer bends (C. Hovey, unpublished report). The aerial photography results are consistent with the ground survey results. Reference and baseline means for inner bends and straight reaches were significantly different ($P < 0.001$, two-way analysis of variance on ranks) (Table 7-2). Outer bends were not significantly different ($P = 0.081$) (Table 7-2).

Table 7-2. Metric means for Control, Impact, and Reference (flowing, using estimates of pre-channelization) area data. Only Impact and Reference data are compared statistically. Nonsignificant results are marked with an asterisk (*).

Metric	Category	Area	Mean	Standard error	<i>n</i>	<i>P</i>
Width (m)	Inner	Control	12.5	0.6	4	N/A
		Impact	12.4	0.7	4	< 0.001
		Reference	5.0	0.4	12	
	Outer	Control	7.9	0.7	4	N/A
		Impact	6.0	1.0	4	0.081*
		Reference	3.8	0.5	20	
	Straight	Control	13.8	0.4	4	N/A
		Impact	9.3	0.6	4	< 0.001
		Reference	3.6	0.6	13	
Relative cover (by growth form) (%)	Emergent	Control	62.2	4.0	4	N/A
		Impact	43.3	3.4	4	<0.01
		Reference	95.5	2.0	13	
	Floating & Mat-forming	Control	34.1	3.9	4	<0.01
		Impact	49.6	4.0	4	
		Reference	4.5	2.0	13	
Relative cover (by origin) (%)	Native	Control	80.5	3.2	4	N/A
		Impact	74.4	4.6	4	<0.01
		Reference	95.5	2.0	13	
	Non-native	Control	18.8	3.3	4	N/A
		Impact	25.2	4.7	4	<0.01
		Reference	4.5	2.0	13	
Richness (n species)	Control	16.2	0.7	4	N/A	
	Impact	11.6	0.2	4	<0.01	
	Reference	4.9	0.7	13		
Average percentage live plant cover (%)	Control	59.6	4.4	4	N/A	
	Impact	43.6	6.0	4		
Vegetated percentage of channel (%)	Control	75.9	3.9	4	N/A	
	Impact	56.7	5.0	4		

Relative Cover and Species Richness

Emergent species and floating/mat-forming species had similar mean relative cover in the baseline period. Of living plant cover, 43.3% ± 3.4% was emergent species, 49.6% ± 4.0% was floating and mat-forming species, and the remainder was submergent and other species (e.g., terrestrial species and taxa

CHAPTER 7 LITTORAL VEGETATION

identified only to family or genus) (Figure 7-4). In contrast, emergent species clearly dominated littoral zones in the reference semi-restored flowing channel. Based on the field survey data, mean combined relative cover of emergents was $95.5\% \pm 2.0\%$, and the estimate based on photointerpretation was 97%. Mean combined relative cover of floating and mat-forming species in the field survey was $4.5\% \pm 1.9\%$, and 3% in the photointerpretation estimate. Mean relative cover of emergent species and floating and mat-forming species were significantly different between the baseline and reference survey data ($P < 0.01$, Kruskal-Wallis one-way analysis of variance on ranks) (Table 7-2).

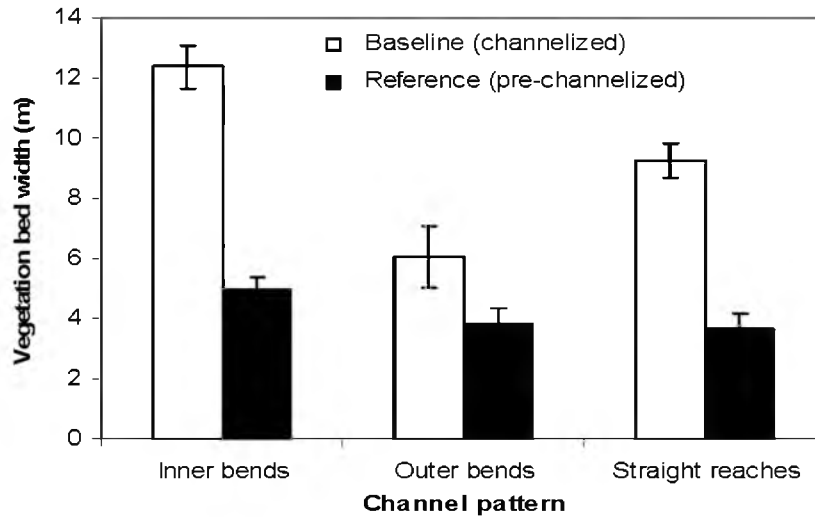


Figure 7-3. Vegetation bed widths on inner and outer bends and straight reaches in the baseline and reference area data. Error bars represent the 95% confidence interval of the mean.

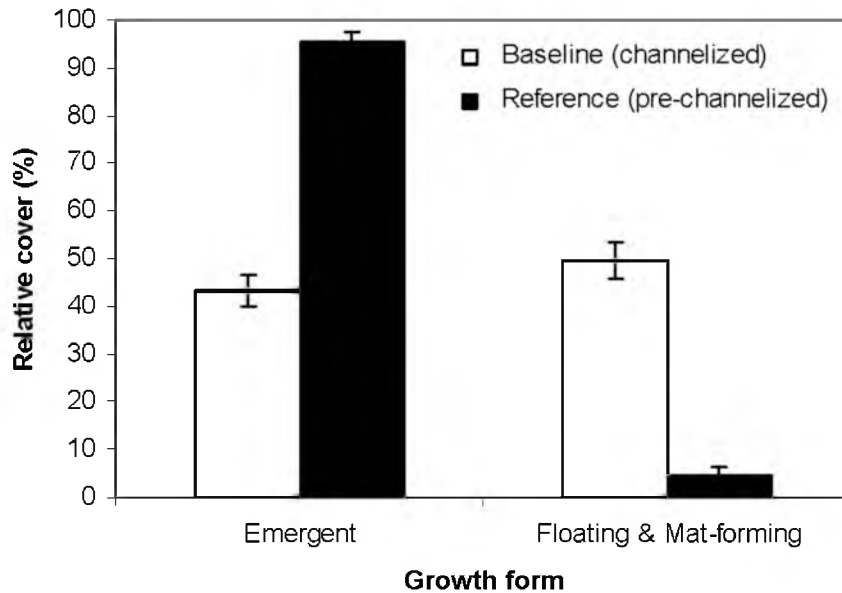


Figure 7-4. Mean relative cover of plant growth forms in baseline (channelized) and reference (flowing) channels. Error bars represent the 95% confidence interval of the mean.

CHAPTER 7 LITTORAL VEGETATION

Table 7-3. Mean relative cover, mean relative frequency, and importance values expressed as proportions for all species that occurred with values of $\geq 5\%$ in any of these metrics in the baseline or reference data. Importance is the sum of relative cover and relative frequency.

Form	Code	Species	Relative cover (%)		Relative frequency (%)		Importance	
			Reference (pre-channelized)	Baseline (channelized)	Reference (pre-channelized)	Baseline (channelized)	Reference (pre-channelized)	Baseline (channelized)
Emergent	AP01	<i>Alternanthera philoxeroides</i>	0.0	2.1	0.0	5.2	0.0	7.3
	HU01	<i>Hydrocotyle umbellata</i>	12.5	8.8	18.8	6.8	31.3	15.6
	LP01	<i>Ludwigia peruviana</i>	0.0	3.2	0.0	4.1	0.0	7.3
	NL01	<i>Nuphar lutea</i>	26.4	11.0	20.3	4.2	46.7	15.2
	PD01	<i>Polygonum densiflorum</i>	35.2	4.7	25.0	4.1	60.2	8.8
	PH01	<i>Panicum hemitomon</i>	5.5	0.6	9.4	1.4	14.9	2.0
	SS01	<i>Sacciolepis striata</i>	4.1	8.5	6.3	6.9	10.4	15.4
Floating & Mat-forming	EC01	<i>Eichhornia crassipes</i>	2.5	0.5	4.7	0.8	7.2	1.3
	LM99	<i>Lemna</i> sp.	0.0	5.5	0.0	7.7	0.0	13.2
	PS01	<i>Pistia stratiotes</i>	2.0	7.6	4.7	5.3	6.7	12.9
	SC05	<i>Scirpus cubensis</i>	0.0	10.3	0.0	5.5	0.0	15.8
	SM01	<i>Salvinia minima</i>	0.0	20.8	0.0	7.7	0.0	28.5
	WG01	<i>Wolffiella gladiata</i>	0.0	2.9	0.0	5.2	0.0	8.1

Table 7-3. Mean relative cover, mean relative frequency, and importance values expressed as proportions for all species that occurred with values of $\geq 5\%$ in any of these metrics in the baseline or reference data. Importance is the sum of relative cover and relative frequency.

Form	Code	Species	Relative cover (%)		Relative frequency (%)		Importance	
			Reference (pre-channelized)	Baseline (channelized)	Reference (pre-channelized)	Baseline (channelized)	Reference (pre-channelized)	Baseline (channelized)
Emergent	AP01	<i>Alternanthera philoxeroides</i>	0.0	2.1	0.0	5.2	0.0	7.3
	HU01	<i>Hydrocotyle umbellata</i>	12.5	8.8	18.8	6.8	31.3	15.6
	LP01	<i>Ludwigia peruviana</i>	0.0	3.2	0.0	4.1	0.0	7.3
	NL01	<i>Nuphar lutea</i>	26.4	11.0	20.3	4.2	46.7	15.2
	PD01	<i>Polygonum densiflorum</i>	35.2	4.7	25.0	4.1	60.2	8.8
	PH01	<i>Panicum hemitomon</i>	5.5	0.6	9.4	1.4	14.9	2.0
	SS01	<i>Sacciolepis striata</i>	4.1	8.5	6.3	6.9	10.4	15.4
Floating & Mat-forming	EC01	<i>Eichhornia crassipes</i>	2.5	0.5	4.7	0.8	7.2	1.3
	LM99	<i>Lemna</i> sp.	0.0	5.5	0.0	7.7	0.0	13.2
	PS01	<i>Pistia stratiotes</i>	2.0	7.6	4.7	5.3	6.7	12.9
	SC05	<i>Scirpus cubensis</i>	0.0	10.3	0.0	5.5	0.0	15.8
	SM01	<i>Salvinia minima</i>	0.0	20.8	0.0	7.7	0.0	28.5
	WG01	<i>Wolffiella gladiata</i>	0.0	2.9	0.0	5.2	0.0	8.1

Relative cover, relative frequency, and importance values (IV) for species with values >5 in any of these three metrics in either or both the baseline and reference data are shown in Table 7-3; IVs are graphed alone for the reference and baseline data in Figure 7-5. Six of the species on this list are floating/mat-forming species, including the tiny floating, aquatic fern, *Salvinia minima* (water spangles), which had the highest IV in the baseline period data. Two other small-leaved floating plants, *Wolffiella gladiata* (watersprite), and *Lemna* sp. (duckweed) occurred with lower IV. Also on this list (and present in both data sets) were *Eichhornia crassipes* (water hyacinth) and *Pistia stratiotes* (water lettuce), both floating, invasive exotics, and the only floating species recorded in the reference data. Several floating and mat-forming species, including *Scirpus cubensis*, *S. minima*, *Lemna* sp., and *W. gladiata* were present in the baseline data, but not in the reference data.

Common emergent species in the baseline and reference data were *Nuphar lutea* (spatterdock), *Polygonum densiflorum* (smartweed), the native grass *Panicum hemitomon* (maidencane), *Alternanthera philoxeroides* (alligatorweed), *Hydrocotyle umbellata* (pennywort), and the shrub *Ludwigia peruviana* (Peruvian primrosewillow).

Mean species richness of transect sections in the Impact area was 12.6 species (Table 7-2). In the Reference data, richness was only 4.5 species. Species richness was significantly different between the

CHAPTER 7 LITTORAL VEGETATION

reference and baseline data ($P < 0.01$, Kruskal-Wallis one-way analysis of variance on ranks) (Table 7-2). All species encountered in the baseline surveys are listed in Appendix 7-1A.

Non-native Invasive Species

Native species had lower mean relative cover ($74.4\% \pm 4.6\%$) in the baseline data than in the reference area ($95.5\% \pm 2.0\%$) (Figure 7-6) (Kruskal-Wallis one-way analysis of variance on ranks, $P < 0.001$) (Table 7-2). Free-floating invasive non-natives (primarily *E. crassipes* and *P. stratiotes*) were present in both data sets but occurred in only about 10% of transect sections in the reference data, and 6% of transect sections in the baseline data. However, combined mean relative cover of invasive non-natives was not high (5–10% in both datasets).

DISCUSSION

Impacts of Channelization on Littoral Vegetation Beds

The substantial differences between flowing and non-flowing channels in the same system suggest that elimination of flow was a factor allowing expansion of littoral vegetation beds toward mid-channel areas, and increases in cover of floating and mat-forming species relative to cover of emergent species.

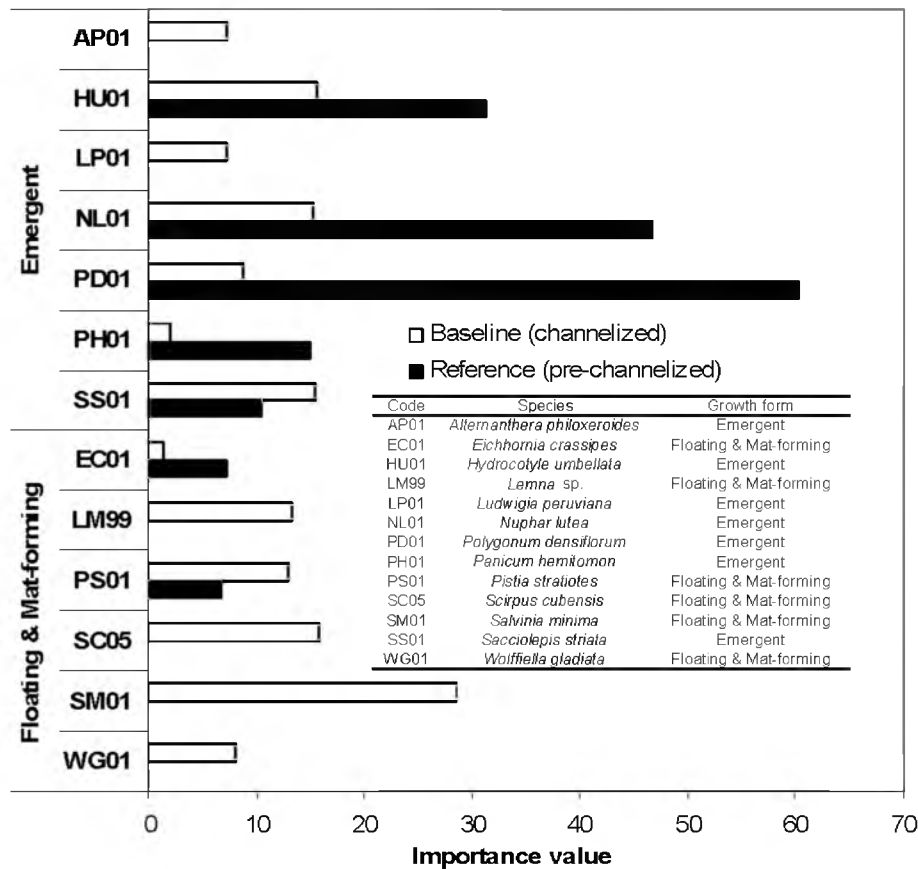


Figure 7-5. Common (IV ≥ 5) species in baseline (channelized) and reference (flowing) area remnant channels. Error bars represent \pm one standard error of the mean.

CHAPTER 7 LITTORAL VEGETATION

The lower mat widths and cover of floating species observed under flowing conditions are likely the result of combinations of (a) gross removal of free-floating species by flow, particularly in unsheltered areas of the channel; (b) removal of parts of or entire floating mats by flow; and (c) undermining of substrates by flow. In flume experiments, Riis and Biggs (2003) found that removal of emergent macrophytes by high flow was primarily due to uprooting of species resulting from erosion of substrate sediments, rather than stem breakage. Conversion to emergent-dominated communities is likely also partly due to removal of floating species. Because relative cover values are being used, reductions in floating and mat-forming species alone could cause an increase in relative emergent cover without an increase in absolute cover. Changes in species composition can be interpreted as biological responses of species adapted to particular ranges of tolerance in flow.

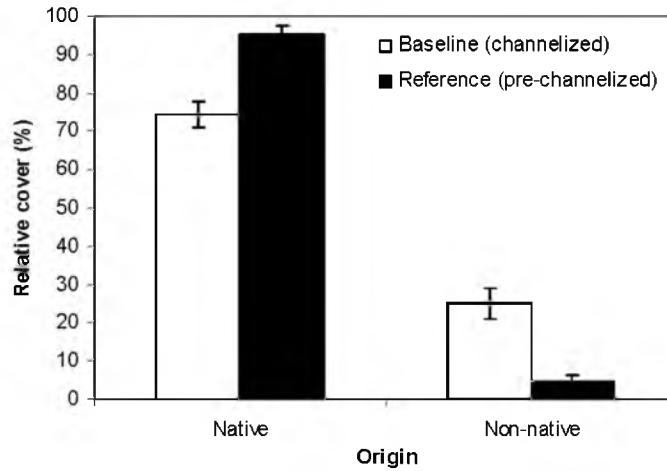


Figure 7-6. Mean relative cover of native and non-native species in the baseline and reference littoral vegetation surveys. Error bars indicate \pm one standard error of the mean.

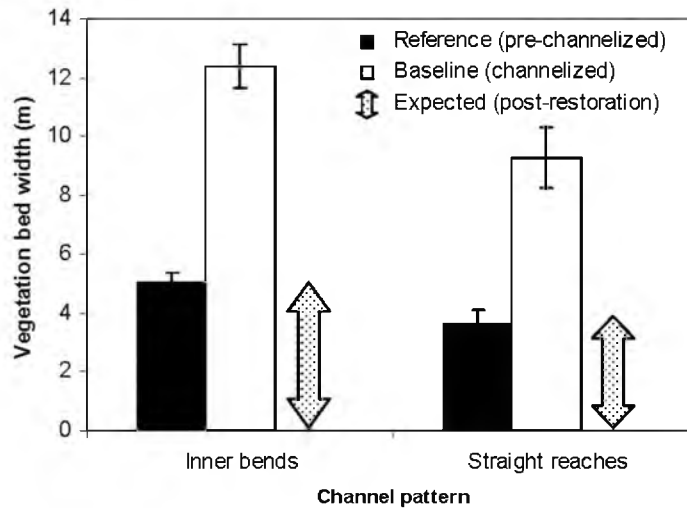


Figure 7-7. Mean littoral bed widths on inner bends and straight reaches of river channel in the baseline and reference littoral vegetation surveys, showing values expected following restoration of flow based on reference data. Error bars indicate \pm one standard error of the mean.

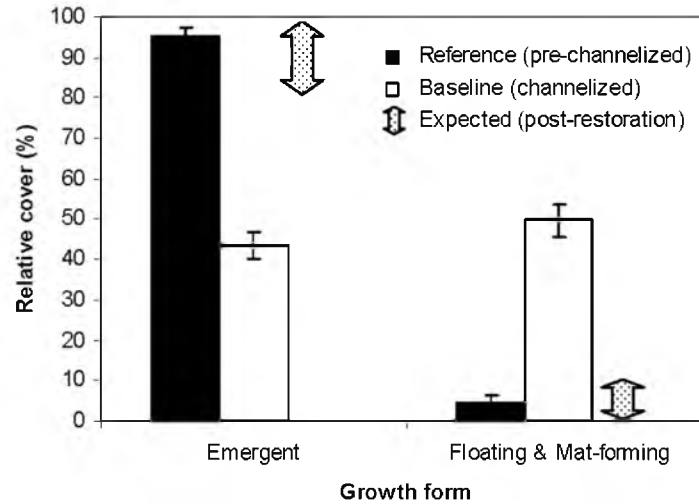


Figure 7-8. Mean relative cover of emergent and floating and mat-forming species in the baseline and reference littoral vegetation surveys, graphed with values expected following restoration of flow. Error bars indicate \pm one standard error of the mean.

Expectations

As part of the restoration evaluation program, performance measures called expectations were developed for selected metrics for which (a) good reference data exist or can be extrapolated from remote but similar sites; and (b) are anticipated to show clear, measurable, and ecologically meaningful responses to restoration. Littoral plant community structure and the width of vegetation beds were suggested by the data presented in this report as expectation metrics and have been selected as restoration expectations. More details on expectations than are presented below are available in Bousquin and Hovey 2005a and 2005b.

Vegetation Bed Widths Relative to Channel Pattern

The expectation for vegetation bed widths (Bousquin and Hovey 2005a) was based on reference vegetation bed width data for inner bends and straight reaches of channels; an expectation was not developed for outer bends because widths were not significantly different between the reference and baseline data (Table 7-2). The expectation predicts that, following restored flow, littoral vegetation beds will persist in restored river channels, but that their mean widths will decrease to five meters or less from the bank on inner channel bends, and four meters or less from the bank on straight channel reaches (Figure 7-7).

Littoral Community Structure

The expectation for littoral plant community structure (Bousquin and Hovey 2005b) was also based on the reference data presented in this report. Mean relative cover of both emergent species and floating/mat-forming species differed significantly between the reference and baseline areas (Table 7-2). The expectation predicts that, following restored flow, littoral plant community structure will undergo the following changes: (a) combined mean relative cover of emergent species will increase to >80%, and (b) combined mean relative cover of floating and mat-forming species will decrease to <10% (Figure 7-8).

Non-native Species

As discussed in the Methods section, invasive exotics, primarily *Pistia stratiotes* and *Eichhornia crassipes*, have been maintained at low levels since 1988. This information is consistent with the baseline and reference results, which reveal low relative cover and relative frequency of invasive exotics overall (Figure 7-5). Substantial mats of these species were nonexistent in both the baseline and reference data sets, likely because of weed control efforts, although infestations prior to vegetation management efforts were reportedly common (see Study Areas in the Methods section, above). Because management efforts have maintained low constant levels of these target species, the effects of weed control are best viewed as a constant background factor that is not likely to affect future data collection or evaluation analyses.

It is probable that, in the absence of weed control, these free-floating invasives would have proliferated under non-flowing conditions, and anecdotal pre-weed control information cited in the Methods section supports this idea. Had weed proliferation gone unchecked, reintroduction of flow would likely have resulted in even more pronounced contrasts between flowing and non-flowing channels than those demonstrated in this report.

Both *P. stratiotes* and *E. crassipes* were present prior to channelization, but extensive mats were likely limited to backwaters, abandoned meanders, and edges of active channels. Although *Scirpus cubensis* is not native to Florida, and could be considered both a nuisance and invasive in the Kissimmee system because of its presumed role in floating mat formation (Milleson et al. 1980), it is not generally regarded as invasive (Florida Exotic Pest Plant Council 2003).

Conclusions

The results indicate that the distribution and species composition of littoral plant communities in the Kissimmee River were different in flowing channels compared to non-flowing channels. In the channelized system, aquatic vegetation was likely limited by flow to relatively narrow littoral zones dominated on average by emergent species. With the dredging of C-38 and diversion of flow to the canal, disconnected river channels became non-flowing pools in which cover of vegetation in channels, and relative cover of floating and mat-forming species, probably increased as a result of channelization.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The author extends grateful acknowledgement to the following individuals who have made significant contributions to the littoral vegetation project since its inception in 1998: Teresa Fretwell, Caroline Hovey, William Patrick Davis, Louis Toth, David J. Colangelo, Kimberly Kanter, Renee Hartless, R. Harper Carroll IV, Don Frei, and Julie Lynch.

CHAPTER 7 LITTORAL VEGETATION

LITERATURE CITED

- Anderson, D. H., D. Frie, and W. P. Davis. 2005. River channel geomorphology of the channelized Kissimmee River. Chapter 3 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Bousquin, S. G., and L. L. Carnal. 2005. Classification of the vegetation of the Kissimmee River and floodplain. Chapter 10 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Bousquin, S. G., and C. Hovey. 2005a. Width of littoral vegetation beds relative to channel pattern. *In* D. H. Anderson, S. G. Bousquin, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Defining success: expectations for restoration of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Expectation 10. Technical Publication ERA #433.
- Bousquin, S. G., and C. Hovey. 2005b. Plant community structure in river channels. *In* D. H. Anderson, S. G. Bousquin, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Defining success: expectations for restoration of the Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Expectation 11. Technical Publication ERA #433.
- Bousquin, S. G., D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo. 2005. Introduction: baseline studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. Chapter 1 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Brower, J. E., J. H. Zar, and C. N. von Ende. 1990. Field and Laboratory Methods for General Ecology. William C. Brown, Dubuque, Iowa, USA.
- Campbell, R. 1989. Kissimmee River Pool B aquatic weed flush. Videotape. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Colangelo, D. J. 2005. Dissolved oxygen in the channelized Kissimmee River and seven reference streams. Chapter 4 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Daubenmire, R. 1959. A canopy coverage method of vegetational analysis. *Northwest Science* 33:42-64.
- Dawson, F. H. 1988. Water flow and the vegetation of running waters. Pages 283-309 *in* J. J. Symoens, editor. *Vegetation of inland waters*. Kluwer Academic Publishers, New York, New York, USA.
- Florida Exotic Pest Plant Council. 2003. 2003 list of Florida's invasive species. Web page. URL: <http://www.fleppc.org/03list.htm>. Florida Exotic Pest Plant Council.
- Grieg-Smith, P. 1983. *Quantitative Plant Ecology*. Third edition. University of California Press, Los Angeles, California, USA.
- Grimshaw, H. J. 2002. Nutrient release and detritus production by herbicide-treated freely floating aquatic vegetation in a large, shallow subtropical lake and river. *Archiv für Hydrobiologie* 153:469-490.
- Jones, B. 2005. Water quality in the channelized Kissimmee River. Chapter 5 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Miller, S. J., J. Wood, and L. Perrin. 1990. Vegetation community responses to restoration. Pages 97-111 *in* M.K. Loftin, L. A. Toth, and J. Obeysekera, editors. *Proceedings of the Kissimmee River Restoration Symposium*. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.

CHAPTER 7 LITTORAL VEGETATION

- Milleson, J. F., R. L. Goodrick, and J. A. Van Arman. 1980. Plant communities of the Kissimmee River Valley. Technical Publication 80-7. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Reimer, D. N. 1984. An introduction to aquatic environments. Avi Publishing, Westport, Connecticut, USA.
- Riis, T., and B. J. F. Biggs. 2003. Hydrologic and hydraulic control of macrophyte establishment and performance in streams. *Limnology and Oceanography* 48:1488-1497.
- Stewart-Oaten, A., J. R. Bence, and C. W. Osenburg. 1992. Assessing effects of unreplicated perturbations: no simple solutions. *Ecology* 73:1396-1404.
- Toth, L. A. 1991. Environmental responses to the Kissimmee River Demonstration Project. Technical Publication 91-02. South Florida Water Management District. West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.



CHAPTER 8

CHANNELIZED KISSIMMEE RIVER FLOODPLAIN VEGETATION

Stephen G. Bousquin

*Kissimmee Division, Watershed Management Department, South Florida Water Management District,
West Palm Beach, FL 33406*

ABSTRACT: Prior to channelization over 80% of vegetation in what is now Pools A–D of the Kissimmee River occurred in wetlands. By 1974, three years after channelization was completed, over 60% of pre-channelization wetlands had disappeared and upland vegetation covered more than half of the original floodplain’s area. The major components of pre-channelization floodplain wetlands were Broadleaf Marshes, Wet Prairie, and Wetland Shrub communities. This chapter describes the composition of these important plant communities; explains the methods used to collect baseline-period species data for future comparison with post-restoration data; and provides estimates of community change that occurred as a result of channelization.

INTRODUCTION

Measurable landscape- and community-level responses to changes in plant habitat, such as alterations in hydroperiod, make plant communities sensitive indicators of environmental change. After channelization of the Kissimmee River was completed in 1971, canal C-38 intercepted and contained virtually all flow formerly carried by the river channel and floodplain. Large areas of floodplain were no longer inundated seasonally, and within a few years a dramatic conversion to a system dominated by upland vegetation had taken place. Prior to channelization, over 80% of vegetation in Pools A–D occurred in wetlands. By 1974, over 60% of pre-channelization wetlands were gone and upland vegetation covered more than half of the original floodplain’s area (Carnal and Bousquin 2005). Restoration of the hydrology of the Kissimmee River is expected to restore these wetland plant communities to their original distribution and areal coverage.

As plants respond to changes in habitat, changes in the distribution and composition of plant communities can provide notice of the recovery trajectory and status of restoration (Smart 2000, de Boer 1982). Vegetation is also a mediating factor between hydrology and animal trophic levels. As the distributions and composition of plant communities change, the species of animals that utilize them also change. Declines in animal taxa that depended on pre-channelization vegetation (or other properties of their habitat to which vegetation also responded) are documented in other chapters of this volume (Glenn 2005, Koebel et al. 2005a, b, Williams and Melvin 2005). Vegetation is therefore a direct and powerful indicator of biotic change at other trophic levels in response to hydrologic restoration.

The Kissimmee River Restoration Evaluation Program includes three primary vegetation monitoring components encompassing both large-scale mapping and ground-based studies of floodplain and river channel plant communities. The floodplain vegetation study is an ongoing effort designed to monitor

community change as plant community succession takes place in response to restoration of pre-channelization hydrologic characteristics of the river and floodplain. This study is intended to capture species-level information not available from vegetation mapping, which is based primarily on remotely-sensed data (Bousquin and Carnal 2005, Carnal and Bousquin 2005, Shuman and Ambrose 2003). Baseline-period wet season data produced by this study are presented here.

Pre-Channelization Hydrology and Vegetation

Prior to channelization, the Kissimmee River underwent a seasonal cycle of wet and dry periods; however, it is likely that only peripheral areas of the floodplain underwent consistent annual seasonal drying (Koebel 1995). Substantial portions of the floodplain were probably inundated for long periods most years (Toth et al. 1995, Anderson 2005) with maximum water depths ranging from 0.3–0.7 meters (Koebel 1995).

The major components of pre-channelization floodplain wetlands were Broadleaf Marshes (BLM, Bousquin and Carnal 2005) (7060.8 ha), Wet Prairies (WP) (3203.9 ha), and Wetland Shrub communities (WS) (1976.3 ha), which together accounted for over 98% of floodplain wetlands prior to channelization (Camal and Bousquin 2005).

The following descriptions are based on photointerpretation of pre-channelization aerial photography by Pierce et al. (1982); detailed species data are not available for the pre-channelization period. Broadleaf Marshes dominated by *Sagittaria lancifolia* (arrowhead) and *Pontederia cordata* (pickerelweed) occurred in portions of the floodplain closest to the river, which had the longest and deepest hydroperiods. Broadleaf Marsh communities graded upslope into Wet Prairies as average water depth and hydroperiod decreased. Where they overlapped with Broadleaf Marsh, Wet Prairies on the Kissimmee were dominated by *Panicum hemitomon* (maiden cane) (Bousquin and Carnal 2005), which decreased in abundance toward the edges of the floodplain, where various wetland grasses, sedges, and forbs dominated Wet Prairie. Wetland Shrub communities of two major types occurred in areas of long-duration hydroperiod prior to channelization: *Cephalanthus occidentalis* (buttonbush) communities, which form an open canopy in some Broadleaf Marshes, and *Salix caroliniana*- (willow) communities, which occurred primarily in riparian areas.

Objectives

The objectives of this chapter are:

- (a) To describe the baseline period species composition and structure of the major wetland plant communities of the Kissimmee River floodplain: Broadleaf Marsh, Wet Prairie, and Wetland Shrub.
- (b) To establish baseline conditions for monitoring evaluation of successional change following restoration.
- (c) To describe probable impacts of channelization and restoration on Broadleaf Marsh and Wet Prairie plant communities.

METHODS

Field Methods

Baseline sampling was conducted by L. Toth in July–October (wet season) 1998 at 87.5 m x 20 m plots in Pools A and C where Broadleaf Marsh, Wet Prairie, and Wetland Shrub communities had occurred prior to channelization. Plot locations were originally selected in replicate clusters of three, stratified by elevation and pre-channelization vegetation (using the pre-channelization vegetation map of Pierce et al. 1982). Ten of these plots, located on the site of a former sod farm, an unvegetated levee, and a site that was improved pasture prior to channelization, were not used in the analyses presented here. Plots were permanently marked with PVC corner poles. The plots were sampled three times (summer 1998, winter 1998–1999, and spring 1999) prior to backfilling of C-38, which began in June 1999. The 1998 wet season

data were used in the analyses presented here because the season of this sample corresponds to that of the available wet season reference data described below (see *Reference Data Methods*).

At each plot, the cover classes of understory plant species were recorded using a six-level system of Daubenmire (Daubenmire 1959) (Table 8-1); canopy cover (>2 m) was recorded using a modified four-class system (Table 8-1). Water depth at plot center and corners was recorded. Plot corners were surveyed to provide accurate ground elevations, which range from 46.3–50.1 feet in Pool A and 31.8–41.4 feet in Pool C.

Table 8-1. Modified Daubenmire scale used for recording cover of plant species within vegetation plots.

Scale	Cover Class	Cover range	Midpoint
Overstory	1	1 - 5	2.5
	2	6 - 50	22.5
	3	51 - 90	70.0
	4	91 - 100	95.0
Understory	0	0	0.0
	1	1 - 5	2.5
	2	6 - 25	15.0
	3	26 - 50	37.5
	4	51 - 75	62.5
	5	76 - 95	85.0
	6	96 - 100	97.5

Data Summary Methods

Community Classification

Baseline plant species cover data from the 77 plots were classified following the decision rules in the Kissimmee River Restoration Evaluation Program (KRREP) Vegetation Classification System (Bousquin and Carnal 2005), using visual examination of plot data and the cluster analysis presented in Bousquin and Carnal (2005) to group plots by compositional similarity in species cover. Communities were keyed to the Bcode Group level of the KRREP Vegetation Classification System, which defines plant communities by the presence of one or more indicator species. The classification defines 73 Community Types (abbreviated as Bcodes), most of which are defined by dominant species or groups of species. For mapping and areal estimation purposes, Community Types are generally grouped into Bcode Groups, which is the second-finest level in the classification. Bcode Groups cluster similar Community Types, which may have different dominant species or different abundances of dominant species, but are similar in their habitat requirements and physiognomy (appearance and shape). Although use of cover classes with large ranges inhibits data classification using cover-based decision rules (because actual species cover values could be at the upper or lower end of the range), most classification decisions simply involved determining dominant species. Decisions were checked against the data collector’s original classifications, which had been made on-site. Cases in which decisions were unclear involved distinctions between Broadleaf Marsh and Wet Prairie, which clustered together in the cluster analysis and are similar in species composition.

In most cases, because precise criteria of the classification were not always met for Broadleaf Marsh and Wet Prairie, some choices between these types were judgment-based, primarily using presence of indicator species. Full species lists for all plots are presented in Appendix 8-1A. During the baseline period, Broadleaf Marsh and Wet Prairie community compositions may be transitional or intermediate between both types of marsh, possibly due to an unsuitable flooding regime that causes repeated setbacks in succession. While both types could have been classified as an intermediate type (e.g., Miscellaneous Wet Prairie Vegetation, MxWP in Bousquin and Carnal 2005), their designations as “transitional” better clarifies relationships to the more robust broadleaf and wet prairie marshes believed to have occurred prior to channelization (Toth, unpublished).

CHAPTER 8 FLOODPLAIN VEGETATION

The midpoints of cover classes (Table 8-1) (Daubenmire 1959) were used for calculation of relative cover. For species with both understory and canopy cover in a plot, the strata were combined by selecting the stratum with the highest midpoint and using that number for relative cover calculations. Although coarse, this method allowed estimation of relative dominance and species composition.

Species Wetland Status Classification

Wetland affinities of plant species were classified using the wetland status categories of the National Wetlands Inventory (NWI) (U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1988) (Table 8-2). Relative frequencies for these categories were calculated as the number of occurrences in a plot of species in a status category divided by the number of species in the plot (expressed as a percentage). Two combined categories were used in analyses: a) relative frequency of obligate + facultative wetland species, and b) relative cover of facultative + facultative upland + upland species.

Table 8-2. Wetland status categories (adapted from U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1988). The last category was defined for this study.

OBL	Obligate wetland. Occurs almost always (estimated probability 99%) under natural conditions in wetlands.
FACW	Facultative wetland. Usually occurs in wetlands (estimated probability 67%-99%), but occasionally found in non-wetlands.
FAC	Facultative. Equally likely to occur in wetlands or non-wetlands (estimated probability 34%-66%).
FACU	Facultative upland. Usually occurs in non-wetlands (estimated probability 67%-99%), but occasionally found in wetlands (estimated probability 1%-33%).
UPL	Obligate upland. Occurs almost always in uplands under natural conditions.

Reference Data Methods

A digitized version of the Pierce et al. (1982) pre-channelization vegetation map was used to determine the pre-channelization vegetation types of the floodplain vegetation plots. Pierce et al. (1982) photointerpreted 1952–1954 1:8000 black-and-white aerial photographs for their maps of early post-channelization vegetation, applying categories that had been established by Milleson et al. (1980) where possible and defining new categories as needed. Milleson et al. (1980) had mapped early post-channelization Kissimmee floodplain vegetation based on 1973–1974 photography. Because the vegetation mosaic on which Pierce et al.'s map was based no longer existed at the time of mapping, direct ground-truthing was not possible. However, the authors had the benefit of Milleson et al.'s (1980) recent photointerpretation and ground-truthing of post-channelization vegetation. The original categories of Pierce et al. (1982) and Milleson et al. (1980) were converted to the KRREP Vegetation Classification System for compatibility with Kissimmee River Restoration baseline data. The entire classification, details of conversion decisions, and a crosswalk among the three classification systems are presented in Bousquin and Carnal (2005). Species abundance data are not available in either classification.

Estimates of pre-channelization community structure in Broadleaf Marsh and Wet Prairie are from L. Toth (unpublished reports and data), who used species data collected in July–November (wet season) of 1984–1994 in 1 m² quadrats placed at 7.6 m intervals on transects in inundated sections of Pools A and B to estimate pre-channelization species composition and frequency of NWI categories for Wet Prairie and Broadleaf Marsh. Broadleaf Marsh reference data were collected at “remnant broadleaf marsh” transects (Deer Run North, Deer Run South, and Turkey Trail) in the impounded lower portion of Pool B, where floodplain elevations had received long (usually ≥ 250 d) annual hydroperiods since channelization. Wet Prairie reference data were collected at transects in reestablished Wet Prairie communities in Pool B (Pine Island Slough and Duck Slough) and an impoundment in Pool A (Rattlesnake Hammock). Percentage of species in NWI categories was calculated for each quadrat in each transect, then averaged for each transect (Toth, unpublished).

RESULTS

Baseline and Pre-channelization Conditions

Community Change Following Channelization

By 1998, the plant communities that had occurred at the vegetation plots prior to channelization had developed into one of three general vegetation types: (1) Upland Herbaceous communities, primarily pastures (Bcode Group UP, Bousquin and Carnal 2005); (2) upland or mesophytic shrub communities (Upland Shrub, US); or (3) transitional Broadleaf Marsh /Wet Prairie (BLM/WP or MxWP) communities. Of the 28 locations that were classified by Pierce et al. (1982) as Broadleaf Marsh prior to channelization in the 1950s, only six plots at lower elevations (Table 8-3) persisted as wetland vegetation. These plots were at various stages of succession and all seemed intermediate between Broadleaf Marsh-Wet Prairie communities in the channelized-period baseline data (Appendix 8-1A). The remaining 22 formerly Broadleaf Marsh plots had become either Upland Herbaceous or Upland Shrub communities by 1998 (Table 8-3). All of the 28 pre-channelization Wet Prairie sites had developed upland vegetation, either herbaceous (primarily improved pastures) or shrub-dominated (Table 8-3). Of the 21 locations classified by Pierce et al (1982) as wetland shrub vegetation prior to channelization, five plots persisted as wetlands (either Wet Prairie or Broadleaf Marsh) after channelization and one was classified as a Miscellaneous Wetland (MW, the Bcode Group in which fern-dominated communities are grouped — essentially similar to a *Myrica cerifera* floating mat community (S.MCF, Bousquin and Carnal 2005) but with lower cover of shrubs and higher cover of *Osmunda regalis*). However, most (15) of the formerly wetland shrub plots had developed either herbaceous or shrub-dominated upland vegetation (Table 8-3).

Table 8-3. Baseline (channelized condition) vegetation plots, arranged by pre-channelization vegetation.

Pre-channelization vegetation	Baseline vegetation	Pool	Mean elevation (ft)	SE (ft)	n	Elevation range (ft)
Broadleaf Marsh	Broadleaf Marsh	A	46.3	0.0	3	46.3 - 46.4
		C	33.9	0.1	2	33.8 - 33.9
	Upland Herbaceous (pasture)	A	48.7	0.2	6	48 - 49.3
		C	36.8	0.7	7	35.4 - 41.1
	Upland Shrub	A	47.3	0.3	3	46.6 - 47.7
		C	34.1	0.2	6	33.2 - 34.6
	Wet Prairie	C	33.6	0.0	1	33.6 - 33.6
Wet Prairie	Upland Herbaceous (pasture)	A	49.7	0.1	6	49.3 - 50.1
		C	38.2	0.4	17	35.7 - 41.4
	Upland Shrub	C	34.7	0.3	5	34.3 - 35.4
Wetland Shrub	Broadleaf Marsh	C	35.5	0.1	2	35.3 - 35.6
	Miscellaneous Wetland	C	31.8	0.0	1	31.8 - 31.8
	Upland Herbaceous (pasture)	A	48.2	0.1	3	48.1 - 48.3
		C	35.6	0.0	1	35.6 - 35.6
	Upland Shrub	A	47.6	0.0	3	47.3 - 48
		C	35.5	0.8	8	31.8 - 37
Wet Prairie	C	35.3	0.2	3	34.9 - 35.5	

Baseline Community Structure and Species Composition

Obligate and facultative wetland species in baseline-period examples of Broadleaf Marsh in Pools A and C had combined relative cover of $93.6\% \pm 1.8\%$, and relative frequency of $84.9\% \pm 4.2\%$ of species. Except by presence of Broadleaf Marsh indicator species (*Sagittaria lancifolia* and *Pontederia cordata*), distinctions between baseline examples of Broadleaf Marsh and Wet Prairie were difficult; Wet Prairie had relative cover of obligate and facultative wetland species of $93.9\% \pm 1.5\%$ and relative frequency of $85.5\% \pm 2.3\%$ (Figure 8-1). Percentage of obligate and facultative wetland species in Wet Prairie and Broadleaf Marsh communities were not significantly different in the baseline data (t-test, $P = 0.453$).

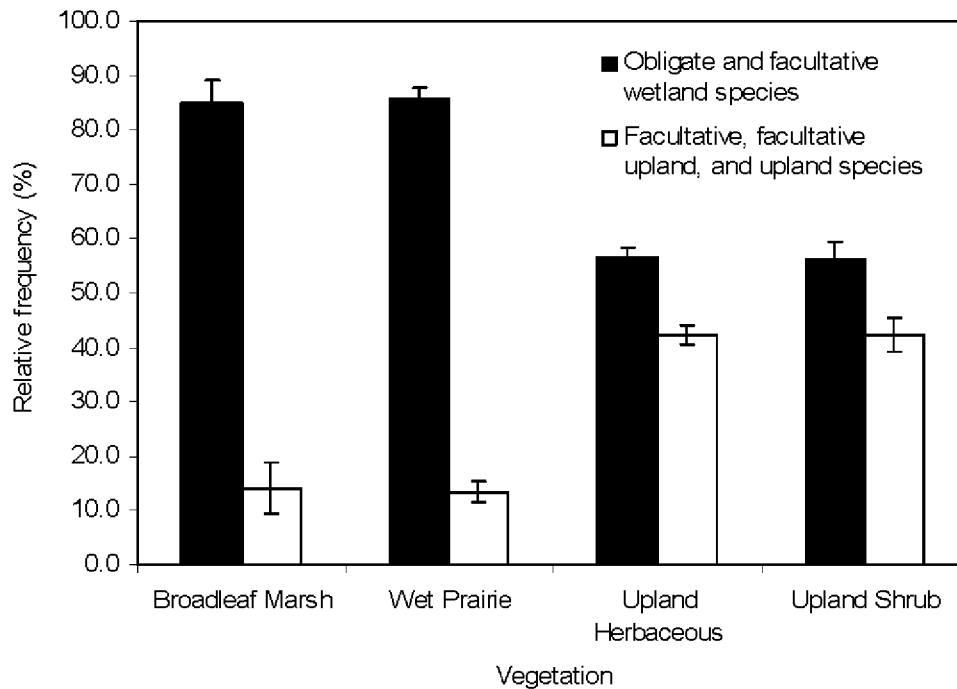


Figure 8-1. Relative frequency of species wetland status categories in the baseline vegetation plots, summer 1998 data.

Commonly associated species in Broadleaf Marshes, in addition to *S. lancifolia* and *P. cordata*, included *P. hemitomon*, *Leersia hexandra* (cutgrass), *Luziola fluitans* (water grass), *Diodia virginiana* (buttonweed), *Bacopa caroliniana* (bacopa), *Polygonum punctatum* (dotted smartweed), *Cyperus haspan* (sharp-edge sedge), and *Hydrocotyle umbellata* (pennywort). Composition of Wet Prairies was similar and included *L. fluitans*, *L. hexandra*, *D. virginiana*, *P. hemitomon*, *Eleocharis vivipara* (viviparous spikerush), *Ludwigia peruviana* (Peruvian primrosewillow), *S. lancifolia*, and *Paspalum dissectum* (mudbank crowngrass). Species richness in Broadleaf Marshes and Wet Prairies were 22.0 ± 2.8 species and 22.8 ± 0.9 species, respectively (not significantly different, t-test $P = 0.8$).

The Upland Herbaceous (UP) plots were dominated by combinations of pasture grasses including *Paspalum notatum* (bahiagrass), *Cynodon dactylon* (Bermudagrass), and *Axonopus fissifolius* (carpetgrass). Associated species in some plots included *Sesbania vesicaria* (bladderpod) and *Eupatorium capillifolium* (dogfennel) (Appendix 8-1A), two forbs that tend to increase in ungrazed pastures. On average, obligate and facultative wetland species accounted for $33.9\% \pm 3.2\%$ of species cover in Upland Herbaceous communities in Pools A and C combined, and made up $56.5\% \pm 1.9\%$ of the species composition (Figure 8-1).

The Upland Shrub sites had canopies dominated by *Myrica cerifera* (waxmyrtle), *Baccharis halimifolia* (saltbush), or *Rubus cuneifolius* (blackberry); several of each subtype had substantial cover of *Vitis rotundifolia* (grape), a climbing vine (Appendix 8-1A). Understories often included ferns

CHAPTER 8 FLOODPLAIN VEGETATION

(*Woodwardia virginica*, *Blechnum serrulatum*, *Osmunda regalis*, *Thelypteris interrupta*) and shrubs (*B. halimifolia*, *L. peruviana*, *M. cerifera*). Ten of the 25 shrub sites contained *S. lancifolia* but none contained *P. cordata*. Obligate and facultative wetland species comprised a mean of 37.1% ± 4.0% of plant cover and had relative frequency of 56.3% ± 3.3% of species composition in the Upland Shrub sites (Figure 8-1). Although all of the shrubs listed in Figure 8-1 are upland or mesophytic species, most of the *M. cerifera* sites are located on semi-buoyant floating mats. These mats, formed of dead *Scirpus cubensis* (Cuban bullrush) and other debris, create boglike substrates that tend to occur in the impounded lower sections of pools (Pierce et al. 1982).

Vegetation and Elevation

In Table 8-4, the vegetation plots are ordered by mean elevation of baseline vegetation groups (stratified by pool). Plots are sorted in the order of (from lowest to highest elevations) (1) Broadleaf Marsh, (2) Wet Prairie, (3) Upland Shrub, and (4) Upland Herbaceous communities.

Table 8-4. Baseline vegetation plots in ascending order of mean elevation (feet, NGVD29), (stratified by pool).

Pool	Baseline vegetation	Mean elevation	SE	Range	n
A	Broadleaf Marsh	46.3	0.03	46.3 - 46.4	3
	Upland Shrub	47.4	0.19	46.6 - 48.0	6
	Upland Herbaceous (pasture)	49.0	0.18	48 - 50.1	15
C	Miscellaneous Wetland	31.8	0.00	31.8 - 31.8	1
	Broadleaf Marsh	34.7	0.47	33.8 - 35.6	4
	Wet Prairie	34.9	0.44	33.6 - 35.5	4
	Upland Shrub	34.9	0.37	31.8 - 37.0	19
	Upland Herbaceous (pasture)	37.7	0.34	35.4 - 41.4	26

Reference Data Results

Pre-channelization Community Structure and Composition

Toth's (unpublished) estimates of pre-channelization reference conditions included mean quadrat percentage composition of obligate and facultative wetland species for eight Broadleaf Marsh and eight Wet Prairie transect samples collected in reference locations in Pools A and B from 1988–1997. Sample means of obligate and facultative wetland species were 98.4% ± 0.3% for Broadleaf Marsh and 93.0% ± 1.7% for Wet Prairie. The mean percentage of obligate and facultative wetland species in reference Broadleaf Marshes was significantly higher than in reference Wet Prairie (t-test, *P* = 0.008).

Common species from Toth's data are similar to those reported for the baseline period. Broadleaf Marshes in the reference data included *S. lancifolia*, *P. cordata*, *P. hemitomon*, *L. hexandra*, *Sacciolepis striata*, *Alternanthera philoxeroides*, *Nuphar lutea* (spatterdock), *Polygonum punctatum*, *B. caroliniana*, *H. umbellata*, *C. occidentalis* and *Ludwigia peruviana*. For Wet Prairie, Toth listed *P. hemitomon*, *L. hexandra*, *L. fluitans*, *A. philoxeroides*, *B. caroliniana*, *B. monnieri*, *Centella asiatica*, *Diodea virginiana*, *Hydrocotyle umbellata*, *Polygonum punctatum*, and several species of Cyperaceae (*Carex*, *Cyperus*, *Eleocharis*, *Fimbristylis*, *Juncus*, *Rhynchospora* and *Scleria* species). Species richness in Broadleaf Marshes and Wet Prairies in the reference data were 39.9 ± 4.1 species and 61.5 ± 4.8 species, respectively. Richness in Wet Prairie was significantly higher than in Broadleaf Marsh in the reference data (t-test *P* = 0.002).

Comparisons with Baseline Conditions

Mean percentage of obligate and facultative wetland species was significantly higher in the reference data than in the baseline data both for Broadleaf Marshes (t-test, $P = 0.010$) and Wet Prairies (t-test, $P = 0.020$) (Figure 8-2). Species richness in both Broadleaf Marsh and Wet Prairie were significantly higher in the reference data than in the baseline data (t-tests, $P = 0.002$ and $P < 0.001$, respectively) (Figure 8-3). However, direct comparisons between the baseline and reference data may be misleading because of differences in baseline and reference data collection methods.

DISCUSSION

Baseline period sample sizes were small for Broadleaf Marsh and Wet Prairie, but Table 8-4 suggests that community elevational distributions in the baseline data correspond with known relationships and responses of wetland plant communities to inundation. Vegetation distributions on river floodplains are a function of spatial and temporal variation in the distribution, depth, and duration of water (Blom et al. 1990, Lowe 1986). In floodplain habitats, stage, floodplain topography and slope, and temporal/seasonal variation in water levels all affect which species can establish and persist (Blom et al. 1990, Lowe 1986, Welcomme 1979). Broadleaf Marsh (or flag marsh, Kushlan 1990) requires extended, near-permanent inundation. Marshes of this kind are classified in Anderson et al. (1998) as semipermanently flooded (“surface water persists throughout growing season in most years, except during periods of drought; soil surface is normally saturated when water level drops below soil surface”). The Anderson et al. (1998) category includes Cowardin et al.’s (1979) water regime modifiers “Intermittently Exposed” and “Semipermanently Flooded”. According to Kushlan (1990), broadleaf marshes require hydroperiods greater than $200 \text{ d}\cdot\text{yr}^{-1}$ and wet season water depths between 0.3 m and 1 m; however, despite this dependence on flooding, they also require seasonal drying (Kushlan 1990). “Flag” species (*P. cordata* and *S. lancifolia*) communities and *P. hemitomom* marshes (considered to grade into Wet Prairie by Bousquin and Carnal 2005) tend to become less common where seasonal drawdowns are eliminated (Kushlan 1990).

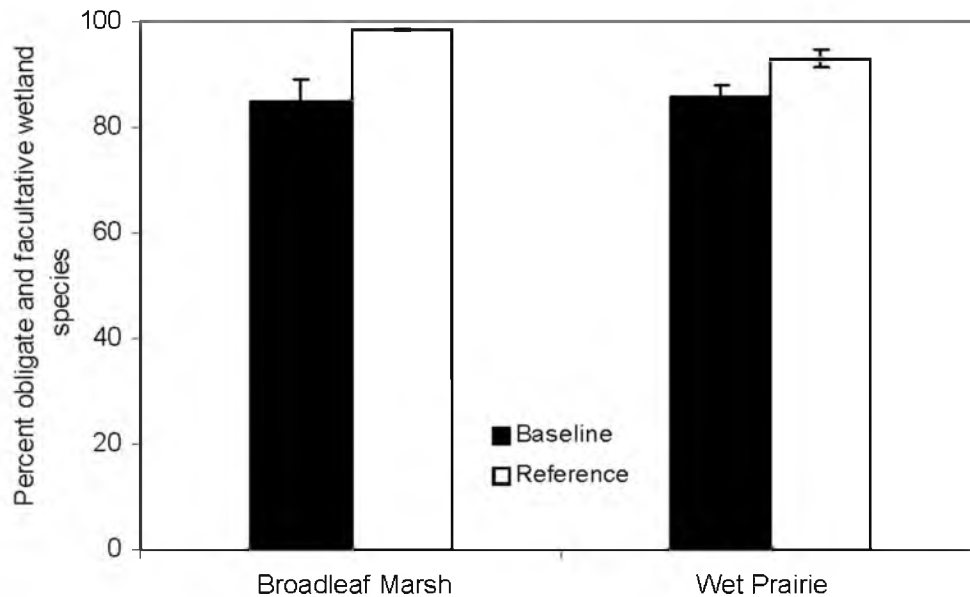


Figure 8-2. Relative frequency of obligate wetland and facultative wetland species in the baseline and reference data.

Wet Prairies have shorter hydroperiods than Broadleaf Marshes, with estimates ranging from $50\text{--}100 \text{ d}\cdot\text{yr}^{-1}$ year (Kushlan 1990) to $180\text{--}330 \text{ d}\cdot\text{yr}^{-1}$ for *P. hemitomom*-dominated marshes (Anderson et al. 1998)

and tend to occur between the elevations of deeper marshes and surrounding uplands. Wet Prairies are adapted to fire and may be dependant on burning to inhibit invasion by shrub species (Wade et al. 1980).

Although precise information on the spatial and temporal distribution of water depths prior to or following channelization of the Kissimmee is not available, there is no doubt that water was present at greater depths over larger areas, and for longer periods of time, prior to channelization. Anderson (2005, this volume) shows that stages had a greater range and that high stages occurred with greater frequency prior to channelization than after channelization. Toth (1995) compared elevations in two 1 mi² areas of floodplain with pre-channelization stage data to estimate frequencies of areal inundation (Toth 1995); these estimates suggest that most of the area studied was flooded most of the time prior to channelization, with maximum water depths ranging from 0.3–0.7 meters (Koebel 1995). Finally, changes in the distribution of plant communities (Carnal and Bousquin 2005) considered with these changes in hydrology are a strong indication that alterations in community distributions after channelization were in response to changed floodplain inundation patterns. This change in inundation involved less extensive inundation, but also less variation in the levels and distribution of water (Anderson 2005).

As mentioned above, baseline period Wet Prairie and Broadleaf Marshes had not separated well in the cluster analysis (Figure 8-1 in Bousquin and Carnal 2005, this volume) due to overlap in species composition, often with respect to *Panicum hemitomon* (maidencane) (Appendix 8-1A), which is characteristic of both marsh types and is used in Bousquin and Carnal (2005) to distinguish Broadleaf Marsh from Wet Prairie. Percentages of obligate and facultative wetland species were similar in baseline Broadleaf Marsh and Wet Prairie communities, contrasted with significantly higher percentages of obligate and facultative wetland species in reference Broadleaf Marshes than in reference Wet Prairies. That is, baseline-data Wet Prairies were more similar to baseline Broadleaf Marsh than Wet Prairies were to Broadleaf Marsh in the reference data, and had fewer upland-adapted or facultative species relative to baseline Broadleaf Marsh (Figure 8-2), likely as a result of less varied inundation regimes. This conclusion is consistent with Anderson's (2005) results of comparisons of baseline and pre-channelization hydrology.

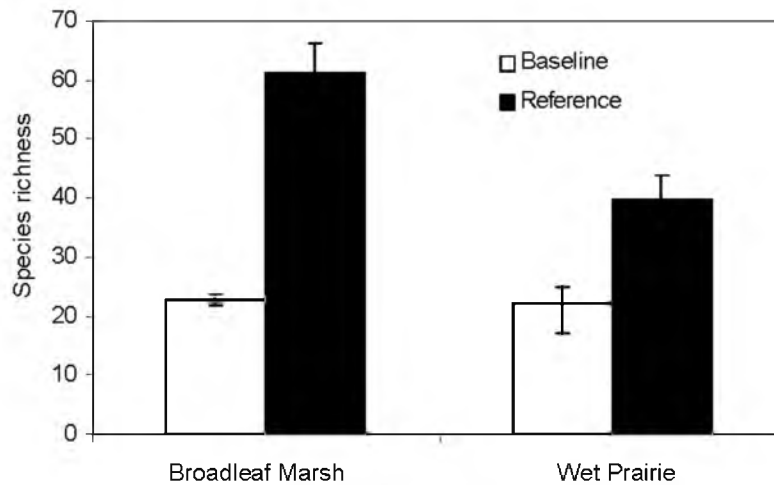


Figure 8-3. Species richness in the baseline and reference data.

The distribution of wetland plant communities has clearly changed since channelization (Carnal and Bousquin 2005). The results of the cluster analysis of the baseline data in Bousquin and Carnal (2005), and the difficulty of discriminating Broadleaf Marsh and Wet Prairie manually, suggest that, following channelization, the composition of communities dominated by Wet Prairie indicator species also changed — and to some extent converged with Broadleaf Marsh — making these types less distinct as identifiable assemblages of species than they were prior to channelization. Intermediate communities like these have likely always existed where these marsh types overlap, but the fact that few clear examples of either type occurred in the baseline data is notable. Lower species richness in baseline communities than in reference communities, particularly in Wet Prairie (Figure 8-3), also suggests that a complement of species was lost. These results are consistent with findings that areas with less varied flooding regimes tend to have lower

CHAPTER 8 FLOODPLAIN VEGETATION

plant species richness than wetland habitats exposed to periodic drying (Gerritsen and Greening 1989, Mitsch and Gosselink 1986, Keddy and Reznicek 1986, Conner et al. 1981).

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The author gratefully acknowledges the work of Lou Toth, who designed and initiated this study, collected the data presented here, and produced the internal documents on which much of this chapter was based.

LITERATURE CITED

- Anderson, D. H., and J. R. Chamberlain. 2005. Impacts of channelization on the Hydrology of the Kissimmee River, Florida. Chapter 2 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Anderson, M., P. Bourgeron, M. T. Bryer, R. Crawford, L. Engelking, D. Faber-Langendoen, M. Gallyoun, K. Goodin, D. H. Grossman, S. Landaal, K. Metzler, K. D. Patterson, M. Pyne, M. Reid, L. Sneddon, and A. S. Weakley. 1998. International classification of ecological communities: terrestrial vegetation of the United States. Volume II. The National Vegetation Classification System: list of types. The Nature Conservancy, Arlington, Virginia, USA.
- Blom, C. W. P. M., G. M. Bogemann, P. Laan, A. J. M. van der Sman, H. M. van der Steeg, and C. J. Voeselek. 1990. Adaptations to flooding in plants from river areas. *Aquatic Botany* 38:29-47.
- Bousquin, S. G., and L. L. Carnal. 2005. Classification of the vegetation of the Kissimmee River and floodplain. Chapter 9 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Carnal, L. L., and S. G. Bousquin. 2005. Areal coverage of floodplain plant communities in Pool C of the channelized Kissimmee River. Chapter 10 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Conner, W. H., J. G. Gosselink, and R. T. Parrondo. 1981. Comparison of the vegetation of three Louisiana swamp sites with different flooding regimes. *American Journal of Botany* 68:320-33.
- Cowardin, L. M., V. Carter, F. C. Golet, and E. T. LaRoe. 1979. Classification of wetlands and deepwater habitats of the United States. Office of Biological Services, Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D. C., USA.
- Daubenmire, R. 1959. A canopy coverage method of vegetational analysis. *Northwest Science* 33:42-64.
- de Boer, Th. A. 1982. Vegetation as an indicator of environmental change. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment* 3:375-380.
- Gerritsen, J., and H. S. Greening. 1989. Marsh seed banks of the Okeefenokee swamp: effect of hydrologic regime and nutrients. *Ecology* 70:750-763.
- Glenn, J. L. 2005. Status of fish assemblages of the Kissimmee River prior to restoration. Chapter 13 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Keddy, P. A., and A. A. Reznicek. 1986. Great Lakes vegetation dynamics: the role of fluctuating water levels and buried seeds. *Journal of Great Lakes Research* 12:25-36.
- Koebel, J. W. 1995. An historical perspective on the Kissimmee River Restoration Project. *Restoration Ecology* 3:149-159.
- Koebel, J. W., D. H. Anderson, and L. M. Rojas. 2005a. Aquatic invertebrate community structure and functional characteristics in the Kissimmee River Floodplain ecosystem: baseline and reference conditions and expectations for restoration. Chapter 11 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Koebel, J. W., J. L. Glenn, and R. H. Carroll. 2005b. Amphibian and reptile communities of the lower Kissimmee River basin prior to restoration: baseline and reference conditions and expectations for

CHAPTER 8 FLOODPLAIN VEGETATION

- restoration. Chapter 12 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Kushlan, J. A. 1990. Freshwater marshes. R. L. Myers, and J. J. Ewel, editors. Ecosystems of Florida. University of Central Florida Press, Orlando, Florida, USA.
- Lowe, E. F. 1986. The relationship between hydrology and vegetational pattern within the floodplain marsh of a subtropical, Florida lake. *Florida Scientist* 49:213-233.
- Milleson, J. F., R. L. Goodrick, and J. A. Van Arman. 1980. Plant communities of the Kissimmee River Valley. Technical Publication 80-7. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Mitsch, W. J., and J. G. Gosselink. 1986. Wetlands. Van Nostrand Reinhold Company, New York, New York, USA.
- Pierce, G. J., A. B. Amerson, and L. R. Becker. 1982. Final report: pre-1960 floodplain vegetation of the lower Kissimmee River Valley, Florida. Biological Services Report 82-3. U. S. Army Corps of Engineers, Jacksonville, Florida, USA.
- Shuman, C. S., and R. F. Ambrose. 2003. A comparison of remote sensing and ground-based methods for monitoring wetland restoration success. *Restoration Ecology* 11:325-333.
- Smart, S. M. 2000. Ecological assessment of vegetation from a nature reserve using regional reference data and indicator scores. *Biodiversity and Conservation* 9:811-832.
- Toth, L. A., D. A. Arrington, M. A. Brady, and D. A. Muszick. 1995. Conceptual evaluation of factors potentially affecting restoration of habitat structure within the channelized Kissimmee River ecosystem. *Restoration Ecology* 3:160-180.
- U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1988. National list of vascular plant species that occur in wetlands. U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report 88(24). National Wetlands Inventory, U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Jacksonville, Florida, USA.
- Wade, D., J. Ewel, and R. Hofstetter. 1980. Fire in south Florida ecosystems. General Technical Report SE-17. USDA Forest Service, Southern Research Station, Asheville, North Carolina, USA.
- Williams, G. E., and S. L. Melvin. 2005. Studies of bird assemblages and federally-listed bird species of the channelized Kissimmee River, Florida. Chapter 14 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Welcomme, R. 1979. Fisheries ecology of floodplain rivers. Longman Group Ltd., London, UK.



CHAPTER 9

CLASSIFICATION OF THE VEGETATION OF THE KISSIMMEE RIVER AND FLOODPLAIN

Stephen G. Bousquin and Laura L. Carnal

*Kissimmee Division, Watershed Management Department, South Florida Water Management District,
West Palm Beach, FL 33406*

ABSTRACT: The Kissimmee River Restoration Evaluation Program (KRREP) Baseline Vegetation Classification was developed to characterize plant assemblages that occur in the Kissimmee River, its floodplain, and included uplands. The classification provides definitions and decision rules to facilitate consistent and repeatable description of vegetation at several scales of resolution by photointerpreters and field data collectors. The classification was developed using photointerpretation of 1996 Pool C aerial photography, two previous classifications of the Kissimmee River area that were developed prior to and immediately following channelization, and field data. This document focuses on the background of the classification, definitions of vegetation categories, methods used to derive the categories, decision rules for their application to vegetation data, and linkages with previous classifications of the Kissimmee River area. A partial assessment of the classification as applied to field vegetation data also is presented.

INTRODUCTION

The Kissimmee River Restoration Evaluation program (KRREP) Vegetation Classification System provides definitions and decision rules to facilitate consistent, repeatable descriptions of river and floodplain plant assemblages for use by photointerpreters and field data collectors during the course of the KRREP. Because groups of species with similar habitat requirements tend to co-occur and recur across the landscape, an appropriate level of detail for classification categories can be determined for the specific objectives of a management, monitoring, or ecological research project or study. This report will focus on descriptions and definitions of vegetation types, methods that were used to derive the categories, decision rules for their application to vegetation data, and linkage of the classification with previous classifications that have been used in the KRREP. An assessment of the classification as applied to field data also will be presented.

Although previous classification systems existed to describe the Kissimmee River and its floodplain, the channelization of the river by the construction of the C-38 canal and the initiation of a major restoration project on the river necessitated a new vegetation classification better-suited to post-channelization conditions than the previous systems. This need was based on three primary considerations. First, much of the gradient and seral vegetation found in post-channelization conditions was not defined in the previous classifications, either because it was not present under pre-channelization and early post-channelization conditions, or was not captured at the scale of delineation used by these mapping projects. Second,

CHAPTER 9 VEGETATION CLASSIFICATION

KRREP staff wanted to classify photointerpretation data at a more detailed level than would be possible using the previous classifications, to retain the option of tracking vegetation change at as fine a scale as was possible using photointerpretation. Third, aquatic vegetation was not well-represented in the previous classifications.

Objectives

The objective of the classification is to characterize vegetation that occurs in the Kissimmee River, its floodplain, and included uplands during baseline (post-channelization, pre-restoration) conditions. This is accomplished by synthesis of species-level data into ecological categories at several levels of resolution intended to meet the needs of KRREP vegetation mapping, data analysis, and other data collection and analysis efforts.

Previous Vegetation Classifications of the Kissimmee River and Floodplain

Pre-existing Classifications

Pierce et al. (1982) used 1952-1954 aerial photography to map pre-channelization vegetation on the Kissimmee River floodplain. Their mapping categories were based on a previous classification developed for early post-channelization conditions by Milleson et al. (1980). Categories of these classifications are shown in Tables 9-1 and 9-2.

Table 9-1. Categories of the Milleson et al. (1980) classification.

Agriculture and Urban	Improved Pasture
	Unimproved Pasture
	Citrus
	Urban
Terrestrial Forested	Oak and Cabbage Palm
	Wax Myrtle
	Woody Shrub
Wetland Forested	Willows (In Floodplain)
	Willows (In Spoil Areas)
	Hardwood Trees
	Cypress
Marsh	Broadleaf Marsh
	Maidencane Wet Prairie
	Rhynchospora Wet Prairie
	Aquatic Grasses
	Buttonbush
	Primrose Willow
	Floating Tussocks
	Switchgrass
	Soft Rush Ponds
	Sawgrass
St. Johns Wort	
Spoil and Barren	Spoil
	Vegetated Spoil
	Levees
Open Water	C-38 Kissimmee River

CHAPTER 9 VEGETATION CLASSIFICATION

Both classifications used dominant physiognomy (tree, shrub, or herbaceous) and descriptions of habitat of communities (e.g., wetland) to delineate upper hierarchical categories. Both also used dominant and associated species to define and distinguish vegetation categories. Although the term “dominance” was not explicitly defined in either document, the term was used in community descriptions, and Pierce et al. established a cutoff of 30% overstory cover to distinguish shrub and forest from herbaceous categories; however, Milleson et al. did not do so explicitly. Other than this physiognomic-level rule in Pierce et al., quantitative decision rules to distinguish vegetation categories were not stated in either classification.

Vegetation categories in both classifications were usually named for scientific or common names of dominant or prominent species, e.g., “buttonbush” for *Cephalanthus occidentalis*-dominated marshes, although some categories were named with descriptive, vernacular terms for general types of vegetation (e.g., “Broadleaf Marsh”) or for topographic features that tend to contain distinctive vegetation (e.g., “wet depression”).

Table 9-2. Categories of the Pierce et al. (1982) classification.

Category		Code
Human Influenced	Improved Pasture	PI
	Unimproved Pasure	PU
	Cultivated (in use)	CU
	Cultivated (abandoned)	CA
	Artificial Pond	AP
	Spoil	SP
	Canal	CN
	State Road	SR
Native Upland	Oak/Cabbage Palm	OK
	Pine Forest	PP
	Palmetto Prairie	PM
	Woody Shrub	WD
Forested Wetland	Cypress Forest	CY
	Wetland Hardwood	MP
Wetland Shrub	St. Johns Wort	SJ
	Willow	WI
	Buttonbush	BB
Emergent Wetland	Broadleaf Marsh	PS
	Wet Prairie	WP
	Maidencane Wet Prairie	MC
	Rhynchospora Wet Prairie	RH
	Sawgrass	CL
	Switchgrass	SW
	Mixed Aquatic Grass	TG
	Wet Depression	DW
Aquatic	Floating Mat	FM
	Floating Tussock	TS
	Kissimmee River	KR
	Oxbow	OX
	Open Water	OW
Miscellaneous	Natural Levee	LR
	Unknown-Submerged	US
	Unknown-Poor Quality Photograph	UN

The Initial KRREP Baseline Vegetation Classification

During 1996-1999, Pool C vegetation was mapped using photointerpretation of 1996 aerial photography of Pool C. Categories applied to map polygons were from an initial classification based on species lists. The species lists included species present with greater than 10% cover in photointerpreted polygons. These lists were structured as a 2-level vegetation classification system (Table 9-3) in which the species lists and their assigned codes (the finest level of the system) were grouped under categories that defined various combinations of species life forms, e.g., the category “Woody Shrub and Trees” (Table 9-3, Category L). Photointerpretation was conducted with a minimum mapping unit (MMU) of 100 m² (i.e., for mapping purposes, the smallest areas delineated as polygons and assigned discrete vegetation categories were 100 m² or approximately 0.03 acre). Detailed information on the photointerpretation and mapping methods used in the mapping project can be found in Carnal and Bousquin 2005.

The initial classification became unwieldy as species combinations accumulated, ultimately resulting in over 650 discrete categories at its finest level, each of which consisted of a unique combination of species. The system lacked an intermediate level of classification comparable to the vegetation categories used in Pierce et al. (1982), and because its lowest level consisted of species lists with no abundance information, species and overstory dominance could not be determined, preventing linkage with the Pierce et al. classification. The initial classification served the purpose of providing a temporary means to record and summarize photointerpreted species data, but it was retired and replaced in 1999 by the new classification that is the focus of this chapter.

METHODS**Criteria for a New KRREP Baseline Vegetation Classification**

The new KRREP baseline vegetation classification was designed to meet the following criteria:

- (a) Where possible, it should use categories that could be linked with the pre-channelization classification of Pierce et al. (1982) and the post-channelization classification of Milleson et al (1980).
- (b) It should have a hierarchical structure that allows for physiognomic distinctions among plant communities, a basic requirement for linkage with the previous classifications; and allow flexibility for users in choice of resolution.
- (c) It should define new vegetation categories where necessary for previously undescribed types of vegetation and should be adaptable to ongoing change.
- (d) It should be usable with quantitative decision rules to enhance repeatability among users making classification decisions.
- (e) It should retain the level of species detail available from existing KRREP photointerpretation data.

Development of the New Baseline Vegetation Classification

Because the lower level of the initial KRREP baseline classification provided species-presence data for species with greater than 10% cover, we were able to produce presence-absence data tables for most Pool C polygons. Photointerpretation was then used to estimate cover of the previously-recorded species, which was needed to determine dominant physiognomy and dominant species for linkage with the previous classifications.

A set of provisional vegetation categories and decision rules was extrapolated from the classifications of Milleson et al. (1980) and Pierce et al. (1982). The provisional classification initiated our use of decision rules based on overstory cover as a means of distinguishing physiognomic categories, and explicit use of dominance (in some cases cover ranges) of characteristic species to distinguish vegetation categories. Although new names were attached to the provisional categories, all were either best-judgment

replications of Pierce et al. or Milleson et al. categories, or new categories that we believed would be needed for representation of baseline plant communities.

As photointerpreted cover data were collected for Pool C, provisional community types were assigned to map polygons. In some cases, existing vegetation was adequately described by the provisional categories and decision rules; in these cases, decisions were straightforward and the provisional categories and decision rules were accepted. Category definitions and distinctions were refined in vegetation team meetings, which addressed problems associated with use of the classification, including those encountered by the photointerpreter in applying the provisional decision rules to current vegetation data. Team classification discussions focused on desired levels of classification detail for mapping, potential for evaluation of vegetation change, description of previously undescribed vegetation, and linkage issues with the previous classifications.

Decisions to adjust the level of detail in the new classification occasionally involved splitting provisional categories to describe gradient, seral, or transitional vegetation. For example, the provisional Broadleaf Marsh category was split into several community types to allow description of vegetation intermediate between Broadleaf Marsh and *Panicum hemitomom* (maidencane) Wet Prairie (*Panicum hemitomom* Herbaceous Vegetation, H.PH), between Broadleaf Marsh and *Cephalanthus occidentalis* (buttonbush) communities (*Cephalanthus occidentalis* shrubland, S.CO), and among these three types. That split resulted in the community types H.PS-PH, H.PS-CO, and H.PS-PH-CO (Appendix 9-1A). New community types were defined as necessary to accommodate baseline and existing floodplain vegetation. For example, a new category was needed to describe *Myrica cerifera* (wax myrtle)-dominated shrublands that occur on floating mat vegetation, because of their prominence in the lower areas of pools in the baseline-period floodplain (*Myrica cerifera* Floating Mat Shrubland, S.MCF).

Linkage with Previous Classifications

A basic goal of the baseline classification is to achieve accurate linkage with the pre-channelization vegetation map of Pierce et al. (1982), which was used to estimate reference vegetation coverage and distribution in the pre-channelization floodplain. The need to characterize vegetation change since early post-channelization conditions also made linkage with the Milleson et al. map important.

Linkage with the previous classifications was not straightforward for two reasons. First, current vegetation patterns have resulted from modification of seasonal flooding over the floodplain and elimination of flow through river channels. Channelization resulted in establishment of communities that were not present in the pre-channelization floodplain, including large areas of previously undescribed transitional and possibly successional communities. Second, because the previous classifications were designed for descriptive use, not for tracking vegetation change, vegetation types were not always clearly defined in either classification, objective decision rules were not provided, and aerial photography signatures were not cataloged; thus, procedures to enhance repeatability among users had not been established.

Although these limitations made linkage of current vegetation with previous classifications difficult, we believe that accurate linkage with the Pierce et al. categories has been maintained, particularly for the most important community types (those that cover large areas and those being used as indicators of restoration success; see Carnal and Bousquin 2005 for communities of particular interest and their expected responses to restoration). Linkage was achieved by careful review of the information available in both previous classifications, personal communication with one author (Gary Pierce), and in some cases by judicious use of assumptions based on Kissimmee staff knowledge of floodplain vegetation.

Although linkage with the previous classifications was difficult, it is unlikely that direct use of either of the previous classifications would have ameliorated problems. Because of their definition vagaries and lack of decision rules, use of the previous classifications would probably be no more accurate than linking them with the new classification developed specifically for baseline conditions.

Assessment Methods: Classification of the Vegplots Data Set

Classification Assessment

Vegetation classification is a task in which discrete categories are imposed on a frequently continuous gradient of species composition; it is uncommon to encounter communities that are unique in species

composition. When one or few distinguishing characteristics of communities, such as dominance of a selected species, are used in classification decision rules, questions may arise as to whether distinct communities have been defined, or if some rules merely make unnecessary distinctions between communities that are very similar in species composition but have different dominant species.

Because the goals and applications of classifications vary, whether these issues are important relates more to the purpose of the classification than to its internal validity. Some degree of overlap among vegetation categories will occur in any classification of complex, real-world vegetation data. Although overlap among categories does not intrinsically detract from the utility of a classification, excessive overlap may suggest arbitrarily defined categories that have little ecological meaning. Use of overlapping categories with large data sets can result in poor classification decisions among categories, resulting in “blurring” of categories. When estimates of quantitative values are to be derived from a map based on the classification (e.g., estimates of the area of wetland types in Carnal and Bousquin 2005), results can be affected. Developers and users of the classification should be cognizant of the extent of overlap among categories when a classification is applied to quantitative vegetation data. To address this issue, we used multivariate analysis (cluster analysis) on *a priori*-classified field data set to assess the degree to which distinct groupings of similar communities were predicted by the classification.

For assessment of the classification, a cluster analysis was applied to vegetation data collected in 1998 in Pools A and C by South Florida Water Management District staff (Toth, unpublished summer 1998 “vegplot” data). The data set consists of cover class (Daubenmire 1959) data for all species present in eighty-four 5 m x 20 m plots located in floodplain communities ranging from wetland (Wet Prairie, Broadleaf Marsh) to upland types (pastures, shrub communities).

Each plot was classified using Appendix 9-1A and coded accordingly (Table 9-4). A cluster analysis (using a Euclidian distance measure with Ward’s group linkage method) was performed on the data set. Cluster analysis can separate sample data based on measured variables, and is used here to define groups of sample units based on similarities in species composition. Cluster analysis constructs hierarchical groupings based on a similarity matrix by successively grouping similar sample units and resulting clusters. The result is a tree diagram (dendrogram) that shows clusters of plots within which more similarity exists among members than to members of other clusters.

Regional and National Classifications

The hierarchical structure and naming conventions of the classification presented here are modeled loosely on the National Vegetation Classification System (NVCS) (Anderson et al. 1998, Grossman et al. 1998).

The NVCS is used for vegetation mapping by the National Park Service and The Nature Conservancy (TNC), among others. Although most Kissimmee vegetation was poorly described by existing categories of the NVCS, it is anticipated that linkage with this national effort ultimately will be achieved by providing our vegetation data and classification documents to TNC for delineation of new types in the NVCS.

RESULTS

The Classification System

The baseline classification is presented in Appendix 9-1A, the *Key to Bcode Groups and Community Types*, which consists of decision rules in the form of a dichotomous key for determination of community types from species data. The classification and key are arranged hierarchically (Table 9-5).

The status categories group communities by characteristic habitat, e.g., upland, wetland, or aquatic. Physiognomic categories describe the general appearance of communities as forest, shrubland, or herbaceous. Community types (abbreviated as Bcodes), are the finest level of the classification, capturing particular communities as distinguished by dominant species. As demonstrated below in the classification assessment, communities dominated by the same species tend to be similar in species composition. Bcode Groups are groupings of community types into ecologically meaningful categories (for example, Wetland Forest or Broadleaf Marsh), at a hierarchical level between community type and Physiognomy. Bcode Groups will be used for more generalized vegetation mapping products than the community type level.

CHAPTER 9 VEGETATION CLASSIFICATION

Community types are usually named for the dominant species. In cases when two or more species are used to define communities, species names are separated by hyphens in the community type name. Hyphens used in this way indicate a community type that is intermediate between two more distinct community types, e.g. *Pontederia cordata-Sagittaria lancifolia-Panicum hemitomom* Herbaceous Vegetation (H.PS-PH). When a second species may or may not be present, the second species is enclosed in parentheses (e.g., *Quercus virginiana* (-*Sabal palmetto*) Forest). Community type abbreviations (Bcodes) are derived from the community type names and are preceded by a physiognomic designator (F. = forest, S. = shrub, H. = herbaceous, V. = vine). For example, the Bcode H.PS is a herbaceous community. “Miscellaneous” community types (indicated by “Mx” in the classification) were initially used for species combinations that occurred infrequently or that did not clearly fall into previously established community types. Although some of these (e.g., Miscellaneous Upland Shrubland, S.MxUS) have emerged as distinct community types, these designations initially provided holding categories for mapping data until final classification decisions could be made.

Table 9-3. Excerpted portions of the prior (initial) Kissimmee River Restoration Evaluation Program vegetation classification showing species lists associated with each code. Codes shown are not sequential because rows are sorted by the first and second species listed in order to clarify relationships among codes. Species codes are referenced in Appendix 9-4A.

Category	Code	Species1	Species2	Species3	Species4	Species5	Species6	Species7
C. Floating Aquatics, Submergents, Emergents	C11	SC05	HU01	MA01	AP01			
	C12	SC05	HU01	MA01	AP01	PL99		
	C13	SC05	HU01	MU01	XFERNS			
	C5	SC05	HU01	CD01				
J. Grasses and Sedges	J66	PH01	CA05	CP99	CX99	LF01	PR01	
	J26	PH01	CP99	LF01	RN99	PR01		
	J70	PH01	RN99	CP99	EL99			
	J73	PH01	RN99	CP99	PG05			
	J32	PH01	SS01					
	J1	PH01						
	J10	PN01	CP99	SI02				
	J14	PN01	CP99	SI02	AV01			
	J16	PN01	CP99	RN99				
	J55	PN01	CP99	ST99	RN99	RN99		
	J60	PN01	CP99	LF01	RN99			
	J7	PN01	CP99					
	J72	PN01	CP99	AF01	RN99			
	J9	PN01	CP99	AF01				
	J17	PN01	JE01					
	J18	PN01	JE01	PH01				
	J19	PN01	JE01	SI02	PH01			
	J33	PN01	JE01	SB01				
	L. Woody Shrub and Trees	L100	AR01	MC01	DV05	QV01		
L114		AR01	MC01	SC01	ST01	LP01	SC15	
L115		AR01	MC01	SC01	ST01			
L120		AR01	MC01	LP01				
L125		AR01	MC01	SC01				
L72		AR01	MC01	DV05				
L83		AR01	MC01	SP01				
L99		AR01	MC01	PP04	ST01	SC15	XVINES	SC01
L121		AR01	MV01	SC01				
L105		MC01	AR01					
L111		MC01	AR01	LP01	SC01	SC15		
L129		MC01	AR01	TD01				
L130		MC01	AR01	PP04	XVINES			
L112		MC01	BH01	CO01	SC01	LP01		
L34		MC01	BH01					
L68		MC01	DV05					
L76		MC01	DV05	SC01	LP01	AR01		
L104		MC01	LP01	BH01				
L35		MC01	LP01					
L75	MC01	LP01	DV05	ST01				
L78	MC01	PG01						
L90	MC01	PG01	SC01					
L93	MC01	PG01	ST01	LP01	XVINES			
L1	MC01							

CHAPTER 9 VEGETATION CLASSIFICATION

Quantitative statements of cover criteria are used as a means to facilitate repeatability in classification decisions among different data collectors working at different stages of the restoration project. Cover estimates are used in the Key in three ways. First, distinctions between physiognomic categories are based on 30% overstory cover. Second, most community types are defined by dominant species (defined here as the species with the highest cover, either overall or with respect to its physiognomic group if the group is dominant). Finally, some community types are defined by specified cover values or ranges of cover values.

Table 9-4. Key to the *a priori* classification of vegetation plot data. Based on the *Key to Bcode Groups and Community Types* (Appendix 9-1A).

bcode	CODE	Community Type	Bcode Group	N
H.AF	1	<i>Axonopus fissifolius</i> herbaceous vegetation	Upland Herbaceous Bcode Group	9
H.LF	2	<i>Isziola frutans</i> herbaceous vegetation	Wet Prairie Bcode Group	1
H.LH	3	<i>Leersia hexandra</i> herbaceous vegetation	Wet Prairie Bcode Group	1
S.MC	4	<i>Myrica cerifera</i> shrubland	Upland Shrub Bcode Group	11
H.CD	5	<i>Cynodon dactylon</i> herbaceous vegetation	Upland Herbaceous Bcode Group	1
H.MxFN	6	Miscellaneous fern-dominated herbaceous vegetation	Miscellaneous Wetland Vegetation Bcode Group	1
S.MxUS	7	Miscellaneous upland shrubland	Upland Shrub Bcode Group	9
H.MxWP	9	Miscellaneous transitional herbaceous wetland vegetation	Wet Prairie Bcode Group	1
H.PH	10	<i>Panicum hemitomon</i> herbaceous vegetation	Wet Prairie Bcode Group	2
H.PN	11	<i>Paspalum notatum</i> herbaceous vegetation	Upland Herbaceous Bcode Group	30
H.PN (sod)	13	<i>Paspalum notatum</i> herbaceous vegetation (former sod farm site)	Upland Herbaceous Bcode Group	6
H.PS-PH	14	<i>Pontederia cordata-Sagittaria lancifolia</i> herbaceous vegetation	Broadleaf Marsh Bcode Group	5

The *Key to Bcode Groups and Community Types* was developed from photointerpreted cover data. Because aerial photography provides an overhead view of vegetation, understory and other covered vegetation are obscured from the photointerpreter’s view, resulting in understory and secondary canopy species cover values that would be biased low compared to their actual absolute cover. This bias would affect classification decisions based on cover values of understory species in communities with an overstory of shrubs or trees. Such cases are rare in the Key, and occur only in some community types that include *Cephalanthus occidentalis* as a dominant. Field-collected species cover data can be used with the *Key* if:

- (a) cover estimates disregard overlap among species (i.e., if only the amount of cover that is exposed to the sky is recorded), or
- (b) absolute cover is recorded for the dominant species or dominant overstory (or vine) species.

Appendix 9-2A provides descriptions of categories of the previous classifications and discussions of linkage issues with the new classification. Appendix 9-3A is a glossary of special terms used in this chapter. Appendix 9-4A is a list of species used in the classification and associated codes. Appendix 9-5A is a table of linkage with the Milleson et al. (1980) and Pierce et al. (1982) classifications.

Assessment Results

The cluster analysis dendrogram is shown in Figure 9-1. Sample units were coded as pppp-xx where p is the plot code (minus the “VP” used in the data collector’s original designation) and x is a numeric code for the assigned community type as given in Table 9-4. Important clusters are labeled A–E. The clustering algorithm used species data exclusively (not the vegetation categories assigned to the site names) for analysis.

The algorithm placed all H.AF sites (*Axonopus fissifolius* Herbaceous Vegetation, code 1) in a single cluster (Figure 9-1, cluster A), indicating that the procedure had little difficulty distinguishing H.AF from other community types. This also was the case for H.PN (*Paspalum notatum* Herbaceous Vegetation, code 11), although C035, an H.AF community, also was placed in this cluster. This site had high cover of *Paspalum notatum* (cover class 3) although the site was dominated by *Axonopus fissifolius* (cover class 4). Plot C180, which was classified as H.CD (*Cynodon dactylon* Herbaceous Vegetation, code 5) also clustered with the *P. notatum* communities. Disregarding dominance, species composition of C180 is similar to the *Paspalum notatum*-dominated pastures. All of these dominant species (*A. fissifolius*, *P. notatum*, and *C. dactylon*) are introduced pasture grasses.

CHAPTER 9 VEGETATION CLASSIFICATION

One plot (C396) classified as H.MxFN (Miscellaneous Fern-Dominated communities, code 6) was placed by the clustering algorithm with H.MC (*Myrica cerifera* shrubland, code 4) sites because of similar species composition (Figure 9-1, cluster D). The fern *Osmunda regalis* is a common understory component of *Myrica cerifera* stands, often with high cover. Although species composition of this plot was similar to the *Myrica* stands, shrub cover was insufficient to classify them as S.MC (less than 30% shrub cover, see Appendix 9-2A). The cluster analysis placed all S.MC plots together in a single cluster (cluster D), and all but one S.MxUS (Miscellaneous Upland Shrubland) plot in a separate cluster (cluster C). The S.MxUS plot (C163) was placed in a cluster adjacent to the other S.MxUS plots (cluster D) otherwise composed of S.MC plots and the fern-dominated plot. Near the boundary between these two dendrogram clusters (clusters C and D), *Myrica cerifera* is present in plots in both clusters; keying of C163 as S.MxUS is due to higher cover of *Baccharis halimifolia* than *Myrica cerifera* (Appendix 9-2A). *Myrica cerifera* occurs in a variety of habitats: uplands, floating mats, and wetland-upland transition areas.

The remaining cluster, labeled B in Figure 9-1, is composed of seven H.PS-PH plots (*Pontederia cordata-Sagittaria lancifolia-Panicum hemitomon* Herbaceous Vegetation, code 14); one H.PH plot (*Panicum hemitomon* Herbaceous Vegetation, code 10); one MxWP (Miscellaneous Transitional Wetland Herbaceous Vegetation, code 9); one H.LH (*Leersia hexandra* Herbaceous Vegetation, code 3 - *L. hexandra* is a native obligate wetland grass); and one H.LF (*Luziola fluitans* Herbaceous Vegetation, code 2, another native obligate wetland grass). In this data set there is overlap in species composition among these five community types. However, these community types are all classified as Wet Prairie types (group WP) with the exception of H.PS-PH, which is a gradient community type transitional between Wet Prairie and Broadleaf Marsh (Appendices 9-1A and 9-5A).

The five community types with the most pronounced overlap in the cluster analysis were closely-related Wet Prairie and transitional community types. Poor discrimination among these types is likely an artifact of small sample sizes in this data set for some types (Table 9-4); however, the relative positions of these communities clearly reflects a gradient in habitat from long-hydroperiod wetland sites (marshes) to upland sites (pastures).

Table 9-5. Hierarchical levels of the Kissimmee River Restoration Evaluation Vegetation Classification System.

Hierarchical level	Function	Example	Example abbreviation	Mapping
Physiognomy	Defines groups of communities based on dominant growth-forms	Herbaceous communities	H	All maps
Status	Defines generalized habitat requirements of groups of plant communities	Wetland habitats	(N/A)	All maps
Bcode Group (Group)	Defines groups of ecologically similar Community Types	Broadleaf Marsh communities	BL M	All maps
Community Type (Bcode)	Defines groups of plant communities with particular species composition. Abbreviation includes physiognomic prefix (H. in example to right)	<i>Pontederia cordata</i> and/or <i>Sagittaria lancifolia</i> herbaceous communities	H.PS	1996 Pool C baseline map only

Mapping and linkage of pasture types with previous classifications is taking place primarily at the higher classification level of Bcode Group (Carnal and Bousquin 2005), so overlap between types is probably not a problem. A fern-dominated site that contained shrubs had insufficient shrub cover to be keyed as a shrub type under the classification. However, because of its similarity in species composition to *Myrica cerifera*-dominated plots, it tended to group with these communities.

The results reveal overall good discrimination by a quantitative method among sample units for most community types included in this analysis. Further, the results suggest that gradients among the habitats supporting these plant communities are accurately reflected in the classification. Our conclusion is that appropriate levels of classification are being used, although in some cases (pasture types), species composition among community types (defined in the key by dominance of a single species) is very similar. In these cases, mapping and area calculations might be more accurate at the higher (lumped) classification level of Bcode Group.

CHAPTER 9 VEGETATION CLASSIFICATION

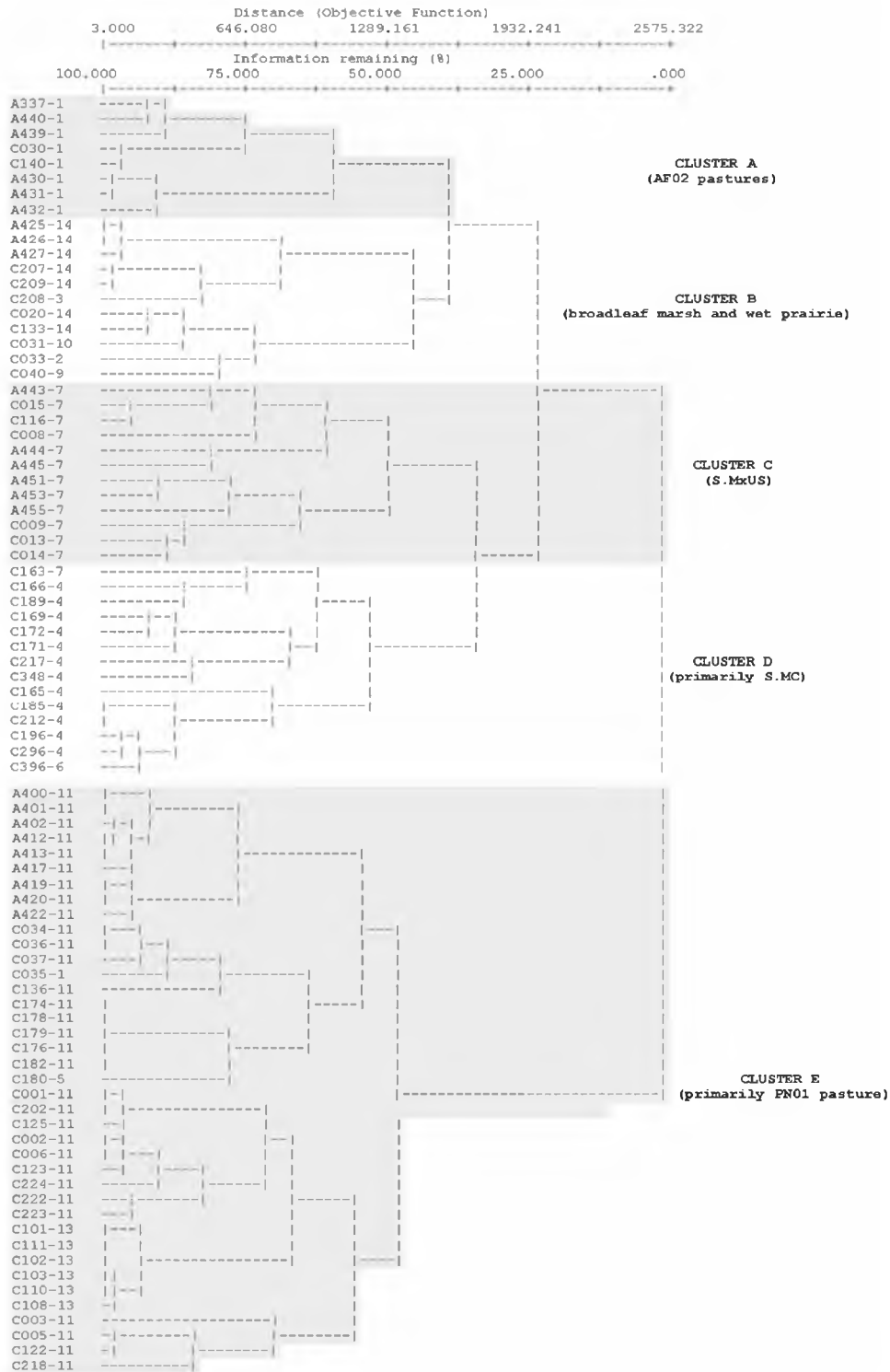


Figure 9-1. Dendrogram for the cluster analysis of 84 floodplain vegetation plots, classified from the *Key to Bcode Groups and Community types* (Appendix 9-1A). The first column gives plot numbers followed by a hyphen and the numeric code (Table 9-4) of the assigned community type. Shaded areas separate natural clusters; however the horizontal extent of shading is a graphical device and has no quantitative meaning.

LITERATURE CITED

- Anderson, M., P. Bourgeron, M. T. Bryer, R. Crawford, L. Engelking, D. Faber-Langendoen, M. Gallyoun, K. Goodin, D. H. Grossman, S. Landaal, K. Metzler, K. D. Patterson, M. Pyne, M. Reid, L. Sneddon, and A. S. Weakley. 1998. International classification of ecological communities: terrestrial vegetation of the United States. Volume II. The National Vegetation Classification System: list of types. The Nature Conservancy, Arlington, Virginia, USA.
- Carnal, L. L., and S. G. Bousquin. 2005. Areal coverage of floodplain plant communities in Pool C of the channelized Kissimmee River. Chapter 10 *in* S. G. Bousquin, D. H. Anderson, G. E. Williams, and D. J. Colangelo, editors. Establishing a baseline: pre-restoration studies of the channelized Kissimmee River. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA. Technical Publication ERA #432.
- Daubenmire, R. 1959. A canopy coverage method of vegetational analysis. *Northwest Science* 33:42-64.
- Grossman, D. H., D. Faber-Langendoen, A. S. Weakley, M. Anderson, P. Bourgeron, R. Crawford, K. Goodin, S. Landaal, K. Metzler, K. D. Patterson, M. Pyne, M. Reid, and L. Sneddon. 1998. International classification of ecological communities: terrestrial vegetation of the United States. Volume I. The National Vegetation Classification System: development, status, and applications. The Nature Conservancy, Arlington, Virginia, USA.
- Milleson, J. F., R. L. Goodrick, and J. A. Van Arman. 1980. Plant communities of the Kissimmee River Valley. Technical Publication 80-7. South Florida Water Management District, West Palm Beach, Florida, USA.
- Pierce, G. J., Amerson, A. B., and L. R. Becker. 1982. Final report: pre-1960 floodplain vegetation of the lower Kissimmee River Valley, Florida. Biological Services Report 82-3. U. S. Army Corps of Engineers. Jacksonville, Florida, USA.



CHAPTER 10

AREAL COVERAGE OF FLOODPLAIN PLANT COMMUNITIES IN POOL C OF THE CHANNELIZED KISSIMMEE RIVER

Laura L. Carnal and Stephen G. Bousquin

*Kissimmee Division, Watershed Management Department, South Florida Water Management District,
West Palm Beach, FL 33406*

ABSTRACT: Three aerial photography-based vegetation maps were compared to describe change in the distribution and areal coverage of major plant communities on the Kissimmee River floodplain before and after channelization of the river. The maps describe vegetation prior to channelization, three years after channelization, and 17 years after channelization, which was immediately prior to restoration Phase I of the Kissimmee River Restoration Project. Prior to channelization, the floodplain was dominated by wetland plant communities, primarily Broadleaf Marsh, Wet Prairie, and Wetland Shrub communities. Construction of canal C-38, completed in 1971, and diversion of channel and overbank flow to the canal, resulted in loss of seasonal inundation of the floodplain and precipitated dramatic reductions in the areal extent of wetland vegetation. Phased restoration of approximately one-third of the Kissimmee River, starting with completion of Phase I restoration in 2001, will backfill sections of C-38 and modify water regulation from the river's headwaters. Restoration is expected to reestablish seasonal inundation of the floodplain and the approximate areal extent of wetland plant communities that occurred prior to channelization.

INTRODUCTION

The pre-channelized Kissimmee River floodplain was dominated by wetland vegetation (over 80% of floodplain vegetation) of three main types: (1) Broadleaf Marshes dominated by *Sagittaria lancifolia* (arrowhead) and *Pontederia cordata* (pickerelweed); (2) Wet Prairie communities dominated by *Panicum hemitomon* (maidencane) or *Rynchospora inundata* (beakrush), or composed of mixtures of wetland grasses, sedges, and forbs; and (3) Wetland Shrub communities dominated by *Salix caroliniana* (willow) or *Cephalanthus occidentalis* (buttonbush). These communities occurred in a mosaic on the floodplain, with their distribution determined by site elevation, water depths, and length of inundation (Bousquin 2005, Toth et al. 1998, Toth et al. 1995). Wetland Shrub and Broadleaf Marsh communities dominated lower elevations that were exposed to prolonged, deep hydroperiods. A number of types of Wet Prairie communities occurred at elevations with shorter and shallower hydroperiods, typically at higher elevations along the floodplain periphery.

Excavation of the C-38 canal cut off the river channel meanders, diverting virtually all flow formerly carried by the river channel and floodplain to the canal, and deposited large amounts of dredged spoil material on the floodplain. Implementation in the river's headwaters of a water regulation schedule

designed primarily for flood protection prevented seasonal inundation of the floodplain. These changes substantially affected many physical and biological components of the floodplain ecosystem. The overall impact of these changes on the extent and distribution of vegetation, and prediction of the future effects of restoration of floodplain inundation, are the topics of this chapter. Restoration is expected to reestablish the approximate spatial distribution and timing of hydroperiods and result in patterns similar to pre-channelization vegetation.

The Kissimmee River Restoration Evaluation Program (KRREP) includes both landscape-scale and ground-based studies of plant communities to monitor and evaluate progress and success of the restoration. Vegetation mapping by photointerpretation of aerial photography is an integral component of the evaluation of ecological responses to restoration.

Objectives

The objectives of this study were to:

- (1) Provide plant community data for Pool C as a baseline for evaluation of future change.
- (2) Describe the impacts of channelization on plant communities by comparing reference (pre-channelization) and post-channelization coverages of plant communities.
- (3) Predict the effects of restored hydrology on floodplain vegetation using pre-channelization data.

METHODS

Available Vegetation Data

This chapter will make use of three vegetation maps of the Kissimmee River and floodplain (Table 10-1). Two of these maps cover the entire length of the river and floodplain from the mouth of the river at Lake Kissimmee to its outlet at Lake Okeechobee. These two maps were developed during the early feasibility and planning stages of the restoration project and have been digitized by KRREP staff to provide GIS coverage of the entire restoration project area and control areas in Pools A–D. The first of these maps was based on pre-channelization (1952–1954) aerial photography (Pierce et al. 1982) and is referred to as the reference pre-channelization or 1954 vegetation map; the other is based on early-post channelization (1973–1974) photography (Milleson et al. 1980) and is referred to as the early post-channelization or 1974 vegetation map. A third map based on 1996 aerial photography of Pool C was produced by KRREP staff to establish a baseline for comparison with future vegetation mapping. This most recent map is called the Pool C baseline or 1996 vegetation map.

Together, the three maps provide a timeline of vegetation change in Pool C, showing river and floodplain vegetation 17 years prior to channelization, three years after channelization, and 25 years after channelization, just prior to the 1999 restoration activities that restored flow and inundation to much of Pool C.

Classification of Vegetation

Details of the vegetation classification used in this project can be found in Bousquin and Carnal (2005). The classification hierarchically defines plant communities at the finest level as community types (abbreviated as Bcodes), based on dominant species in plant communities. Groups of ecologically similar community types are called Bcode Groups or Groups. The highest levels of the classification are physiognomic and general habitat (status) hierarchical levels that separate groups of Bcode Groups (Table 9-5 in Bousquin and Carnal 2005).

A vegetation polygon is an area of homogeneous vegetation that is outlined on a vegetation map and is assigned a vegetation category (e.g., the name of a community type) to describe the type of vegetation the polygon includes. Polygon classification of the baseline 1996 Pool C vegetation map was performed at the detailed community type level by assigning a community type and Bcode Group to each vegetation polygon. Use of the community type level was possible for Pool C because the photointerpretation data of the 1996 photography included cover estimates for up to eight species in most polygons (Bousquin and

Carnal 2005). The community type level of classification detail was not possible for the 1954 pre- and 1974 early post-channelization vegetation maps because species data were not collected for these projects. Pool C is described at the community type level in the 1996 subsection of the Results section, but comparison with the previous maps was not possible at that level. For comparisons, the original classification categories used in the pre-channelization and early post-channelization maps were converted to the Bcode Group level of the KRREP Vegetation Classification System. Decisions involved in conversion of the previous maps to the KRREP system, and a crosswalk among the classifications are detailed in Bousquin and Carnal (2005).

For these reasons, data are presented in several ways in this chapter:

- (1) Areal estimates of change resulting from channelization and predictions of future change expected to result from restoration are presented for the entire restoration area or are subdivided by restoration construction phase (see Bousquin et al. 2005, Chapter 1 of this volume). These comparisons use the 1952 and 1974 data sets only because of the spatial limitations of 1996 mapping.
- (2) Comparisons of the 1996 map with previous maps are presented at the Bcode Group level for Pool C only. These comparisons are constrained to Pool C by the spatial extent of 1996 mapping.
- (3) Community type (Bcode)-level areal estimates for Pool C are based on the 1996 map only. These results, however, do provide insights into the likely composition of grouped community data in the other maps.

Map Boundaries

The 1996 Pool C baseline map, and the pre-channelization and early post-channelization maps of Pools A–D were digitally overlaid to determine a common boundary for all three coverages, and to establish a fixed boundary for future evaluation program mapping. The three maps were clipped to represent the same spatial area of 15,461 ha in Pools A–D (covered only in the pre-1996 maps) and 4582 ha in Pool C (covered in all three maps) (means of map areas were used because of small discrepancies in polygon boundary matching; standard errors were ± 0.2 ha for Pools A–D, ± 1.3 ha for Pool C). This common area represents the revised study area boundary for baseline and future areal estimates and comparisons. Baseline mapping of the remaining pools will be based on aerial photography taken in 2003 overflights of the river and floodplain. All three maps were also overlaid with the boundaries of areas that will be affected by the four successive phases of restoration construction (Phases I–IV), slated for completion in 2010.

Reference Pre-channelization Mapping Methods (1952–1954 Vegetation Map)

Reference conditions for pre-channelization floodplain vegetation were available in the form of vegetation maps based on 1950s aerial photography (Pierce et al. 1982). Pierce et al. (1982) mapped 33 plant communities or land uses from two sets of 1952 and 1954 1:8000 black and white aerial photography. Their classification was based on that of Milleson et al. (1980) (see below), but several vegetation categories were added or combined with other categories. Because floodplain vegetation had changed considerably by the time of Pierce et al.'s (1982) work, ground-truthing was not possible. The manually-drawn polygon delineations in Pools A–D were digitized by Kissimmee Division staff and reduced to a scale of 1:24000. Species data are not available for this map; generalized species composition of mapped categories are available as descriptions in the text of Pierce et al. (1982) and are summarized in Bousquin and Carnal (2005).

Early Post-channelization Mapping Methods (1973–1974 Vegetation Map)

Earlier post-channelization data for Pools A–D were obtained from vegetation maps produced from photointerpretation of 1974 (1:4800) and 1973 (1:24000) aerial photography by Milleson et al. (1980) (Figure 10-1, Table 10-1). Milleson's classification was developed by delineating plant communities discernible on the photographs and verifying their signatures in the field during 1978. Ground surveys

were conducted using low altitude inspection from a helicopter and supplemented by numerous observations on the ground in selected areas (Milleson et al. 1980). Milleson's classification category descriptions were based on predominant and associated species which comprised discrete communities. Vegetation delineations were digitized into Computervision Corporation's Automated Mapping System using a highly accurate digitizer. The resulting data were used to produce maps and calculate area of each community category (Milleson et al. 1980). Like the pre-channelization map, species data are not available except as generalized text descriptions of vegetation categories.

Baseline Mapping Methods (1996 Vegetation Map)

Aerial Photography

The baseline (channelized period) vegetation map was based on color infrared (CIR) aerial photography of Pools A–D of the Kissimmee River and floodplain, acquired in June 1996 at a scale of 1:6000.

The extent of the overflight was based on the U. S. Army Corp of Engineers (USACE 1991) project area boundary for the 1994 overflight of Pools A, B, C, and D. Color infrared film was chosen because of its sensitivity to light energy (Sabins 1987) and its ability to reduce the effects of atmospheric haze (Greer et al. 1990). Color infrared film is especially useful for differentiating wetland vegetation (Owens and Laustrap 1990, Owens 1990) because it is sensitive to the multiple reflectance and scattering of light in the spongy mesophyll structure of plants (Fouche 1993), which is greater when water content is high. In this kind of image, greater water storage within plant tissue causes wetland vegetation to appear darker pink or red relative to upland terrestrial species. Because the amount of infrared light reflected from vegetation is related to contained moisture and the structure of leaves (Greer et al. 1990), species can be distinguished on CIR images with a high degree of confidence.

Vegetation Mapping

Study Area Boundary. Ground elevation and historic hydrology were the determining factors for the original study area boundary for baseline vegetation mapping. The mapping boundary was later adjusted to make the final Pool C baseline map compatible with the pre-channelization and early post-channelization maps (see above).

Scale and Minimum Mapping Unit. The large scale (1:6000) of photograph acquisition was chosen to ensure that species could be differentiated, and that subtle features such as narrow bands of river channel vegetation could be delineated. A small minimum mapping (MMU) unit of 100 m² accommodated inclusion of these and other small patches of vegetation (Digital Map Appendix 13A and 14A). The MMU defines the smallest allowable polygon delineations, although it was not intended as a rule. Within a forest community, for example, it was not necessary to delineate each small opening in the canopy to capture understory herbaceous vegetation coverage. This would not change the overall physiognomy of the community and would result in an overestimate of the coverage of the herbaceous community.

Photo Preparation and Polygon Delineation. A vegetation polygon is a drawn boundary on an aerial photograph that delineates a contiguous area of homogenous vegetation. Clear Mylar overlays were attached with drafting tape to each positive transparency of the aerial photography to provide a medium for polygon delineations. The Mylar was then registered to the photography by marking the fiducials or cross hairs on each side of the transparency with drafting pens. Each transparency was labeled in the upper right corner with date, photo number, and pool for reference. Work areas (area of photointerpretation) were determined by the extent of overlap between consecutive photos within a flight line and by the amount of sidelap of photos in adjacent flight lines. This established the work area in the center of the photography where distortion is at a minimum. Vegetation polygons, work areas, boundaries, and labels were delineated on the Mylar overlays.

CHAPTER 10 AREAL VEGETATION COVERAGE

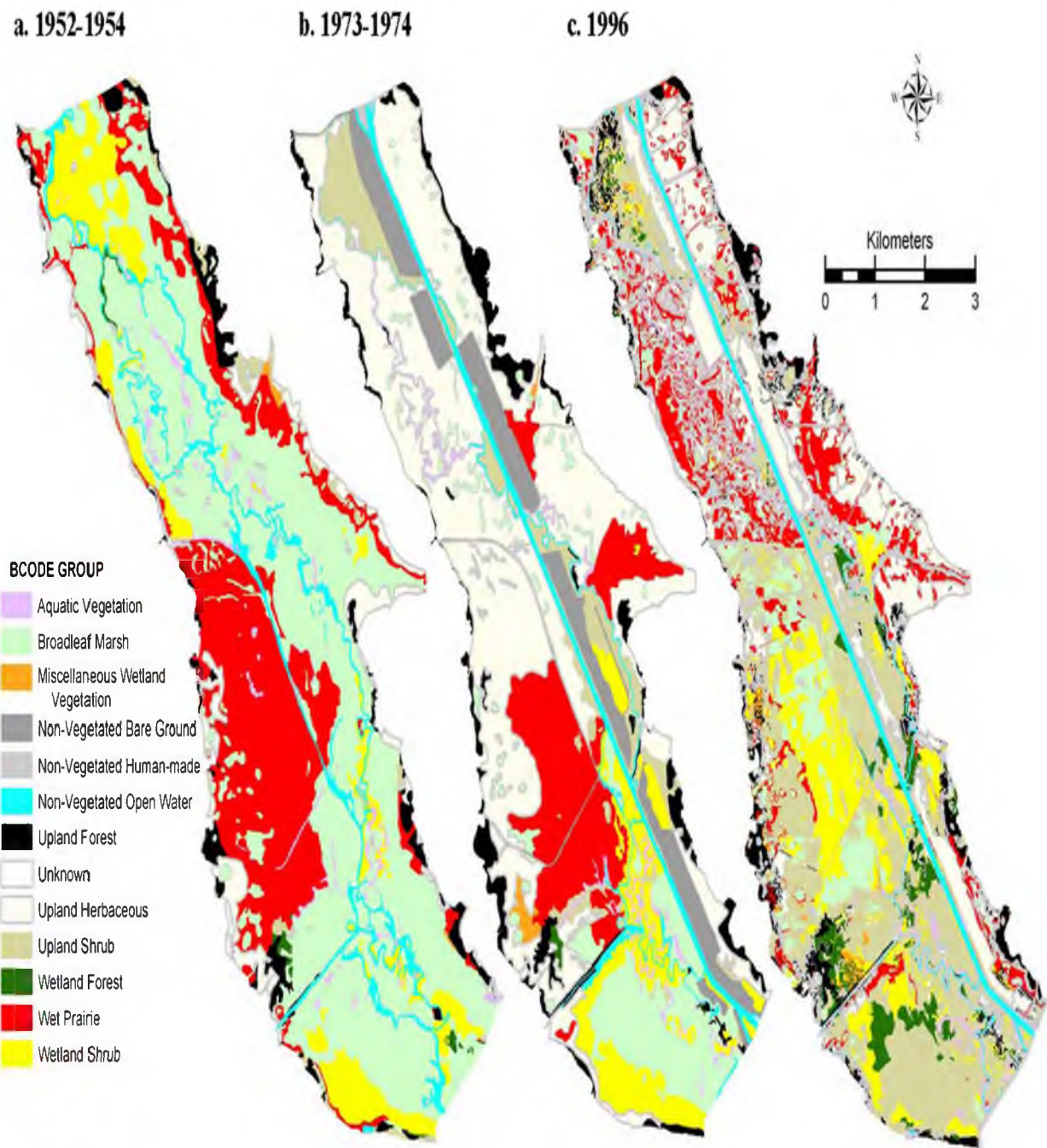


Figure 10-1. Vegetation maps of Pool C: (a) 1952–1954 (pre-channelization, reference period) (data from Pierce et al. 1982); (b) 1973–1974 (early post-channelization) (data from Milleson et al. 1980); and (c) 1996 (post-channelization, baseline period).

CHAPTER 10 AREAL VEGETATION COVERAGE

Table 10-1. Vegetation maps used in restoration evaluation of vegetation change, 1952–1996.

Date of photography	Map Source	Digitized coverage	Period	Vegetation classification level	Application in this chapter
1952-54	Pierce et al. 1982	Pools A-D	Pre-channelization reference	Bcode Group	Reference data for predictions of restored areal abundance of plant communities
1973-74	Milleson et al. 1980	Pools A-D	Early channelized	Bcode Group	Early responses to channelization
1996	Camal and Bousquin 2005	Pool C	Channelized baseline	Bcode Group	Baseline data for comparison with pre-channelization data in Pool C and future restored-condition data
				Community Type (Bcode)	Detailed descriptions of Pool C baseline condition

Vegetation Automation. All delineations were originally automated by transforming and projecting each individual work area to a base map. This georeferencing technique was abandoned because distortion in the photography resulted in gaps between work area delineations. Subsequently, a method for simultaneous two-dimensional projective coordinate transformation was applied (Dewitt 1999). This method transforms multiple overlapping images to a ground control system. Application of the methodology produced an accuracy of 3 to 5 meters where there was sufficient control and low topographic variability. Using this methodology, work area delineations were aggregated into a single, seamless GIS coverage and added to the KRREP spatial database.

Photointerpretation and Verification. Photointerpretation was performed using a Baush and Lomb 240-zoom stereoscope mounted on a Richards light table. During photointerpretation, vegetation signatures were identified, delineated, and labeled using three decision methods. First, field reconnaissance of all remnant river channels and portions of the floodplain was conducted before and continued after the photography was obtained. Notes about species present in 1996 were recorded on Mylar sleeves over prints of 1994 black and white aerial photography. Similar reconnaissance was conducted using the 1996 baseline photography (e.g. Map Appendix 11A and 12A) and included areas of the floodplain that were previously unvisited. Second, field reconnaissance was conducted during photointerpretation and classification to calibrate polygons with unknown signatures. Locations of field observations were captured with a Global Positioning System (GPS) unit, species information was recorded, and ground photos were obtained for archive and use in making classification decisions during interpretation. Approximately two thirds of all polygons were interpreted with ground verification by one of these two methods. Third, polygon classification was interpreted without ground truth data based on knowledge of flora in the area and skill in recognizing associated signatures developed through ground truth methods.

Landscape Zone Modifier. A landscape zone attribute (Appendix 10-1A) was attached to each polygon to describe its context within the study area boundary. A landscape zone is a geographic feature of the Kissimmee River basin, such as a spoil mound, C-38, floodplain, or the upland ecotone. The landscape zone modifier was needed because some vegetation required additional qualification to accurately describe where the community existed in the river/floodplain system. The landscape zone attribute can provide data independent of vegetation cover, for example an area of dredged spoil material on the floodplain or an area of open water on the floodplain vs. the river channel.

RESULTS

Upland Communities

Vegetation Change in Pools A–D, 1954–1974

Wetland vegetation dominated the floodplain prior to channelization, occurring on over 80% of the floodplain’s total area of 15,461 ha in the 1954 reference vegetation map. Pre-channelization wetlands were dominated by herbaceous marshes, including Broadleaf Marsh (BLM) which occurred on 46% of the

CHAPTER 10 AREAL VEGETATION COVERAGE

floodplain, and Wet Prairies (WP) on 21%. Wetland Shrub communities (WS) covered 13% of the floodplain in the 1954 map, and Wetland Forests (WF) about 0.5% (Table 10-2, Figures 10-1 and 10-2).

Following channelization, the 1974 early post-channelization aerial photography indicated that wetlands had declined to about 29% of the floodplain, including Broadleaf Marsh (BLM) on 7% of the floodplain and Wet Prairie (WP) on 13%. Coverage of Wetland Shrub communities (WS) declined to about 8% of the floodplain in the 1974 map, and cover of Wetland Forest (WF) remained approximately constant at <1% (Table 10-2, Figures 10-1 and 10-2).

Upland vegetation occurred on only 8% (1,285 ha) of the floodplain prior to channelization, but increased to 52% in the 1974 early post-channelization photography. Upland Herbaceous (UP), primarily pastures, which occurred on only 3% of the floodplain in 1954, increased dramatically to 37% by 1974. Upland Shrub (US) communities increased slightly from 2% to 9%, and Upland Forest (UF) from 3% to 5%. Occurring in the remaining small areas of both vegetation maps were small areas of Non-Vegetated Open Water (NVOW), Bare Ground (NVBG), and Problematic Signatures (XUNK) (Table 10-2, Figures 10-1 and 10-2).

Vegetation Change in Pool C, 1954–1996

Pool C is treated at the Bcode Group level in this section independently of Pools A, B, and D. This enables comparison between the 1996 baseline mapping effort, which was conducted only for Pool C, and previous map data. Pool C areal coverage of Bcode Groups was very similar to coverage in the whole system. In the 1954 map, wetlands covered approximately 83% of Pool C’s total area of 4582 ha, and were dominated by Broadleaf Marshes (BLM) (50% of Pool C) and Wet Prairie (WP) communities (23%) (Table 10-2, Figures 10-1 and 10-2).

Table 10-2. Percent total cover of Bcode Groups within the Pool C boundary, 1952–1996, and the entire restoration project and control area, Pools A–D, 1952–1974. Prior to channelization, wetlands comprised over 80% of the floodplain area in both Pool C and in Pools A–D combined. Following channelization in 1974, upland vegetation covered over 50% of Pool C and Pools A–D combined, and by 1996 covered over 60% of Pool C.

STATUS	B code Group	Code	Area in Pool C (ha)			Percent of Pool C			Area in Pools A-D (ha)		Percent of pools A-D	
			1952	1974	1996	1952	1974	1996	1952	1974	1952	1974
Wetland	Broadleaf Marsh	BLM	2269	479	342	50	10	7	7061	1084	46	7
	Miscellaneous Wetland Vegetation	MW	8	23	41	0	1	1	136	182	1	1
	Wet Prairie	WP	1054	552	490	23	12	11	3204	1939	21	13
	Wetland Forest	WF	19	9	164	0	0	4	75	61	0	0
	Wetland Shrub	WS	431	335	413	9	7	9	1976	1235	13	8
Upland	Upland Forest	UF	185	314	314	4	7	7	494	830	3	5
	Upland Herbaceous	UP	205	1832	1219	4	40	27	512	5752	3	37
	Upland Shrub	US	64	339	1274	1	7	28	279	1450	2	9
Wetland/Upland	Vine	VN	0	0	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Aquatic	Aquatic Vegetation	AQ	76	69	151	2	1	3	349	205	2	1
Unknown	Unknown	UN	23	0	6	1	0	0	208	1	1	0
Non-vegetated	Non-Vegetated: Bare Ground	NVBG	0	430	1	0	9	0	0	1683	0	11
	Non-Vegetated: Human Influenced	NVH	2	6	3	0	0	0	31	46	0	0
	Non-Vegetated: Open Water	NVOW	247	201	162	5	4	4	1134	993	7	6
Totals			4583	4579	4583	100	100	100	15461	15461	100	100

After channelization, wetland vegetation coverage in the 1974 and 1996 Pool C maps was 31% and 32%, respectively. As in Pools A–D, wetland vegetation was composed primarily of Broadleaf Marsh (BLM) (10% in 1974 and 7% in 1996), Wet Prairies (WP) (12% in 1974 and 11% in 1996), and Wetland Shrub (WS) communities (7% in 1974 and 9% in 1996), with a small area of Miscellaneous Wetland (MW) (2% in 1974 and 1% in 1996) (Table 10-2, Figures 10-1 and 10-2).

Uplands comprised only 10% of Pool C prior to channelization and had increased to 54% in 1974, and to 61% in 1996. Upland Herbaceous (UP) communities occurred on 40% of Pool C’s area in the 1974 map and 27% in 1996; Upland Shrub (US) communities covered 7% in 1974 and 28% in 1996 (Table 10-2, Figures 10-1 and 10-2).

Small percentages of Pool C were covered by Upland Forest (UF) (~ 7% in both 1974 and 1996), Aquatic Vegetation (AQ) (1% in 1974 and 3% in 1996), and open water (NVOW) (5% and 4%); and less than 2% of bare ground (NVBG) and Problematic Signatures (XUNK) (Table 10-2, Figures 10-1 and 10-2).

Community Type Composition of Pool C

Pool C vegetation is described in this section at the finest level of the KRREP classification, community type or Bcode, which defines communities by dominant species (Bousquin and Carnal 2005). This level of classification is not available for the previous vegetation maps. It is presented here to provide insight into the likely community type composition of the Group levels of classification applied to the other maps.

Upland Communities

Upland Forests. The Upland Forest Group (UF) covered 7% of the total mapped area in Pool C. Upland Forests occurred primarily at elevations higher than Wet Prairie, on natural riparian berms along river channels, and in abandoned river channels. Some upland tree and shrub species colonized areas of spoil and pasture after channelization. The *Quercus virginiana* (live oak) Forest (F.QS) community type comprised 94% of this Group, occurring typically in dense hammocks along the periphery of the floodplain (Figure 10-1), a zone that roughly approximates the study area boundary and 100-year floodline. However, *Q. virginiana* also colonized areas that were drained by channelization.

Forests dominated by *Sabal palmetto* (cabbage palm) (F.SP) covered 5% of the Upland Forest area in Pool C. *Sabal palmetto* (cabbage palm) was commonly found in association with live oak hammocks, although isolated stands of cabbage palms were frequent in pastures and on spoil areas, where they became established after channelization. A Miscellaneous forest (F.MxF) category, which was used for other combinations of upland trees, was less common (2%) (Table 10-3, Figure 10-3).

Upland Shrub Communities. The Upland Shrub Group (US) was the largest component of Pool C in 1996, (Figure 10-3, Table 10-2), occurring in almost every natural habitat on the floodplain and in portions of the former river channel. Upland Shrub communities covered approximately 28% (Table 10-2) of the total mapped area in the 1996 map, and were absent only from heavily grazed pastures and the lowest floodplain elevations. The Upland Shrub Group includes community types composed of both exotic and native Upland Shrub species, including almost pure stands of the invasive native *Myrica cerifera* (wax myrtle) (S.MC) which was the largest component of this Group in baseline Pool C, comprising 77% of the Group and 21% of the total Pool C study area (Table 10-3, Figure 10-3). Because *M. cerifera* was rare in the pre-channelized system, no comparable category was defined in the pre- or early post-channelization classifications. However, by 1996, the community type level of mapping reveals that a myrtle community had invaded a remnant wetland community in the southwest section of Pool C (Figure 10-1) on elevated “floating” substrate composed of roots and vegetative debris. Because of this above-water condition, these *M. cerifera* stands are capable of persisting in the permanently inundated lower portion of the pool. *Myrica cerifera* stands also occurred on higher elevations of former marsh areas.

The Miscellaneous Upland Shrub (S.MxUS) community type encompasses mixed communities of *Schinus terebinthifolius* (brazilian pepper), *Sambucus canadensis* (elderberry), *Psidium guajava* (guava), *Rubus cuneifolius* (sand blackberry), *Baccharis halimifolia* (groundsel bush), and *M. cerifera*. The type is often located on spoil mounds and occurs throughout the drained floodplain. S.MxUS made up 16% of the Upland Shrub Group, while communities dominated by the exotic nuisance species *Schinus terebinthifolius* (brazilian pepper) (S.ST) comprised 6% of the Upland Shrub Group (Table 10-3, Figure 10-3). *Schinus terebinthifolius* was not observed prior to channelization but has invaded a number of habitats since channelization, including the banks of C-38 and riparian zones along remnant river channels, where it has replaced *Salix caroliniana* as the dominant species.

Upland Herbaceous Communities. The second-largest component of the river-floodplain system in the 1996 Pool C data was the Upland Herbaceous Bcode Group (UP) (Table 10-2, Figure 10-2), which comprised 27% of the total mapped area in Pool C (Table 10-2). This Group includes pastures and other communities composed of exotic and native grasses, and communities of exotic weeds, which have become established in areas that were historically Broadleaf Marsh, Wet Prairie, and in some areas, Wetland Shrub. Seeding of *Paspalum notatum* and other forage grasses, consistent grazing, and the lack of water retention on the floodplain promoted development of economically valuable cattle pasture for surrounding land owners. Spoil areas also were covered primarily by Upland Herbaceous communities and comprise large areas of the channelized system.